



The first part.

PART. I.

BEING A

DISCOURSE

OF

Rivers, Fish-ponds, Fish and Fishing.

Written by IZAAK WALTON.

The Fifth Edition much corrected and enlarged.

LONDON,

Printed for Richard Marriott, 1676.



The first part.

PART. I.

BEING A

DISCOURSE

OF

Rivers, Fish-ponds, Fish and Fishing.

Written by IZAAK WALTON.

The Fifth Edition much corrected and enlarged.

LONDON,

Printed for Richard Marriott, 1676.

THE
UNIVERSAL
ANGLER,

Made so, by
Three BOOKS
OF
FISHING.

The First
Written by Mr. IZAAK WALTON;

The Second
By CHARLES COTTON Esq;

The Third
By Col. ROBERT VENABLES.

All which may be bound together, or sold
each of them severally.

L O N D O N,
Printed for Richard Marriott, and sold by
most Bookfellers. MDCLXXVI.

UNIVERSAL

by

THE

L
R
—
T
—
Lo
C

PART. I.
BEING A
DISCOURSE
OF
Rivers, Fish-ponds, Fish & Fishing.

Written by IZAAK WALTON.

The Fifth Edition, much corrected and enlarged.

London, Printed for R. Marriot, and are to be sold by
Charles Harper at his Shop, the next door to the
Crown near Sergeants-Inn in Chancery Lane, 1676.



To the Right worshipful

JOHN OFFLEY

Of *Madely* Manor in the County
of *Stafford*, Esq;

My most honoured Friend,

S I R,



Have made so ill use of
your former favours, as
by them to be encoura-
ged to intreat that they
may be enlarged to the *Patronage*
and *protection* of this Book; and I
have put on a modest confidence,
that I shall not be deny'd, because

A 2

it

The Epistle

it is a Discourse of *Fish* and *Fishing*, which you know so well, and both love and practise so much.

You are assured (though there be ignorant men of another belief) that *Angling* is an *Art*; and you know that *Art* better than others; and that this is truth is demonstrated by the fruits of that pleasant labour which you enjoy when you purpose to give rest to your mind, and devest your self of your more serious business, and (which is often) dedicate a day or two to this *Recreation*.

At which time if *common Anglers* should attend you, and be eye witnesses of the success, not of your fortune

Dedictory.

tune but your *skill*, it would doubtless beget in them an emulation to be like you, and that emulation might beget an industrious diligence to be so; but I know it is not attainable by common capacities. And there be now many men of great *wisdom*, *learning* and *experience* which love and practise this *Art*, that know I speak the truth.

Sir, This pleasant curiosity of Fish and Fishing, (of which you are so great a Master) has been thought worthy the *Pens* and *Practises* of divers in other Nations, that have been reputed men of great *Learning* and *Wisdom*, and amongst those of this Nation, I remember *Sir Henry*

The Epistle

Wotton (a dear lover of this Art) has told me that his intentions were to write a Discourse of the Art, and in praise of *Angling*, and doubtless he had done so, if death had not prevented him; the remembrance of which hath often made me sorry, for if he had lived to do it, then the unlearned *Angler* had seen some better Treatise of this Art, a Treatise that might have prov'd worthy his perusal, which (though some have undertaken) I could never yet see in English.

But mine may be thought as *weak*, and as *unworthy* of common view; and I do here freely confess, that I should rather excuse my self, than

Dedictory.

than censure others, my own Discourse being liable to so many exceptions ; against which you (Sir) might make this one, *That it can contribute nothing to your Knowledge.* And lest a longer Epistle may diminish your pleasure, I shall make this no longer than to add this following Truth, *That I am really,*

S I R,

Your most affectionate Friend,

and most humble Servant,

Iz. Wa.

To all Readers of this Discourse, but especially
to the honest *ANGLER*.



Think fit to tell thee these following truths, That I did neither undertake, nor write, nor publish, and much less own, this Discourse to please my self: and having been too easily drawn to do all to please others, as I propos'd not the gaining of credit by this undertaking, so I would not willingly lose any part of that to which I had a just title before I begun it, and do therefore desire and hope, if I deserve not commendations, yet, I may obtain pardon.

And though this Discourse may be liable to some Exceptions, yet I cannot doubt but that most Readers may receive so much pleasure or profit by it, as may make it worthy the time of their perusal, if they be not too grave or too busie men. And this is all the confidence that I can put on concerning the merit of what is here offered to their consideration and censure; and if the last prove too severe, as I have a liberty, so I am resolv'd to use it and neglect all sower Censures.

And I wish the Reader also to take notice, that in writing of it I have made my self a recreation of a recreation; and that it might prove so to him, and not read dull and tedious, I have in several places mixt (not any scurrility, but) some innocent, harmless mirth; of which, if thou be a severe, sower-complexion'd man, then I here disallow thee to be

To the Reader.

a competent judge; for Divines say, There are offences given, and offences not given but taken.

And I am the willinger to justify the pleasant part of it, because though it is known I can be serious at seasonable times, yet the whole discourse is, or rather was, a picture of my own disposition, especially in such days and times as I have laid aside business, and gone a fishing with honest Nat. and R. Roe; but they are gone, and with them most of my pleasant hours, even as a shadow, that passeth away, and returns not.

And next let me add this, that he that likes not the book, should like the excellent picture of the Trout, and some of the other fish; which I may take a liberty to commend, because they concern not my self.

Next let me tell the Reader, that in that which is the more useful part of this Discourse, that is to say, the observations of the nature and breeding, and seasons, and catching of Fish, I am not so simple as not to know, that a captious Reader may find exceptions against something said of some of these; and therefore I must entreat him to consider, that experience teaches us to know, that several Countries alter the time, and I think almost the manner, of fishes breeding, but doubtless of their being in season; as may appear by three Rivers in Monmouthshire, namely Severn, Wie, and Usk, where Cambden (Brit. f. 633.) observes, that
in

To the Reader.

in the River Wie, Salmon are in season from Sept. to April, and we are certain, that in Thames and Trent, and in most other Rivers they be in season the six hotter months.

Now for the Art of catching fish, that is to say, how to make a man that was none, to be an Angler by a book? he that undertakes it shall undertake a harder task, than Mr. Hales (a most valiant and excellent Fencer) who in a printed book called, A private School of Defence) undertook to teach that art or science, and was laugh'd at for his labour. Not but that many useful things might be learnt by that book, but he was laugh'd at, because that art was not to be taught by words, but practice: and so must Angling. And note also, that in this Discourse I do not undertake to say all that is known, or may be said of it, but I undertake to acquaint the Reader with many things that are not usually known to every Angler; and I shall leave gleanings and observations enough to be made out of the experience of all that love and practise this recreation, to which I shall encourage them. For Angling may be said to be so like the Mathematicks, that it can ne'r be fully learnt; at least not so fully, but that there will still be more new experiments left for the tryal of other men that succeed us.

But I think all that love this game may here learn something that may be worth their money, if they be not poor and needy men; and in case they be,

To the Reader.

I then wish them to forbear to buy it; for I write not to get money, but for pleasure, and this Discourse boasts of no more; for I hate to promise much, and deceive the Reader.

*And however it proves to him, yet I am sure I have found a high content in the search and conference of what is here offer'd to the Readers view and censure: I wish him as much in the perusal of it, and so I might here take my leave, but will stay a little and tell him, that whereas it is said by many, that in flye-fishing for a Trout, the Angler must observe his 12 several flies for the twelve months of the year; I say, he that follows that rule, shall be as sure to catch fish, and, be as wise, as he that makes Hay by the fair days in an Almanack, and no surer; for those very flies that use to appear about and on the water in one month of the year, may the following year come almost a month sooner or later; as the same year proves colder or hotter; and yet in the following Discourse I have set down the twelve flies that are in reputation with many Anglers, and they may serve to give him some observations concerning them. And he may note that there are in Wales and other Countries, peculiar flies, proper to the particular place or Country; and doubtless, unless a man makes a flye to counterfeit that very flye in that place, he is like to lose his labour, or much of it: But for the generality, three or four flies neat and rightly made, and not too big, serve for a Trout in most Rivers all the Summer. And
for*

for Winter flic-fishing it is as useful as an Almanack out of date. And of these (because as no man is born an artist, so no man is born an Angler) I thought fit to give thee this notice.

When I have told the Reader, that in this fifth Impression there are many enlargements, gathered both by my own observation, and the communication with friends, I shall stay him no longer than to wish him a rainy evening to read this following Discourse; and that (if he be an honest Angler) the East wind may never blow when he goes a Fishing.

J. W.

TO

To my dear Brother Mr Izaak Walton, up-
on his Compleat Angler.

E *Rasmus* in his learned Colloquies
Has mixt some toys, that by varieties
He might entice all Readers: for in him
Each *child* may wade, or tallest *giant* swim.
And such is this Discourse: there's none so low,
Or highly learn'd, to whom hence may not flow
Pleasure and information: both which are
Taught us with so much art, that I might swear
Safely, the choicest Critick cannot tell,
Whether your matchless judgment most excell
In *Angling* or its *praise*: where commendation
First charms, then makes an *art* a *recreation*.

'Twas so to me: who *saw* the chearful *Spring*
Pictur'd in every *meadow*, heard *birds* sing
Sonnets in every *grove*, saw *fishes* play
In the cool *crystal streams*, like *lambs* in *May*:
And they may play, till *Anglers* read this *book*;
But after, 'tis a wise *fish* scapes a *book*.

Jo. Floud, Mr. of Arts.

To

To the Reader of the *Compleat Angler*.

(gave it
First mark the Title well ; my Friend that
Has made it good ; this book deserves to have
For he that views it with judicious looks, (it.
Shall find it full of *art, baits, lines and hooks*.

The *world* the river is , both you and I,
And all mankind are either *fish* or *fry* :
If we pretend to reason, first or last
His baits will tempt us, and his hooks hold fast.
Pleasure or profit, either prose or rhyme,
If not at first, will doubtless take's in time.

Here sits in secret blest *Theology*,
Waited upon by grave *Philosophy*,
Both *natural* and *moral* , *History*
Deck'd and adorn'd with flowers of *Poetry*,
The matter and expression striving which
Shall most excell in worth, yet not seem rich :
There is no danger in his *baits*, that *book*,
Will prove the safest, that is surest took.

Nor are we caught alone, but (which is best)
We shall be wholsom, and be toothsom drest :
Drest to be fed, not to be fed upon ;
And danger of a surfeit here is none.
The solid food of serious Contemplation
Is sauc'd here with such harmless recreation,
That an *ingenuous* and *religious* mind
Cannot inquire for more than it may find

Ready

Ready at once prepar'd, either t' excite
Or satisfie a curious appetite.

More praise is due ; for 'tis both positive
And truth, which once was interrogative,
And utter'd by the Poet then in jest,
Et piscatorem piscis amare potest.

Cb. Harvie. Mr. of Arts.

*To my dear Friend, Mr. Iz. Walton, in
praise of Angling, which we both love.*

Down by this smooth streams wandring
Adorn'd & perfum'd with the pride (side,
Of *Flora's* Wardrobe, where the shrill
Aerial Quire express their skill,
First in alternate melody,
And then in Chorus all agree.
Whilst the charm'd fish, as extas'd
With sounds, to his own throat den'd,
Scorns his dull Element, and springs
I'th' air, as if his Fins were wings.

'Tis here that pleasures sweet and high
Prostrate to our embraces lye.
Such as to Body, Soul or Fame
Create no sickness, sin or shame.
Roses not fenc'd with pricks grow here,

No

No sting to th' Hony-bag is near.
But (what's perhaps their prejudice)
They difficulty want and price

An obvious Rod, a twist of hair,
With hook hid in an insect, are
Engines of sport, would fit the wish
O'th' Epicure and fill his dish.

In this clear stream let fall a *Grub*.
And straight take up a *Dace* or *Chub*.
Ith' mud your worm provokes a *Snig*,
Which being fast, if it prove big
The *Gotham* folly will be found
Discreet, e're ta'ne she must be drown'd.
The *Tench* (Physician of the Brook)
In yon dead hole expects your hook,
Which having first your pastime been,
Serves then for meat or medicine.
Ambush'd behind that root doth stay
A *Pike*, to catch and be a prey.
The treacherous Quill in this slow stream
Betrays the hunger of a *Bream*.
And at that nimbler Ford, (no doubt)
Your false flie cheats a speckled *Trout*.

When you these creatures wisely chuse
To practise on, which to your use
Owe their creation, and when
Fish from your arts do rescue men;
To plot, delude, and circumvent,
Ensnare and spoil, is innocent.

Here

Here by these crystal streams you may
Preserve a Conscience clear as they;
And when by sullen thoughts you find
Your harass'd, not busied, mind
In sable melancholy clad,
Distemper'd, serious, turning sad;
Hence fetch your cure, cast in your bait,
All anxious thoughts and cares will straight
Fly with such speed, they'l seem to be
Possess'd with the *Hydrophobie*.
The waters calmness in your breast,
And smoothness on your brow shall rest.
Away with sports of charge and noise,
And give me cheap and silent joys,
Such as *Alceons* game pursue,
Their fate oft makes the Tale seem true.
The sick or sullen *Hawk* to day
Flies not; to morrow, quite away.
Patience and Purse to Cards and Dice
Too oft are made a sacrifice:
The Daughters dower, th' inheritance
O'th' son, depend on one mad chance.
The harms and mischiefs which th' abuse
Of wine doth every day produce,
Make good the Doctrine of the *Turks*,
That in each grape a devil lurks,
And by yon fading sapless tree,
Bout which the *Ivy* twin'd you see,
His fate's foretold, who fondly places
His bliss in womans soft embraces,

B

All

All pleasures, but the Anglers, bring
I'th' tail repentance like a sting.

Then on these banks let me sit down,
Free from the toilsom Sword and Gown,
And pity those that do affect
To conquer Nations and protect.
My Reed affords such true content,
Delights so sweet and innocent,
As seldom fall unto the lot
Of Scepters, though they'r justly got.

1649.

Ibo. Weaver, Mr. of Arts.

*To the Readers of my most ingenuous Friends
Book, The Compleat Angler.*

He that both knew and writ the lives of men,
Such as were once, but must not be agen :
Witness his matchless *Donne* and *Wotton*, by
Whose aid he could their speculations try :

He that convers'd with *Angels*, such as were
Ouldfworth and *Featly*, each a shining star
Shewing the way to *Bethlem* ; each a Saint ;
(Compar'd to whom our *Zelots* now but paint)

He that our pious and learn'd *Morley* knew,
And from him suck'd wit and devotion too :

He that from these such excellencies fetch'd,
(reach'd ;

That He could tell how high and far they
What

What learning this, what graces th' other had;
And in what several drefs each foul was clad.

Reader, this *HE*, this *Fifherman* comes forth,
(worth.

And in thefe *Fifhers* weeds would shroud his
Now his mute Harp is on a Willow hung, vol 2
With which when finely toucht, & fitly ftrung,
He could friends paffions for thefe times allay;
Or chain his fellow-*Anglers* from their prey.
But now the mufick of his pen is ftill,
And he fits by a brook watching a quill:
Where with a fixt eye, and a ready hand,
He ftudies firft to hook, and then to land
Some *Trout*, or *Pearch*, or *Pike*; and having done,
Sits on a Bank, and tells how this was won,
And that escap'd his hook; which with a wile
Did eat the bait, and *Fifherman* beguile. (thrown,
Thus whilft fome vex they from their lands are
He joys to think the waters are his own,
And like the *Dutch*, he gladly can agree
To live at peace now, and have *ifhing* free.

April 3. 1650,

Edu. Powel, Mr. of Arts.

To my dear Brother, Mr. Iz. Walton
on his Compleat Angler.

THis Book is so like you, and you like it,
For harmless Mirth, Expression, Art & Wit,
That I protest ingenuously 'tis true,
I love this Mirth, Art, Wit, the Book and You.
Rob. Floud, C.

Clarissimo amicissimoq; Fratri, Domino
Isaaco Walton, Artis Piscatoriae peri-
tissimo.

UNicus est Medicus reliquorum piscis, & istis
Fas quibus est Medicum tangere, certa salus.
Hic typus est Salvatoris mirandus Jeseu,
b Latere mysterium qualibet hujus habet.
Hunc cupio, hunc capias (bone frater Arundinis)
q Solveret hic pro me debita, teque Deo.
Piscis is est, & piscator (mibi credito) qualem
Vel piscatorem piscis amare velit.

q Mat. 17. 27. the
last words of the
Chapter.

b ΙΧΘΥς Piscis.
I' Ιησους Jesus.
χ Χριστος Christus.
δ Θεος Dei.
υ υιος Filius.
σ σωτηρ Salvator.

Henry Bayley, Artium Magister,

Ad Virum optimum, & Piscatorem peris-
simum, *Isaacum Waltonum*.

Magister artis docte Piscatarie,
Waltone salve, magne dux arundinis,
Sextu reducâ valle solus ambulas,
Præterfluentes interim observans aquas,
Seu fortè puri stans in amnis margine,
Sive in tenaci gramine & ripâ sedens,
Fallis peritâ squameum pecus manu;
O te beatum! qui procul negotiis,
Foriq; & urbis pulvere & strepitu carens,
Extrâq; turbam, ad lenè manantes aquas
Vagos honestâ fraude pisces decipis.
Dum cætera ergo penè gens mortalium
Aut retia invicem sibi & technas struunt,
Donis, ut hamo, aut divites capti aut senes,
Gregi natantùm tu interim necis dalos,
Voracem inescas advenam hamo lucinum,
Avidamvè percam parvulo alburno capis,
Aut verme ruffo, musculâ aut truttam levi,
Cautumvè cyprinum, & ferè indocilem capè
Calamoq; linoq; (ars at hunc superat tua)
Medicamvè tincam, gobium aut escâ trahis,
Gratum palato gobium, parvum licet,
Prædamvè, non æque salubrem barbulum,
Etsi ampliozem, & mystace insignem gravi.
Hæ sunt tibi artes, dum annus & tempus sinunt,
Et nulla transit absq; linea dies.

Nec sola praxis, sed theoria & tibi
Nota artis hujus; unde tu simul bonus
Piscator, idem & scriptor; & calami potens
Utriusq; necdum & idus, & tamen sapis.
Ut hamiotam nempe tironem instruas,
Stylo eleganti scribis en Halientica
Oppianus alter, artis & methodum tuæ, &
Præcepta promissis rite piscatoria,
Varias & escas piscium, indolem, & genus.
Nec tradere artem sat putas piscariam,
(Virtutis est & hæc tamen quadam Schola
Patientiamq; & temperantiam docet)
Documenta quin majora dæ, & regulas
Sublimioris artis, & perennia
Monimenta morum, vitæ & exempla optima;
Dum tu profundum scribis Hookerum, & pium
Donnum ac disertum, sanctum & Herbertum, sa-
Vatem; hos videmus nam pexicillo tuo (crum
Graphicè, & peritâ, Iface, depictos manu.
Post fata factos hosce per te Virbios
O quæ voluptas est legere in scriptis tuis!
Sic tu libris nos, lineis pisces capis,
Musisq; litterisq; dum incumbis, licet
Intentus bamo, interq; piscandum studes.

Aliud

Aliud ad *Isaacum Waltonum*, virum & Piscatorem optimum.

ISACE, *Maſſie hâc arte piſcatoriâ ;*
Hâc arte Petrus Principi cenſum dedit ;
Hâc arte Princeps nec Petro multò prior,
Tranquillus ille, teſte Tranquillo, Pater
Patriæ, ſolebat recreare ſe lubens
Auguſtus, hamo inſtructus ac arundine.
Tu nunc, Amice, proximum clari es decus
Post Cæſarem hami, gentis ac Halienticæ :
Euge o Profeſſor artis haud ingloriæ,
Doctôr Cathedræ, perlegens Piſcariam !
Næ tu Magiſter, & ego diſcipulus tuus,
(Nam candidatum & me ferunt arundinis)
Socium hac in arte nobilem Naſſi ſumus.
Quid amplius, Waltone, nam dici poteſt ?
Ipſe hamiota Dominus en orbis fuit !

Jaco. Dup. D. D.

THE
COMPLEAT ANGLER.
OR, THE
Contemplative MAN'S
RECREATION.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

A Conference betwixt an Angler, a Faulkner, and a Hunter, each commending his Recreation.

{ PISCATOR.
{ VENATOR.
{ AUCEPS.

Pisc.



Ye are well overtaken, Gentlemen, a good morning to you both; I have stretched my legs up *Tottenham-hill* to overtake you, hoping your business may occasion you towards *Ware* whether I am going this fine, fresh *May* morning.

Venat.

Venat. Sir, I for my part shall almost answer your hopes, for my purpose is to drink my mornings draught at the *Thatcht House* in *Hodsdon*, and I think not to rest till I come thither, where I have appointed a friend or two to meet me: but for this Gentleman that you see with me, I know not how far he intends his journey; he came so lately into my company, that I have scarce had time to ask him the question.

Anceps. Sir, I shall by your favour bear you company as far as *Theobalds*, and there leave you, for then I turn up to a friends house who mews a Hawk for me, which I now long to see.

Venat. Sir, we are all so happy as to have a fine, fresh, cool morning, and I hope we shall each be the happier in the others company. And Gentlemen, that I may not lose yours, I shall either abate or amend my pace to enjoy it; knowing that (as the Italians say) *Good company in a Journey makes the way to seem the shorter.*

Anceps. It may do so Sir, with the help of good discourse, which methinks we may promise from you that both look and speak so chearfully: and for my part I promise you, as an invitation to it, that I will be as free and openhearted, as discretion will allow me to be with strangers.

Ven. and Sir, I promise the like.

Pisc.

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 3

Pisc. I am right glad to hear your answers, and in confidence you speak the truth, I shall put on a boldness to ask you Sir, Whether business or pleasure caused you to be so early up, and walk so fast, for this other Gentleman hath declared he is going to see a Hawk, that a friend mews for him.

Ven. Sir mine is a mixture of both, a little business and more pleasure, for I intend this day to do all my business, and then bestow another day or two in hunting the *Otter*, which a friend that I go to meet, tells me, is much pleasanter than any other chase whatsoever; howsoever I mean to try it; for to morrow morning we shall meet a pack of *Otter dogs* of noble *Mr Sadlers* upon *Ammell bill*, who will be there so early, that they intend to prevent the Sun-rising.

Pisc. Sir, my fortune has answered my desires, and my purpose is to bestow a day or two in helping to destroy some of those villanous vermin, for I hate them perfectly, because they love fish so well, or rather, because they destroy so much; indeed so much, that in my judgment all men that keep *Otter-dogs* ought to have pensions from the King to encourage them to destroy the very breed of those base *Otters*, they do so much mischief.

Ven. But what say you to the Foxes of the Nation, would not you as willingly have them de-

4 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

destroyed ? for doubtless they do as much mischief as *Otters* do.

Pisc. Oh Sir, if they do, it is not so much to me and my fraternity as those base Vermin the *Otters* do.

Auc. Why Sir, I pray, of what Fraternity are you, that you are so angry with the poor *Otters*.

Pisc. I am (Sir) a brother of the *Angle*, and therefore an enemy to the *Otter* : for you are to note, that we Anglers all love one another, and therefore do I hate the *Otter* both for my own and for their sakes who are of my brotherhood.

Ven. And I am a lover of Hounds; I have followed many a pack of dogs many a mile, and heard many merry huntsmen make sport and scoff at Anglers.

Auc. And I profess my self a Faulkner, and have heard many grave, serious men pity them, 'tis such a heavy, contemptible, dull recreation.

Pisc. You know Gentlemen, 'tis an easie thing to scoff at any Art or Recreation; a little wit mixt with ill nature, confidence and malice will do it; but though they often venture boldly, yet they are often caught even in their own trap, according to that of *Lucian*, the father of the family of Scoffers.

Lucian

Chap. 1. **The Compleat Angler.** 5

*Lucian well skill'd in scoffing, this hath writ,
Friend, that's your folly which you think your wit:
This you vent oft, void both of wit and fear,
Meaning another, when your self you jeer.*

If to this you add what Solomon says of Scoffers, that they are abomination to mankind. Let him that thinks fit, scoff on, and be a Scoffer still, but I account them enemies to me, and to all that love vertue and Angling.

And for you that have heard many grave serious men pity Anglers; let me tell you Sir, there be many men that are by others taken to be serious and grave men, which we contemn and pity. Men that are taken to be grave, because Nature hath made them of a sower complexion, money-getting-men, men that spend all their time first in getting, and next in anxious care to keep it; men that are condemnaed to be rich, and then always busie or discontented: for these poor-rich-men, we Anglers pity them perfectly, and stand in no need to borrow their thoughts to think our selves so happy. No, no, Sir, we enjoy a contentedness above the reach of such dispositions, and as the learned and ingenious * Mountagne sayes like him * in *Apol.* for self freely, ['When my Cat and I *Ra. Sebeud.* entertain each other with mutual apish tricks (as playing with a garter) who knows but 'that

6 The Compleat Angler. Part. I.

‘that I make my Cat more sport than she makes
 ‘me? shall I conclude her to be simple, that
 ‘has her time to begin or refuse to play as freely
 ‘as I my self have? Nay, who knowes but that
 ‘it is a defect of my not understanding her
 ‘language (for doubtless Cats talk and rea-
 ‘son with one another) that we agree no better:
 ‘and who knows but that she pitties me for be-
 ‘ing no wiser, than to play with her, and laughs
 ‘and censures my follie for making sport for her
 ‘when we too play together?

Thus freely speaks *Mountaigne* concerning
 Cats, and I hope I may take as great a liberty
 to blame any man, and laugh at him too let him
 be never so grave, that hath not heard what
 Anglers can say in the justification of their Art
 and Recreation; which I may again tell you is
 so full of pleasure, that we need not borrow
 their thoughts to think our selves happy.

Venat. Sir, you have almost amazed me, for
 though I am no scoffer, yet I have (I pray let me
 speak it without offence) alwayes looked upon
 Anglers as more patient and more simple men,
 than I fear I shall find you to be.

Pisc. Sir, I hope you will not judge my ear-
 nestness to be impatience: and for my *simplici-*
ty, if by that you mean a harmlesness, or that
 simplicity which was usually found in the pri-
 mitive Christians; who were (as most Anglers
 are) quiet men, and followers of peace; men
 that

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 7

that were so simply-wise, as not to sell their Consciences to buy riches, and with them vexation and a fear to die, If you mean such simple men as lived in those times when there were fewer Lawyers? when men might have had a Lordship safely conveyed to them in a piece of Parchment no bigger than your hand, (though several sheets will not do it safely in this wiser age) I say Sir, if you take us Anglers to be such simple men as I have spoke of, then my self and those of my profession will be glad to be so understood: But if by simplicity you meant to express a general defect in those that profess and practise the excellent Art of Angling, I hope in time to disabuse you, and make the contrary appear so evidently, that if you will but have patience to hear me, I shall remove all the Anticipations that discourse, or time, or prejudice have possess'd you with against that laudable and ancient art; for I know it is worthy the *knowledge and practise* of a wise man.

But (Gentlemen) though I be able to do this, I am not so unmannerly as to ingross all the discourse to my self, and therefore, you two having declared your selves, the one to be a lover of *Hawks*, the other of *Hounds*, I shall be most glad to hear what you can say in the commendation of that recreation which each of you love and practise; and having heard what you can say, I shall be glad to exercise your attention with
what

8 The Compleat Angler. Part. I.

what I can say concerning my own Recreation & Art of Angling, and by this means, we shall make the way to seem the shorter: and if you like my motion, I would have Mr. *Faulkner* to begin.

Anc. Your motion is consented to with all my heart, and to testifie it, I will begin as you have desired me.

And first, for the Element that I use to trade in, which is the Air, an Element of more worth than weight, an Element that doubtless exceeds both the Earth and Water; for though I sometimes deal in both, yet the Air is most properly mine, I and my Hawks use that most, and it yields us most recreation; it stops not the high soaring of my noble generous *Falcon*; in it she ascends to such an height, as the dull eyes of beasts and fish are not able to reach to; their bodies are too gross for such high elevations: in the Air my troops of Hawks soar up on high, and when they are lost in the sight of men, then they attend upon and converse with the gods, therefore I think my *Eagle* is so justly styled, *Joves servant in Ordinary*: and that very *Falcon*, that I am now going to see deserves no meaner a title, for she usually in her flight endangers her self, (like the son of *Dædalus*) to have her wings scorch'd by the Suns heat, she flies so near it, but her mettle makes her careless of danger, for she then heeds nothing, but makes her nimble Pivots cut the fluid air, and so makes her high way

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 9

way over the steepest mountains and deepest rivers, and in her glorious carere looks with contempt upon those high Steeples and magnificent Palaces which we adore and wonder at ; from which height I can make her to descend by a word from my mouth (which she both knows and obeys) to accept of meat from my hand, to own me for her Master, to go home with me, and be willing the next day to afford me the like recreation.

And more ; this Element of Air which I profess to trade in, the worth of it is such, and it is of such necessity, that no creature whatsoever, not only those numerous creatures that feed on the face of the Earth, but those various creatures that have their dwelling within the waters, every creature that hath life in its nostrils stands in need of my Element. The Waters cannot preserve the Fish without Air, witness the not breaking of Ice in an extream Frost ; the reason is, for that if the inspiring and expiring Organ of any animal be stopt, it suddenly yields to Nature, and dies. Thus necessary is Air to the existence both of Fish and Beasts, nay, even to Man himself ; that Air or breath of life with which God at first inspired Mankind, he, if he wants it, dies presently, becomes a sad object to all that loved and beheld him, and in an instant turns to putrefaction.

C

Nay

Nay more, the very birds of the air, (those that be not Hawks) are both so many, and so useful and pleasant to mankind, that I must not let them pass without some observations : They both feed and refresh him; feed him with their choice bodies, and refresh him with their Heavenly voices. I will not undertake to mention the several kinds of Fowl by which this is done ; and his curious palate pleased by day, and which with their very excrements afford him a soft lodging at night. These I will pass by, but not those little nimble Musicians of the air, that warble forth their curious Ditties, with which Nature hath furnished them to the shame of Art.

As first the *Lark*, when she means to rejoyce ; to chear her self and those that hear her, she then quits the earth, and sings as she ascends higher into the air, and having ended her Heavenly imployment, grows then mute and sad to think she must descend to the dull earth, which she would not touch but for necessity.

How do the *Black-bird* and *Thrassell* with their melodious voices bid welcome to the chearful Spring, and in their fixed Months warble forth such ditties as no art or instrument can reach to ?

Nay, the smaller birds also do the like in their particular seasons, as namely the *Leve-rock*, the *Tit-lark*, the little *Linnnet*, and the ho-
nest

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 11

nest Robin, that loves mankind both alive and dead.

But the *Nightingale* (another of my Airy Creatures) breaths such sweet loud musick out of her little instrumental throat, that it might make mankind to think Miracles are not ceased. He that at midnight (when the very labourer sleeps securely) should hear (as I have very often) the clear airs, the sweet descants, the natural rising and falling, the doubling and redoubling of her voice, might well be lifted above earth, and say; Lord, what Musick hast thou provided for the Saints in Heaven, when thou affordest bad men such musick on Earth!

And this makes me the less to wonder at the many *Aviaries* in *Italy*, or at the great charge of *Varro* his *Aviary*, the ruines of which are yet to be seen in *Rome*, and is still so famous there, that it is reckoned for one of those *Notables* which men of forraign Nations either record, or lay up in their memories when they return from travel.

This for the birds of pleasure, of which very much more might be said. My next shall be of Birds of Political use; I think 'tis no to be doubted that Swallows have been taught to carry Letters betwixt two Armies. But 'tis certain that when the Turks besieged *Malta* or *Rhodes* (I now remember not which 'twas) Pi-

geons are then related to carry and recarry Letters. And Mr. *G. Sandis* in his Travels (*fol. 269.*) relates it to be done betwixt *Aleppo* and *Babylon*. But if that be disbelieved, 'tis not to be doubted that the *Dove* was sent out of the Ark by *Noah*, to give him notice of Land, when to him all appeared to be Sea; and the *Dove* proved a faithful and comfortable messenger. And for the Sacrifices of the Law, a pair of *Turtle Doves* or young *Pigeons* were as well accepted as costly *Bulls* and *Rams*. And when God would feed the Prophet *Elijah*, (*1 King. 17.*) after a kind of miraculous manner he did it by *Ravens*, who brought him meat morning and evening. Lastly, the Holy Ghost when he descended visibly upon our Saviour, did it by assuming the shape of a *Dove*. And, to conclude this part of my discourse, pray remember these wonders were done by birds of the Air, the Element in which they and I take so much pleasure.

There is also a little contemptible winged Creature (an Inhabitant of my Aerial Element) namely, the laborious *Bee*, of whose *Prudence*, *Policy* and regular Government of their own Commonwealth I might say much, as also of their several kinds, and how useful their honey and wax is both for meat and Medicines to mankind; but I will leave them to their sweet labour, without the least disturbance, believing them to be all very busie at this very time amongst

I. Chap. I. **The Compleat Angler.** 13

mongst the herbs and flowers that we see nature puts forth this *May* morning.

And now to return to my Hawks from whom I have made too long a digression; you are to note, that they are usually distinguished into two kinds; namely, the long-winged and the short-winged Hawk: of the first kind, there be chiefly in use amongst us in this Nation,

The *Gerfalcon* and *Jerkin*.

The *Falcon* and *Tassel-gentel*.

The *Laner* and *Laneret*.

The *Bockerel* and *Bockeret*.

The *Saker* and *Sacaret*,

The *Marlin* and *Jack Marlin*.

The *Hobby* and *Jack*.

There is the *Stelletto* of *Spain*.

The *Blond red Rook* from *Turky*.

The *Waskite* from *Virginia*.

And there is of short-winged Hawks

The *Eagle* and *Iron*.

The *Goshawk* and *Tarcel*.

The *Sparhawk* and *Musket*.

The *French Pye* of two sorts.

These are reckoned Hawks of note and worth, but we have also of an inferiour rank.

The *Stanyel*, the *Ringtail*.

The *Raven*, the *Buzzard*.

The forked *Kite*, the bald *Buzzard*.

of *The Hen-driver*, and others that I forbear to name.

Gentlemen, If I should enlarge my discourse to the observation of the *Eiver*, the *Brancher*, the *Ramish Hawk*, the *Haggard*, and the two sorts of *Louters*, and then treat of their several *Ayries*, their *Mewings*, rare order of casting, and the renovation of their *Feathers*; their reclaiming, dyeting, and then come to their rare stories of practice: I say, if I should enter into these, and many other observations that I could make, it would be much, very much pleasure to me: but lest I should break the rules of Civility with you, by taking up more than the proportion of time allotted to me, I will here break off, and entreat you *Mr. Venator*, to say what you are able in the commendation of Hunting, to which you are so much affected, and if time will serve, I will beg your favour for a further enlargement of some of those several heads of which I have spoken. But no more at present.

Venat. Well Sir, and I will now take my turn, and will first begin with a commendation of the earth, as you have done most excellently of the Air, the Earth being that Element upon which I drive my pleasant, wholsom, hungry trade. The Earth is a solid, settled Element; an Element most universally beneficial both to man and beast: to men who have their several

Re-

Recreations upon it, as Horse-races, Hunting, sweet smells, pleasant walks: The Earth feeds man, and all those several beasts that both feed him, and afford him recreation: What pleasure doth man take in hunting the stately *Stag*, the generous *Buck*, the *Wild Boar*, the cunning *Ot-ter*, the crafty *Fox*, and the fearful *Hare*? And if I may descend to a lower Game? what pleasure is it sometimes with Gins to betray the very vermine of the earth? as namely, the *Fiebat*, the *Fulmart*, the *Ferret*, the *Pole-cat*, the *Mould-warp*, and the like creatures that live upon the face, and within the bowels of the earth. How doth the earth bring forth *herbs*, *flowers* and *fruits*, both for *physick* and the *pleasure* of mankind? and above all, to me at least, the fruitful *Vine*, of which, when I drink moderately, it clears my brain, cheers my heart, and sharpens my wit. How could *Cleopatra* have feasted *Mark Antony* with eight Wild Boars roasted whole at one Supper, and other meat suitable, if the earth had not been a bountiful mother? But to pass by the mighty *Elephants*, which the earth breeds and nourisheth, and descend to the least of creatures, how doth the earth afford us a doctrinal example in the little *Pismire*, who in the Summer provides and lays up her Winter provision, and teaches man to do the like? the earth feeds and carries those horses that carry us. If I would be prodigal of my time and your pati-

ence, what might not I say in commendations of the earth? That puts limits to the proud and raging *Sea*, and by that means preserves both man and beast that it destroys them not, as we see it daily doth those that venture upon the *Sea*, and are there ship-wrackt, drowned, and left to feed Haddocks; when we that are so wise as to keep our selves on *earth, walk, and talk, and live, and eat, and drink*, and go a *hunting*: of which recreation I will say a little, and then leave Mr. *Piscator* to the commendation of Angling.

Hunting is a game for Princes and noble persons; it hath been highly prized in all Ages; it was one of the qualifications that *Xenophon* bestowed on his *Cyrus*, that he was a Hunter of wild beasts. Hunting trains up the younger Nobility to the use of manly exercises in their riper age. What more manly exercise than *hunting the Wild Bore, the Stag, the Buck, the Fox or the Hare*? How doth it preserve health, and increase strength and activity?

And for the Dogs that we use, who can commend their excellency to that height which they deserve? How perfect is the Hound at *smelling*, who never leaves or forsakes his first scent, but follows it through so many changes and varieties of other scents, even over, and in the water, and into the earth? What musick doth a pack of Dogs then make to any man, whose heart and ears are so happy as to be set to the
tune

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 17

tune of such instruments? How will a right *Greyhound* fix his eye on the best *Buck* in a *herd*, single him out, and follow him, and him only through a whole herd of Rascal game, and still know and then kill him? For my Hounds I know the language of them, and they know the language and meaning of one another as perfectly as we know the voices of those with whom we discourse daily.

I might enlarge my self in the commendation of *Hunting*, and of the noble Hound especially, as also of the docibleness of *dogs* in general; and I might make many observations of Land-creatures, that for composition, order, figure and constitution, approach nearest to the compleatness and understanding of man; especially of those creatures which *Moses* in the Law permitted to the Jews, (which have cloven Hoofs and chew the Cud) which I shall forbear to name, because I will not be so uncivil to Mr. *Piscator*, as not to allow him a time for the commendation of *Angling*, which he calls an Art; but doubtless 'tis an ealie one: and Mr. *Auceps*, I doubt we shall hear a watry discourse of it; but I hope twill not be a long one.

Auc. And I hope so too, though I fear it will.

Pis. Gentlemen; let not prejudice prepossess you. I confess my discourse is like to
prove

18 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

prove suitable to my Recreation *calm* and *quiet*; we seldom take the name of God into our mouths, but it is either to praise him or pray to him; if others use it vainly in the midst of their recreations, so vainly as if they meant to conjure; I must tell you, it is neither our fault nor our custom; we protest against it. But, pray remember I accuse no body; for as I would not make a *watry* discourse, so I would not put too much *vinegar* into it; nor would I raise the reputation of my own Art by the diminution or ruine of anothers. And so much for the Prologue to what I mean to say.

And now for the *Water*, the Element that I trade in. The *water* is the eldest daughter of the Creation, the Element upon which the Spirit of God did first move, the Element which God commanded to bring forth living creatures abundantly; and without which those that inhabit the Land, even all creatures that have breath in their nostrils must suddenly return to putrefaction. *Moses* the great Law-giver and chief Philosopher, skilled in all the learning of the Egyptians, who was called the friend of God, and knew the mind of the Almighty, names this Element the first in the Creation; this is the Element upon which the Spirit of God did first move, and is the chief Ingredient in the Creation: many Philosophers have made it to comprehend all the other Elements,
and

I. Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 19

and most allow it the chiefest in the mixtion of all living creatures.

There be that profess to believe that all bodies are made of *water*, and may be reduced back again to water only: they endeavour to demonstrate it thus,

Take a *Willow* (or any like speedy growing plant) newly rooted in a box or barrel full of earth, weigh them altogether exactly when the tree begins to grow, and then weigh all together after the tree is increased from its first rooting to weigh an hundred pound weight more than when it was first rooted and weighed; and you shall find this augment of the tree to be without the diminution of one dram weight of the earth. Hence they infer this increase of wood to be from water of rain, or from dew, and not to be from any other Element. And they affirm, they can reduce this wood back again to water; and they affirm also the same may be done in any *animal* or *vegetable*. And this I take to be a fair testimony of the excellency of my Element of Water.

The *Water* is more productive than the *Earth*. Nay, the earth hath no fruitfulness without showers or dews; for all the *herbs*, and *flowers*, and *fruit* are produced and thrive by the water; and the very Minerals are fed by streams that run under ground, whose natural course carries them to the tops of many high mountains, as
we

we see by several springs breaking forth on the tops of the highest hills ; and this is also witnessed by the daily trial and testimony of several Miners.

Nay, the increase of those creatures that are bred and fed in the water , are not only more and more miraculous , but more advantageous to man , not only for the lengthning of his life, but for the preventing of sickness ; for 'tis observed by the most learned Physicians, that the casting off of Lent and other Fish-daies, (which hath not only given the Lie to so many learned, pious, wise Founders of Colledges, for which we should be ashamed) hath doubtless been the chief cause of those many putrid, shaking, intermitting Agues, unto which this Nation of ours is now more subject than those wiser Countries that feed on Herbs , Sallets , and plenty of Fish ; of which it is observed in Story, that the greatest part of the world now do. And it may be fit to remember that *Moses* (*Lev. 11.9. Deut. 14.9.*) appointed Fish to be the chief diet for the best Common-wealth that ever yet was.

And it is observable not only that there are *fish*, (as namely the *Whale*) three times as big as the mighty Elephant ; that is so fierce in battel ; but that the mightiest Feasts have been of Fish. The *Romans* in the height of their glory have made Fish the mistress of all their
enter-

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 21

entertainments; they have had Musick to usher in their *Sturgeons, Lampreys, and Mulletts*, which they would purchase at rates rather to be wondered at than believed. He that shall view the Writings of *Macrobius* or *Varro*, may be confirmed and informed of this, and of the incredible value of their Fish, and fish-ponds.

But, Gentlemen, I have almost lost my self, which I confess I may easily do in this Philosophical Discourse; I met with most of it very lately (and I hope happily) in a conference with a most learned Physician, *Dr. Wharton*, a dear Friend; that loves both me and my Art of Angling. But however I will wade no deeper in these mysterious Arguments, but pass to such Observations as I can manage with more pleasure, and less fear of running into error. But I must not yet forsake the Waters, by whose help we have so many known advantages.

And first (to pass by the miraculous cures of our known *Baths*) how advantageous is the *Sea* for our daily Traffique; without which we could not now subsist? How does it not only furnish us with food and Physick for the bodies, but with such Observations for the mind as ingenious persons would not want?

How ignorant had we been of the beauty of *Florence*, of the *Minuments, Urns, and Rarities* that yet remain in, and near unto old and new *Rome*, (so many as it is said will take up a years
time

time to view, and afford to each of them but a convenient consideration;) and therefore it is not to be wondred at, that so learned and devout a Father as *St. Jerome*, after his wish to have seen Christ in the flesh, and to have heard *St. Paul* preach, makes his third wish, to *have seen Rome in her glory*; and that glory is not yet all lost, for what pleasure is it to see the Monuments of *Livy*, the choicest of the Historians: of *Tully*, the best of Orators; and to see the Bay-trees that now grow out of the very Tomb of *Virgil*? These to any that love Learning must be pleasing. But what pleasure is it to a devout Christian to see there the humble house in which *St. Paul* was content to dwell; and to view the many rich *Statues* that are there made in honour of his memory? nay, to see the very place in which *St. Peter* and he lie buried together? These are in and near to *Rome*. And how much more doth it please the pious curiosity of a Christian to see that place on which the blessed Saviour of the world was pleased to humble himself, and to take our nature upon him, and to converse with men: to see Mount *Sion*, *Jerusalem*, and the very Sepulchre of our Lord *Jesus*? How may it beget and heighten the zeal of a Christian to see the Devotions that are daily paid to him at that place? Gentlemen, lest I forget my self I will stop here, and remember you, that but for my Element of water the Inhabitants

Chap.1. The Compleat Angler. 23

tants of this poor Island must remain ignorant that such things ever were, or that any of them have yet a being.

Gentlemen, I might both enlarge and lose my self in such like Arguments; I might tell you that Almighty God is said to have spoken to a *Fish*, but never to a *Beast*; that he hath made a *Whale* a Ship to carry and set his Prophet *Jonah* safe on the appointed shore. Of these I might speak, but I must in manners break off, for I see *Theobalds* house. I cry you mercy for being so long, and thank you for your patience.

Anceps. Sir, my pardon is easily granted you: I except against nothing that you have said; nevertheless, I must part with you at this Park-wall, for which I am very sorry; but I assure you Mr. *Piscator*, I now part with you full of good thoughts, not only of your self, but your Recreation. And so Gentlemen, God keep you both.

Pisc. Well, now Mr. *Venator* you shall neither want time nor my attention to hear you enlarge your Discourse concerning Hunting.

Venat. Not I Sir, I remember you said that *Angling* it self was of great Antiquity, and a perfect Art, and an Art not easily attained to; and you have so won upon me in your former discourse, that I am very desirous to hear what you can say further concerning those particulars.

Pisc.

24 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

Pisc. Sir, I did say so, and I doubt not but if you and I did converse together but a few hours, to leave you posselt with the same high and happy thoughts that now possess me of it; not only of the Antiquity of *Angling*, but that it deserves commendations, and that it is an Art, and an Art worthy the knowledg and practise of a wise man.

Venat. Pray Sir, speak of them what you think fit, for we have yet five miles to the *Thatcht-House*, during which walk, I dare promise you, my patience, and diligent attention shall not be wanting. And if you shall make that to appear which you have undertaken, first, that it is an Art, and an Art worth the learning, I shall beg that I may attend you a day or two a fishing, and that I may become your Scholar, and be instructed in the Art it self which you so much magnifie.

Pisc. O Sir, doubt not but that *Angling* is an Art; is it not an Art to deceive a *Trout* with an artificial Flie? a *Trout*! that is more sharp sighted than any Hawk you have nam'd, and more watchful and timorous than your high mettled *Marlin* is bold? and yet, I doubt not to catch a brace or two to morrow, for a friends breakfast: doubt not therefore, Sir, but that *Angling* is an Art, and an Art vworth your learning: the Question is rather, vvwhether you be capable of learning it? for *Angling* is some-
what

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 25

what like *Poetry*, men are to be born so : I mean, with inclinations to it, though both may be heightned by discourse and practice, but he that hopes to be a good *Angler* must not only bring an inquiring, searching, observing wit ; but he must bring a large measure of hope and patience, and a love and propensity to the Art it self ; but having once got and practis'd it, then doubt not but *Angling* will prove to be so pleasant, that it will prove to be like Vertue, *a reward to it self.*

Venat. Sir, I am now become so full of expectation that I long much to have you proceed ; and in the order that you propose.

Pisc. Then first, for the *antiquity* of *Angling*, of which I shall not say much, but onely this ; Some say it is as ancient as *Dencalions* Flood ; others that *Belus*, who was the first Inventer of Godly and vertuous Recreations, was the first Inventer of *Angling* : and some others say (for former times have had their disquisitions about the Antiquity of it) that *Seth*, one of the Sons of *Adam*, taught it to his Sons, and that by them it was derived to posterity : others say, that he left it engraven on those pillars which he erected, and trusted to preserve the knowledge of the *Mathematicks*, *Musick*, and the rest of that precious knowledge, and those useful Arts which by Gods appointment or allowance and his noble industry were thereby preserved from perishing in *Noahs* flood.

D

These

These, Sir, have been the opinions of several men, that have possibly endeavored to make *Angling* more ancient than is needful, or may well be warranted; but for my part, I shall content my self in telling you that *Angling* is much more ancient than the Incarnation of our Saviour; for in the Prophet *Amos* mention is made of *fish-hooks*; and in the Book of *Job* (which was long before the days of *Amos* (for that book is said to be writ by *Moses*) mention is made also of *fish-hooks*, which must imply Anglers in those times.

But, my worthy friend, as I would rather prove my self a *Gentleman* by being *learned* and *bumble*, *valiant*, and *inoffensive*, *vertuous*, and *communicable*, than by any fond ostentation of riches, or wanting those vertues my self, boast that these were in my Ancestors (and yet I grant that where a noble and ancient descent and such merits meet in any man, it is a double dignification of that person:) So if this Antiquity of *Angling*, (which for my part I have not forced,) shall like an ancient family, be either an honour or an ornament to this vertuous Art which I profess to love and practice, I shall be the gladder that I made an accidental mention of the antiquity of it; of which I shall say no more but proceed to that just commendation which I think it deserves.

And

And for that I shall tell you, that in ancient times a debate hath risen, (and it remains yet unresolved) Whether the happiness of man in this world doth consist more in *Contemplation* or *action*?

Concerning which some have endeavoured to maintain their opinion of the first, by saying, *That the nearer we Mortals come to God by way of imitation, the more happy we are.* And they say, *That God enjoys himself only by a contemplation of his own infiniteness, Eternity, Power and Goodness,* and the like. And upon this ground many Cloysteral men of great learning and devotion prefer *Contemplation* before *Action*. And many of the fathers seem to approve this opinion, as may appear in their Commentaries upon the words of our Saviour to *Martha, Luke 10. 41, 42.*

And on the contrary, there want not men of equal authority and credit, that prefer *action* to be the more excellent, as namely *experiments in Physick, and the application of it, both for the ease and prolongation of mans life;* by which each man is enabled to act and do good to others; either to serve his Countrey, or do good to particular persons; and they say also, *That action is Doctrinal, and teaches both art and vertue. and is a maintainer of humane society,* and for these, and other like reasons to be preferred before *contemplation.*

Concerning which two opinions I shall forbear to add a third by declaring my own, and rest my self contented in telling you (my very worthy friend) that both these meet together, and do most properly belong to the most *honest, ingenuous, quiet, and harmless* art of *Angling*.

And first, I shall tell you what some have observed, (and I have found it to be a real truth) that the very sitting by the Rivers side is not only the quietest and fittest place for *contemplation*, but will invite an Angler to it: and this seems to be maintained by the learned *Pet. du Moulin*, who (in his Discourse of the fulfilling of Prophecies) observes, that when God intended to reveal any future events or high notions to his Prophets, he then carried them either to the *Desarts* or the *Sea-shore*, that having so separated them from amidst the press of *people* and *business*, and the cares of the world, he might settle their mind in a quiet repose, and there make them fit for Revelation.

And this seems also to be intimated by the Children of *Israel*, (*Psal. 137.*) who having in a sad condition banished all mirth and musick from their pensive hearts, and having hung up their then mute Harps upon the Willow-trees growing by the Rivers of *Babylon*, sate down upon those banks bemoaning the ruines of *Sion*, and contemplating their own sad condition.

And

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 29

And an ingenuous *Spaniard* says, *That Rivers and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for wise men to contemplate, and fools to pass by without consideration.* And though I will not rank my self in the number of the first, yet give me leave to free my self from the last, by offering to you a short contemplation, first of *Rivers*, and then of *Fish*; concerning which I doubt not but to give you many observations that will appear very considerable: I am sure they have appeared so to me, and made many an hour pass away more pleasantly, as I have sat quietly on a flowry Bank by a calm River, and contemplated what I shall now relate to you.

And first concerning Rivers; there be so many wonders reported and written of them, and of the several Creatures that be bred and live in them; and, those by Authors of so good credit, that we need not to deny them an historical Faith.

As namely of a River in *Epirus*, that puts out any lighted Torch, and kindles any Torch that was not lighted. Some Waters being drank cause madness, some drunkenness, and some laughter to death. The River *Selarus* in a few hours turns a rod or wand to stone: and our *Cambden* mentions the like in *England*, and the like in *Lochmere* in *Ireland*. There is also a River in *Arabia*, of which all the sheep that drink

30 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I**

thereof have their wool turned into a Vermilion colour. And one of no less credit than *Aristotle*, tells us of a merry River, (the River *Elusina*) that dances at the noise of musick, for with musick it bubbles, dances and grows sandy, and so continues till the musick ceases, but then it presently returns to its wonted calmness and clearness. And *Cambden* tells us of a Well near to *Kerby* in *Westmoreland*, that ebbs and flows several times every day: and he tells us of a River in *Surry* (it is called *Mole*) that after it has run several miles, being opposed by hills, finds or makes it self a way under ground, and breaks out again so far off, that the Inhabitants thereabout boast, (as the *Spaniards* do of their River *Anus*) that they feed divers flocks of sheep upon a Bridge. And lastly, for I would not tire your patience, one of no less authority than *Josephus* that learned Jew, tells us of a River in *Judea*, that runs swiftly all the six days of the week, and stands still and rests all their *Sabbath*.

But I will lay aside my Discourse of Rivers and tell you some things of the Monsters, or Fish, call them what you will, that they breed and feed in them. *Pliny* the Philosopher says, (in the third Chapter of his ninth Book) that in the *Indian Sea*, the fish call'd the *Balena* or *Whirle-Pool* is so long and broad, as to take up more in length and bredth than two Acres of ground,

ground, and of other fish of two hundred cubits long; and that in the River *Ganges*, there be Eeles of thirty foot long. He says there, that these Monsters appear in that Sea only, when the tempestuous winds oppose the Torrents of Waters falling from the Rocks into it, and so turning what lay at the bottom to be seen on the waters top. And he says, that the people of *Cadara* (an Island near this place) make the Timber for their houses of those Fish-bones. He there tells us, that there are sometimes a thousand of these great Eeles found wrapt, or interwoven together. He tells us there, that it appears that Dolphins love musick, and will come, when call'd for, by some men or boys, that know and use to feed them, and that they can swim as swift as an Arrow can be shot out a Bow, and much of this is spoken concerning the *Dolphin*, and other Fish, as may be found also in learned Dr. *Casaubons* Discourse of Credulity, and Incredulity, printed by him about the year 1670.

I know, we Islanders are averse to the belief of these wonders: but, there be so many strange Creatures to be now seen (many collected by *John Trevescant*, and others added by my friend *Elias Ashmole* Esq; who now keeps them carefully and methodically at his house near to *Lambeth* near *London*) as may get some belief of some of the other wonders I mentioned. I

will tell you some of the wonders that you may now see, and not till then believe, unless you think fit.

You may there see the *Hog-fish*, the *Dog-fish*, the *Dolphin*, the *Cony-Fish*, the *Parrot-fish*, the *Shark*, the *Poyson-fish*, *sword-fish*, and not only other incredible fish ! but you may there see the *Salamander*, several sorts of *Barnacles*, of *Solan Geese*, the *bird of Paradise*, such sorts of Snakes, and such *birds-nests*, and of so various forms, and so wonderfully made, as may beget wonder and amusement in any beholder : and so many hundred of other rarities in that Collection, as will make the other wonders I spake of, the less incredible ; for, you may note, that the waters are natures store-house, in which she locks up her wonders.

But, Sir, lest this Discourse may seem tedious, I shall give it a sweet conclusion out of that holy Poet Mr. *George Herbert* his Divine Contemplation on Gods Providence.

Lord, who hath praise enough, nay, who hath any?
(them ;
None can express thy works, but he that knows
And none can know thy works, they are so many,
And so compleat, but only he that owes them.

We

*We all acknowledg both thy power and love
To be exact, transcendent and divine ;
Who doſt ſo ſtrangely and ſo ſweetly move,*
(*thine.*)
Whilst all things have their end, yet none but

*Wherefore, moſt ſacred Spirit, I here preſent
For me, and all my fellows, praiſe to thee ;
And juſt it is that I ſhould pay the rent,
Because the benefit accrues to me.*

And as concerning Fiſh in that Pſalm, (*Pſal*
104.) wherein for height of Poetry and Won-
ders the Prophet *David* ſeems even to exceed
himſelf, how doth he there expreſs himſelf in
choice Metaphors, even to the amazement of a
contemplative Reader, concerning the *Sea*, the
Rivers, and the *Fiſh* therein contained ? And
the great Naturaliſt *Pliny* ſays, *That Nature*
great and wonderful power is more demonstrated
in the Sea than on the Land. And this may
appear by the numerous and various Creatures
inhabiting both in and about that Element ; as
to the Readers of *Gefner*, *Rondeletius*, *Pliny*, *Au-*
ſonius, *Ariſtotle*, and others, may be demonſtra-
ted. But I will ſweeten this Diſcourſe alſo out
of a Contemplation in Divine *Du-*
bartas, who ſays,

*Dubartas in
the fiſh day.*

God

*God quickned in the sea and in the rivers,
 So many Fishes of so many features,
 That in the waters we may see all creatures,
 Even all that on the earth are to be found,
 As if the world were in deep waters drown'd.
 For seas (as well as skies) have Sun, Moon, Stars;
 (As well as air) Swallows, Rooks, and Stares;
 (As well as earth) Vines, Roses, Nettles, Melons,
 Mushrooms, Pinks, Gilliflowers, and many millions
 Of other plants, more rare, more strange than these,
 As very fishes living in the seas:
 As also Rams, Calves, Horses, Hares and Hogs,
 Wolves, Urchins, Lions, Elephants and Dogs;
 Yea men and Maids, and which I most admire,
 The mitred Bishop, and the cowled Fryer.
 Of which, Examples but a few years since,
 Were shewn the Norway and Polonian Prince.*

These seem to be wonders, but have had so many confirmations from men of learning and credit, that you need not doubt them; nor are the number, nor the various shapes of fishes, more strange or more fit for contemplation, than their different natures, inclinations and actions; concerning which I shall beg your patient ear a little longer.

The *Cuttle-fish* will cast a long gut out of her throat, which (like as an Angler doth his line) she sendeth forth and pulleth in again

at

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 35

at her pleasure, according as she sees some little fish come near to her; and the *Cuttle-fish* (being then hid in the gravel) lets the smaller fish nibble and bite the end of it, at which time she by little and little draws the smaller fish so near to her, that she may leap upon her, and then catches and devours her: and for this reason some have called this fish the *Sea-Angler*.

*Mount. Essays,
and others af-
firm this.*

And there is a fish called a *Hermit*, that at a certain age gets into a dead fishes shell, and like a *Hermite* dwells there alone, studying the wind and weather, and so turns her shell, that she makes it defend her from the injuries that they would bring upon her.

There is also a fish called by *Ælian* (in his 9. book of *Living Creatures*, Chap. 16.) the *Adonis*, or *Darling* of the Sea; so called, because it is a loving and innocent fish, a fish that hurts nothing that hath life, and is at peace with all the numerous Inhabitants of that vast watery Element: and truly I think most Anglers are so disposed to most of mankind.

And there are also lustful and chaste fishes, of which I shall give you examples.

And first, what *Dubartas* says of a fish called the *Sargus*; which (because none can expresse it better than he does) I shall give you in his own words, supposing it shall not have the less credit

36 **The Compleat Angler. Part.I.**

credit for being Verse, for he hath gathered this, and other observations out of Authors that have been great and industrious searchers into the secrets of Nature.

*The Adult'rous Sargus doth not only change
Wives every day in the deep streams, but (strange)
As if the hony of Sea-love delight
Could not suffice his ranging appetite,
Goes courting she-Goats on the grassie shore,
Horning their husbands that had horns before.*

And the same Author writes concerning the *Cantharus*, that which you shall also hear in his own words.

*But contrary, the constant Cantharus
Is ever constant to his faithful Sponse,
In nuptial duties spending his chaste life,
Never loves any but his own dear Wife.*

Sir, but a little longer, and I have done.

Venat. Sir, take what liberty you think fit, for your discourse seems to be Musick, and charms me to an attention.

Pisc. Why then Sir, I will take a little liberty to tell, or rather to remember you what is said of *Turtle-Doves*; First, That they silently plight their troth and marry; and that then, the Survivor scorns (as the *Thracian women* are said to do)

Chap. 1. The Compleat Angler. 37

do) to out-live his or her mate, and this is taken for a truth, and if the survivor shall ever couple with another, then not only the living, but the dead, (be it either the He or the she) is denyed the *name* and *honour* of a true *Turtle-dove*.

And to parallel this Land-Rarity, and teach mankind moral faithfulness, and to condemn those that talk of Religion, and yet come short of the moral faith of fish and fowl; Men that violate the Law affirmed by Saint *Paul* (*Rom. 2. 14, 15.*) to be writ in their hearts, (and which he says, shall at the last day condemn and leave them without excuse.) I pray *Dubartas* hearken to what *Dubartas* sings, (for *fish day*. the hearing of such conjugal faithfulness, will be Musick to all chaste ears) and therefore I pray harken to what *Dubartas* sings of the *Mullet*.

*But for chaste love the Mullet hath no peer;
For, if the Fisher hath surpriz'd her pheer,
As mad with wo, to shore she followeth,
Prest to consort him both in life and death.*

On the contrary, What shall I say of the *Houfe-Cock*, which treads any Hen, and then (contrary to the *Swan*, the *Partridge* and *Pigeon*) takes no care to hatch, to feed or to cherish his own brood, but is senseless though they perish.

And

And 'tis considerable, that the Hen (which because she also takes any *Cock*, expects it not) who is sure the Chickens be her own, hath by a moral impression her care and affection to her own Brood more than doubled, even to such a height, that our Saviour in expressing his love to *Jerusalem* (*Mat. 23. 37.*) quotes her for an example of tender affection; as his Father had done *Job* for a pattern of patience.

And to parallel this *Cock*, there be divers fishes that cast their Spawn on flags or stones, and then leave it uncovered, and exposed to become a prey, and be devoured by Vermine or other fishes: but other fishes (as namely the *Barbel*) take such care for the preservation of their seed, that (unlike to the *Cock* or the *Cuckoe*) they mutually labour (both the Spawner and the Melter) to cover their Spawn with sand, or watch it, or hide it in some secret place unfrequented by Vermine or by any Fish but themselves.

Sir, these Examples may, to you and others, seem strange; but they are testified some by *Aristotle*, some by *Pliny*, some by *Gesner*, and by many others of credit, and are believed and known by divers; both of wisdom and experience, to be a Truth; and indeed are (as I said at the beginning) fit for the contemplation of a most serious and a most pious man. And doubtless this made the Prophet *David* say, *They that*
occupy

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 39

occupy themselves in deep waters see the wonderful works of God : indeed such wonders and pleasures too as the land affords not.

And that they be fit for the contemplation of the most prudent, and pious, and peaceable men, seems to be testified by the practise of so many devout and contemplative men, as the *Patriarchs* and *Prophets* of old ; and of the *Apostles* of our Saviour in our latter times ; of which twelve, we are sure he chose four that were simple Fisher-men, whom he inspired and sent to publish his blessed Will to the *Gentiles*, and inspir'd them also with a power to speak all languages, and by their powerful Eloquence to beget faith in the unbelieving *Jews* : and themselves to suffer for that Saviour whom their fore fathers and they had Crucified, and, in their sufferings, to preach freedom from the incumbrances of the Law, and a new way to everlasting life this was the imployment of these happy Fishermen. Concerning which choice, some have made these Observations.

First that he never reprov'd these for their Imployment or Calling, as he did the *Scribes* and the *Money-changers*. And secondly, he found that the hearts of such men by nature were fitted for contemplation and quietnesse ; men of mild, and sweet, and peaceable spirits, as indeed most Anglers are : these men our blessed Saviour, (who is observed to love to plant grace
in

in good natures) though indeed nothing be too hard for him, yet these men he chose to call from their irreprovable imployment of Fishing, and gave them grace to be his Disciples, and to follow him and doe wonders, I say four of twelve.

And it is observable, that it was our Saviours will, that these our four Fishermen should have a priority of nomination in the Catalogue of his twelve Apostles, (*Mat. 10.*) as namely first *St. Peter*, *St. Andrew*, *St. James* and *St. John*, and then the rest in their order.

And it is yet more observable, that when our blessed Saviour went up into the Mount, when he left the rest of his Disciples, and chose only three to bear him company at his *Transfiguration*, that those three were all Fishermen. And it is to be believed, that all the other Apostles, after they betook themselves to follow Christ, betook themselves to be Fishermen too; for it is certain that the greater number of them were found together Fishing by Jesus after his Resurrection, as it is recorded in the 21. Chapter of *St. Johns* Gospel.

And since I have your promise to hear me with patience, I will take a liberty to look back upon an observation that hath been made by an ingenuous and learned man, who observes that God hath been pleased to allow those, whom he himself hath appointed to write his holy Will in holy writ, yet, to express his Will in such Metaphors

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 41

phors as their former affections or practice had inclined them to; and he brings *Solomon* for an example, who before his conversion was remarkably carnally-amorous; and after by Gods appointment wrote that spiritual Dialogue or holy amorous Love-song (the *Canticles*) betwixt God and his Church; (in which he sayes his beloved had *Eyes like the fish-pools of Heshbon.*)

And if this hold in reason (as I see none to the contrary,) then it may be probably concluded, that *Moses* (who, I told you before, writ the Book of *Job*) and the Prophet *Amos*, who was a Shepherd, were both Anglers; for you shall in all the Old Testament find Fish-hooks, I think but twice mentioned, namely, by meek *Moses* the friend of God, and by the humble Prophet *Amos*.

Concerning which last, namely the Prophet *Amos* I shall make but this Observation, That he that shall read the *humble, lowly, plain* style of that Prophet, and compare it with the *high, glorious, eloquent* style of the Prophet *Isaiab* (though they be both equally true) may easily believe *Amos* to be, not only a Shepherd, but a good-natur'd, plain *Fisher-man*.

Which I do the rather believe by comparing the affectionate, loving, lowly, humble Epistles of *S. Peter, S. James* and *S. John*, whom we know were all Fishers, with the glorious language and high Metaphors of *S. Paul*. who we may believe was not.

E

And

And for the lawfulness of Fishing it may very well be maintained by our Saviours bidding St. *Peter* cast his hook into the water and catch a Fish, for mony to pay Tribute to *Cæsar*. And let me tell you, that Angling is of high esteem, and of much use in other Nations. He that reads the Voyages of *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto*, shall find, that there he declares to have found a King and several Priests a Fishing.

And he that reads *Plutarch*; shall find, that Angling was not contemptible in the days of *Mark Antony* and *Cleopatra*, and that they in the midst of their wonderful glory used Angling as a principal recreation. And let me tell you, that in the Scripture, Angling is always taken in the best sense, and that though hunting may be sometimes so taken, yet it is but seldom to be so understood. And let me add this more, he that views the ancient Ecclesiastical Canons, shall find *Hunting* to be forbidden to *Church-men*, as being a turbulent, toilsom, perplexing Recreation; and shall find *Angling* allowed to *Clergy-men*, as being a harmless Recreation, a recreation that invites them to *contemplation* and *quietness*.

I might here enlarge my self by telling you, what commendations our learned *Perkins* bestowes on Angling: and how dear a lover, and great a practiser of it our learned Doctor *Whitaker* was, as indeed many others of great learn-

learning have been. But I will content my self with two memorable men, that lived near to our own time, whom I also take to have been ornaments to the Art of Angling.

The first is Doctor *Nowel* sometimes * 1550. Dean of the Cathedral Church of St. *

Pauls in London, where his Monument stands yet undefaced, a man that in the Reformation of Queen *Elizabeth* (not that of *Henry the VIII.*) was so noted for his meek spirit, deep learning, prudence and piety, that the then Parliament and Convocation both, chose, enjoyned and trusted him to be the man to make a Catechism for publick use, such a one as should stand as a rule for faith and manners to their posterity. And the good old man (though he was very learned, yet knowing that God leads us not to Heaven by many nor by hard questions) like an honest Angler, made that *good, plain, unperplexed* Catechism which is printed with our good old Service Book. I say, this good man was a dear lover, and constant practicer of Angling, as any Age can produce; and his custom was to spend besides his sixt hours of prayer, (those hours which by command of the Church were enjoyned the Clergy, and voluntarily dedicated to devotion by many Primitive Christians:) I say, besides those hours, this good man was observed to spend a tenth part of his time in Angling; and also (for I have conversed with those which have

44 The Compleat Angler. Part. I.

conversed with him) to bestow a tenth part of his Revenue, and usually all his fish, amongst the poor that inhabited near to those Rivers in which it was caught: saying often, *That charity gave life to Religion*: and at his return to his House would praise God he had spent that day free from worldly trouble; both harmlessly, and in a recreation that became a Church-man. And this good man was well content, if not desirous, that posterity should know he was an Angler, as may appear by his Picture, now to be seen, and carefully kept in *Brasenose Colledge* (to which he was a liberal Benefactor) in which Picture he is drawn leaning on a Desk with his Bible before him, and, on one hand of him his *lines, books*, and other *tackling* lying in a round; and on his other hand are his Angle-rods of several sorts: and by them this is written, *That he died. 13. Feb. 1601. being aged 95. years, 44 of which he had been Dean of St. Pauls Church; and that his age had neither impair'd his bearing, nor dimm'd his eyes, nor weakn'd his memory, nor made any of the faculties of his mind weak or useles.* 'Tis said that *angling* and *temperance* were great causes of these blessings, and I wish the like to all that imitate him, and love the memory of so good a man.

My next and last example shall be that undervaluer of money, the late Provost of *Eton Colledge*, *Sir Henry Wotton*, (a man with whom

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 45

I have often fish'd and convers'd) a man whose
 foreign Employments in the service of this
 Nation, and whose *experience, learning, wit* and
cheerfulness made his company to be esteemed
 one of the delights of mankind; this man,
 whose very approbation of Angling were suffi-
 cient to convince any modest censurer of it,
 this man was also a most dear lover, and a fre-
 quent practiser of the art of angling; of which
 he would say, *'Twas an employment for his idle*
time, which was then not idly spent: for angling
 was after tedious Study, *a rest to his mind, a chea-*
rer of his spirits, a diverter of sadness, a calmer of
unquiet thoughts, a moderator of passions, a procu-
rer of contentedness: and that it begat habits of
 peace and patience in those that profess'd and pra-
 ctis'd it. Indeed, my friend, you will find angling
 to be like the vertue of Humility, which has a
 calmness of spirit, and a world of other blessings
 attending upon it.

Sir, This was the saying of that learned man,
 and I do easily believe that *peace, and patience,*
 and a calm content did cohabit in the cheerful
 heart of Sir Henry Wotton, because I know that
 when he was beyond seventy years of age, he
 made this description of a part of the present
 pleasure that possess'd him, as he sat quietly
 in a Summers evening on a bank a Fishing; it
 is a description of the Spring, which, because
 it glided as soft and sweetly from his pen, as

46 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I**

That river does at this time by which it was then made, I shall repeat it unto you.

*This day dame Nature seem'd in love :
 The lusty sap began to move ;
 Fresh juice did stir th' embracing Vines,
 And birds had drawn their Valentines,
 The jealous Trout, that low did lye,
 Rose at a well dissembled flie ;
 There stood my friend with patient skill,
 Attending of his trembling quill.
 Already were the eaves possess'd
 With the swift Pilgrims dawbed nest :
 The Groves already did rejoyce,
 In Philomels triumphing voice :
 The showers were short, the weather mild,
 The morning fresh, the evening smild.
 Jone takes her neat rub'd pail, and now
 She trips to milk the sand-red Cow ;
 Where, for some sturdy foot-ball Swain,
 Jone strokes a sillibub or twain,
 The fields and gardens were beset
 With Tulips, Crocus, Violet,
 And now, though late, the modest Rose
 Did more then half a blush disclose.
 Thus all looks gay, and full of chear.
 To welcome the new livery'd year.*

These were the thoughts that then possess'd
 the undisturbed mind of Sir Henry Watton. Will
 you

Chap. I. **The Compleat Angler.** 47

you hear the wish of another Angler, and the commendation of his happy life which he also sings in Verse ? viz. *Jo. Davors Esq.*

*Let me live harmlesly, and near the brink,
Of Trent or Avon have a dwelling place ;
Where I may see my quill or cork down sink
With eager bite of Perch, or Bleak, or Dace :
And on the world and my Creator think,
Whilst some men strive ill gotten goods t' embrace;
And others spend their time in base excess
Of wine, or worse, in war and wantonness.*

*Let them that list, these pastimes still pursue,
And on such pleasing fancies feed their fill,
So I the fields and Meadows green may view,
And daily by fresh Rivers walk at will,
Among the Daisies and the Violets blew.
Red Hyacinth, and yellow Daffadil,
Purple Narcissus like the morning rays
Pale Gandergrasse, and azure Culverkeyes.*

*I count it higher pleasure to behold
The stately compasse of the lofty skie,
And in the midst thereof (like burning gold)
The flaming Chariot of the Worlds great eye,
The watry clouds that in the air up rol'd,
With sundry kinds of painted colours flie,
And fair Aurora lifting up her bead,
Still blushing, rise from old Tithonus bed.*

48 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

*The hills and mountains raised from the plains,
The plains extended level with the ground,
The grounds divided into sundry veins,
The veins inclos'd with rivers running round;
These rivers making way through natures chains
With headlong course into the sea profound;
The raging sea, beneath the vallies low,
where lakes and rills and rivulets do flow.*

*The lofty woods the forrests wide and long
Adorn'd with leaves and branches fresh and green,
In whose cool bowers the birds with many a song
Do welcome with their Quire the Summers
Queen:*

*The Meadows fair where Flora's gifts among
Are intermixt, with verdant grasse between.*

*The silver-scaled fish that softly swim
Within the sweet brooks chrystal, watry stream.
All these, and many more of his Creation
That made the Heavens, the Angler oft doth see;
Taking therein no little delectation,
To think how strange, how wonderful they be;
Framing thereof an inward contemplation,
To set his heart from other fancies free;
And whilst he looks on these with joyful eye,
His mind is rapt above the starry Skie.*

Sir I am glad my memory has not lost these
last Verses, because they are somewhat more
pleasant and more sutable to May-Day, than
my harsh Discourse, and I am glad your pati-
ence

Chap. I. The Compleat Angler. 49

ence hath held out so long, as to hear them and me: for both together have brought us within the sight of the *Thatcht-house*: and I must be your Debtor (if you think it worth your attention) for the rest of my promised discourse, till some other opportunity, and a like time of leisure.

Venat. Sir, you have Angled me on with much pleasure to the *Thatcht-house*: and I now find your words true *That good company makes the way seem short*, for trust me, Sir, I thought we had wanted three miles of this *House* till you shewed it to me: but now we are at it, we'll turn into it, and refresh our selves with a cup of drink and a little rest.

Pisc. Most gladly (Sir) and we'll drink a civil cup to all the *Otter Hunters* that are to meet you to morrow.

Ven. That we will Sir, and to all the lovers of Angling too, of which number, I am now willing to be one my self, for by the help of your good discourse and company, I have put on new thoughts both of the Art of Angling, and of all that professe it: and if you will but meet me to morrow at the time and place appointed, and bestow own day with me and my friends in hunting the *Otter*, I will dedicate the next two dayes to wait upon you, and we two will for that time do nothing but angle, and talk of fish and fishing.

Pisc.

Pisc. 'Tis a match, Sir, I'll not fail you, God willing, to be at *Ammel-hill* to morrow morning before Sun-rising.

C H A P. II.

Observations of the Otter and Chub.

V*Enat.* My friend *Piscator*, you have kept time with my thoughts, for the Sun is just rising, and I my self just now come to this place, and the dogs have just now put down an *Otter*; look down at the bottom of the hill there in that Meadow, chequered with *water-Lillies*, and *Lady-smocks*, there you may see what work they make; look, look, you may see all busie, men and dogs, dogs and men, all busie.

Pisc. Sir, I am right glad to meet you, and glad to have so fair an entrance into this dayes sport, and glad to see so many dogs, and more men all in pursuit of the *Otter*; lets complement no longer, but joyn unto them; come honest *Venator*, lets be gone, lets us make hast; I long to be doing: no reasonable hedg or ditch shall hold me.

Ven. Gentleman Huntf-man, where found you this *Otter*.

Hunt, Marry (Sir) we found her a mile from this place a fishing; she has this morning eaten the

Chap.2. The Compleat Angler. 51

he greatest part of this *Trout*; she has only left thus much of it as you see, and was fishing for more; when we came we found her just at it: but we were here very early, we were here an hour before Sun-rise, and have given her no rest since we came; sure she will hardly escape all these dogs and men. I am to have the skin if we kill her.

Ven. Why, Sir, what's the skin worth?

Hunt. 'Tis worth ten shillings to make gloves; the gloves of an *Otter* are the best fortification for your hands that can be thought on against wet weather.

Pisc. I pray, honest Huntsman, let me ask you a pleasant question, do you hunt a beast or a fish?

Hunt. Sir, It is not in my power to resolve you, I leave it to be resolved by the Colledge of *Carthusians*, who have made vows never to eat flesh. But I have heard, the question hath been debated among many great Clerks, and they seem to differ about it; yet most agree that her tail is Fish: and if her body be Fish too, then I may say, that a Fish will walk upon land, (for an *Otter* does so) sometimes five or six, or ten miles in a night to catch for her young ones, or to glut herself with Fish, and I can tell you that *Pigeons* will fly forty miles for a breakfast, but Sir, I am sure the *Otter* devours much Fish, and kills and spoils much more than he eats: And I can tell you, that this Dog-fisher (for so the

52 **The Compleat Angler. Part.I.**

the Latins call him) can smell a Fish in the water an hundred yards from him (*Gesner* says much farther) and that his stones are good against the Falling-sickness : and that there is an herb *Benione*, which being hung in a linnen cloth near a Fish-pond, or any haunt that he uses, makes him to avoid the place ; which proves he smells both by water and land ; and I can tell you there is brave hunting this Water-dog in *Corn-wall*, where there have been so many, that our learned *Cambden* says, there is a River called *Ottersey*, which was so named, by reason of the abundance of *Otters* that bred and fed in it.

And thus much for my knowledg of the *Otter*, which you may now see above water at vent, and the dogs close with him ; I now see he will not last long , follow therefore my Masters, follow, for *Sweetlips* was like to have him at this last vent.

Ven. Oh me, all the Horse are got over the River, what shall we do now ? shall we follow them over the water.

Hunt. No, *Sir*, no, be not so eager, stay a little and follow me, for both they, and the dogs will be suddenly on this side again, I warrant you : and the *Otter* too, it may be : now have at him with *Kilbuck* , for he vents again.

Ven. Marry so he do's, for look he vents in that corner. Now, now *Kingwood* has him: now he's

he's gone again, and has bit the poor dog. Now *Sweetlips* has her; hold her *Sweetlips*! now all the dogs have her, some above and some under water; but now, now she's tir'd, and past losing: come bring her to me, *Sweetlips*. Look, 'tis a Bitch-Otter, and she has lately whelp'd, let's go to the place where she was put down, and not far from it you will find all her young ones, I dare warrant you, and kill them all too.

Hunt. Come, Gentlemen, come all, let's go to the place where we put down the Otter. Look you, hereabout it was that she kennel'd; look you, here it was indeed, for here's her young ones, no less than five; come let's kill them all.

Pisc. No, I pray Sir, save me one, and I'll try if I can make her tame, as I know an ingenious Gentleman in *Leicester-shire* (*Mr. Nich. Seagrave*) has done; who hath not only made her tame, but to catch Fish, and do many other things of much pleasure.

Hunt. Take one with all my heart, but let us kill the rest. And now let's go to an honest Ale-house, where we may have a cup of good *Barley-wine*, and sing *Old Rose*, and all of us rejoyce together.

Venat. Come my friend, *Piscator*, let me invite you along with us; I'll bear your charges this night, and you shall bear mine to morrow; for my intention is to accompany you a day or two in Fishing.

Pisc.

54 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

Pisc. Sir, your request is granted, and I shall be right glad, both to exchange such a courtesie, and also to enjoy your company.

Venat. Well, now let's go to your sport of Angling.

Pisc. Let's be going with all my heart. God keep you all, Gentlemen, and send you meet this day with another Bitch-Otter, and kill her merrily, and all her young ones too.

Ven. Now, *Piscator*, where will you begin to fish?

Pisc. We are not yet come to a likely place, I must walk a mile further yet, before I begin.

Venat. Well then, I pray, as we walk tell me freely, how do you like your lodging and mine Hoste and the company? is not mine Hoste a witty man?

Pisc. Sir, I will tell you presently what I think of your Hoste; but first I will tell you, I am glad these *Otters* were killed, and I am sorry there are no more *Otter-killers*: for I know that the want of *Otter-killers*, & the not keeping the *Fence months* for the preservation of *fish*, will in time prove the destruction of all *Rivers*; and those very few that are left, that make conscience of the Laws of the Nation, and of keeping days of abstinence, will be forced to eat flesh, or suffer more inconveniencies than are yet foreseen.

Venat. Why, Sir, what be those that you call the *Fence months*? *Pisc.*

Chap.2. The Compleat Angler. 55

Pisc. Sir, they be principally three, namely, *March, April, and May*, for these be the usual months that *Salmon* come out of the Sea to spawn in most fresh Rivers, and their Fry would about a certain time return back to the salt water, if they were not hindred by *wires* and *unlawful gins*, which the greedy Fisher-men set, and so destroy them by thousands, as they would (being so taught by nature) change the *fresh* for *salt water*. He that shall view the wise Statutes made in the 13 of *Edw. the I.* and the like in *Rich. the III.* may see several provisions made against the destruction of Fish: and though I profess no knowledge of the Law, yet I am sure the regulation of these defects might be easily mended. But I remember that a wise friend of mine did usually say, *That which is every bodies business, is no bodies business.* If it were otherwise, there could not be so many Nets and Fish that are under the Statute size, sold daily amongst us, and of which the *conservators* of the waters should be ashamed.

But above all, the taking Fish in Spawning time, may be said to be against nature; it is like the taking the dam on the nest when she hatches her young: a sin so against nature, that Almighty God hath in the Levitical Law made a Law against it.

But the poor Fish have enemies enough beside such unnatural *Fisher-men*, as namely, the
Otters

56 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

Otters that I spake of, the *Cormorant*, the *Bittern*, the *Osprey*, the *Sea-gull*, the *Hern*, the *Kingfisher*, the *Gorrara*, the *Puet*, the *Swan*, *Goose*, *Ducks*, and the *Craber*, which some call the *Water-rat*: against all which any honest man may make a just quarrel, but I will not, I will leave them to be quarrelled with, and kill'd by others; for I am not of a cruel nature, I love to kill nothing but Fish.

And now to your question concerning your Host, to speak truly, he is not to me a good companion: for most of his conceits were either Scripture jests, or lascivious jests; for which I count no man witty, for the Devil will help a man that way inclined, to the first; and his own corrupt nature (which he always carries with him) to the latter. But a companion that feasts the company with *wit* and *mirth*, and leaves out the sin (which is usually mixt with them) he is the man; and indeed such a companion should have his charges born: and to such company I hope to bring you this night; for at *Trout-hall*, not far from this place, where I purpose to lodge to night, there is usually an Angler that proves good company: and let me tell you, good company and good discourse are the very linews of vertue: but for such discourse as we heard last night, it infects others, the very boys will learn to talk and swear as they heard mine Host, and another of the com-
pany

Chap. 2. The Compleat Angler. 37

pany that shall be nameless; I am sorry the other is a Gentleman, for less Religion will not save their Souls than a beggars ; I think more will be required at the last great day. Well, you know what Example is able to do, and I know what the Poet says in the like case, which is worthy to be noted by all parents and people of civility :

————— *Many a one*
Owes to his Country his Religion :
And in another would as strongly grow,
Had but his nurse or mother taught him so.

This is reason put into Verse, and worthy the consideration of a wise man. But of this no more, for though I love civility, yet I hate severe censures: I'll to my own art, and I doubt not but at yonder tree I shall catch a *Chub*, and then we'll turn to an honest cleanly Hostess, that I know right well ; rest our selves there, and dress it for our dinner.

Venat. Oh Sir, a *Chub* is the worst Fish that swims, I hoped for a *Trout* to my dinner.

Pisc. Trust me, Sir, there is not a likely place for a *Trout*, hereabout, and we staid so long to take our leave of your Huntsmen this morning, that the Sun is got so high, and shines so clear, that I will not undertake the catching of a *Trout* till evening ; and though a *Chub* be by you and

F

many

58 **The Compleat Angler. Part.I.**

many others reckoned the worst of *fish*, yet you shall see I'll make it a good Fish, by dressing it.

Ven. Why, how will you dress him?

Pisc. I'll tell you by and by, when I have caught him. Look you here, Sir, do you see? (but you must stand very close) there lye upon the top of the water in this very hole twenty *Chubs*, I'll catch only one, and that shall be the biggest of themall: and that I will do so, I'll hold you twenty to one, and you shall see it done.

Venat. I marry Sir, now you talk like an Artist, and I'll say you are one, when I shall see you perform what you say you can do; but I yet doubt it.

Pisc. You shall not doubt it long, for you shall see me do it presently: look, the biggest of these *Chubs* has had some bruise upon his tail, by a Pike or some other accident, and that looks like a white spot; that very *Chub* I mean to put into your hands presently; sit you but down in the shade, and stay but a little while, and I'll warrant you I'll bring him to you.

Venat. I'll sit down and hope well, because you seem to be so confident.

Pisc. Look you Sir, there is a tryal of my skill, there he is, that very *Chub* that I shewed you with the white spot on his tail: and I'll be as certain to make him a good dish of meat, as

I was to catch him. I'll now lead you to an honest Ale-house where we shall find a cleanly room, *Lavender* in the Windows, and twenty *Ballads* stuck about the wall; there my Hostess (which I may tell you, is both cleanly and handsome and civil) hath dressed many a one for me, and shall now dress it after my fashion, and I warrant it good meat.

Ven. Come Sir, with all my heart, for I begin to be hungry, and long to be at it, and indeed to rest my self too; for though I have walk'd but four miles this morning, yet I begin to be weary; yesterdays hunting hangs still upon me.

Pisc. Well Sir, and you shall quickly be at rest, for yonder is the house I mean to bring you to.

Come Hostess, how do you? Will you first give us a cup of your best drink, and then dress this *Chub*, as you dressed my last, when I and my friend were here about eight or ten days ago? but you must do me one courtesie, it must be done instantly.

Host. I will do it, Mr. *Piscator*, and with all the speed I can.

Pisc. Now Sir, has not my Hostess made haste? and does not the fish look lovely?

Ven. Both, upon my word, Sir, and therefore let's say grace and fall to eating of it.

Pisc. Well Sir, how do you like it?

60 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

Ven. Trust me, 'tis as good meat as I ever tasted: now let me thank you for it, drink to you, and beg a courtesie of you ; but it must not be deny'd me.

Pisc. What is it I pray Sir : you are so modest, that methinks I may promise to grant it before it is asked.

Ven. Why Sir, it is, that from henceforth you would allow me to call you *Master*, and that really I may be your Scholar, for you are such a companion, and have so quickly caught, and so excellently cook'd this fish, as makes me ambitious to be your Scholar.

Pisc. Give me your hand; from this time forward I will be your Master, and teach you as much of this Art as I am able ; and will, as you desire me, tell you somewhat of the nature of most of the Fish that we are to angle for, and I am sure I both can and will tell you more than any common *Angler* yet knows.

CHAP.

C H A P. III.

*How to fish for, and to dress the Chavender
or Chub.*

P*Ifc.* The *Chub*, though he eat well thus drest, yet as he is usually drest, he does not : he is objected against, not only for being full of small forked bones, disperst through all his body, but that he eats watrish, and that the flesh of him is not firm, but short and tasteless. The *French* esteem him so mean, as to call him *Un Villa in*; nevertheless he may be so drest as to make him very good meat ; as namely, if he be a large Chub, then drest him thus :

First scale him, and then wash him clean, and then take out his guts ; and to that end make the hole as little and near to his gills as you may conveniently, and especially make clean his throat from the grass and weeds that are usually in it (for if that be not very clean, it will make him to taste very sour) having so done, put some sweet berbs into his belly, and then tye him with two or three splinters to a spit, and rost him, basted often with Vinegar, or rather verjuice and butter, with good store of salt mixt with it.

Being thus drest, you will find him a much better dish of meat than you, or most folk, even than Anglers themselves do imagine; for this dries up the fluid watry humor with which all *Chubs* do abound.

But take this rule with you, That a *Chub* newly taken and newly drest, is so much better than a *Chub* of a days keeping after he is dead, that I can compare him to nothing so fitly as to Cherries newly gathered from a tree, and others that have been bruised and lain a day or two in water. But the *Chub* being thus used and drest presently, and not washed after he is gutted (for note that lying long in water, and washing the blood out of any fish after they be gutted, abates much of their sweetness) you will find the *Chub* being drest in the blood and quickly, to be such meat as will recompence your labour, and disabuse your opinion.

Or you may drest the *Chavender* or *Chub* thus :

When you have scaled him, and cut off his tail and fins, and washed him very clean, then chine or slit him through the middle, as a salt fish is usually cut, then give him three or four cuts or scotches on the back with your knife, and broil him on Char-coal, or Wood-coal that are free from smoke, and all the time he is a broyling baste him with the best sweet Butter, and good store of salt mixt with it; and to this add a little Time cut
exceeding

Chap. 3. The Compleat Angler. 63

exceeding small, or bruised into the butter. The Cheven thus drest hath the watry tast taken away, for which so many except against him. Thus was the Cheven drest that you now liked so well, and commended so much. But note again, that if this Chub that you eat of, had been kept till to morrow, he had not been worth a rush. And remember that his throat be washt very clean, I say very clean, and his body not washt after he is gutted, as indeed no fish should be.

Well Scholar, you see what pains I have taken to recover the lost credit of the poor despised *Chub*. And now I will give you some rules how to catch him; and I am glad to enter you into the Art of fishing by catching a *Chub*, for there is no Fish better to enter a young Angler, he is so easily caught, but then it must be this particular way.

Go to the same hole in which I caught my *Chub*, where in most hot daies you will find a dozen or twenty *Chevens* floating near the top of the water, get two or three Grasshoppers as you go over the meadow, and get secretly behind the tree, and stand as free from motion as is possible, then put a Grasshopper on your hook, and let your hook hang a quarter of a yard short of the water, to which end you must rest your rod on some bough of the tree, but it is likely the Chubs will sink down to-

64 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

wards the bottom of the water at the first shadow of your Rod (for a Chub is the fearfullest of fishes.) and will do so if but a bird flies over him, and makes the least shadow on the water : but they will presently rise up to the top again, and there lie soaring till some shadow affrights them again : I say when they lie upon the top of the water, look out the best Chub, (which you setting your self in a fit place, may very easily see) and move your Rod as softly as a Snail moves, to that Chub you intend to catch; let your bait fall gently upon the water three or four inches before him, and he will infallibly take the bait, and you will be as sure to catch him; for he is one of the leather-mouth'd fishes, of which a hook does scarce ever lose its hold; and therefore give him play enough before you offer to take him out of the water. Go your way presently, take my Rod, and do as I bid you, and I will sit down and mend my tackling till you return back.

Ven. Truly, my loving Master, you have offered me as fair as I could wish. I'll go and observe your directions.

Look you, Master, what I have done, that which joys my heart, caught just such another *Chub* as yours was.

Pisc. Marry, and I am glad of it : I am like to have a towardly Scholar of you. I now see, that with advice and practice you will make an
Angler

Chap. 3. The Compleat Angler. 65

Angler in a short time. Have but a love to it and I'll warrant you.

Venat. But Master, what if I could not have found a *Grashopper*?

Pisc. Then I may tell you, that a *black Snail*, with his belly slit, to shew his white: or a piece of soft *cheese*, will usually do as well: nay, sometimes a *worm*, or any kind of *fly*, as the *Ant-fly*, the *Flesh-fly*, or *Wall-fly*, or the *Dor* or *Beetle*, (which you may find under a Cow-tird) or a *Bob*, which you will find in the same place, and in time will be a *Beetle*; it is a short white worm, like to and bigger than a *Gentle*, or a *Cod-worm*, or a *Cafe-worm*, any of these will do very well to fish in such a manner. And after this manner you may catch a *Trout* in a hot evening: when as you walk by a Brook, and shall see or hear him leap at flies, then if you get a *Grashopper*, put it on your hook, with your line about two yards long, standing behind a bush or tree where his hole is, and make your bait stir up and down on the top of the water: you may if you stand close, be sure of a bite, but not sure to catch him, for he is not a leather mouthed Fish: and after this manner you may fish for him with almost any kind of live fly, but especially with a *Grashopper*.

Venat. But before you go further, I pray good Master, what mean you by a leather-mouthed Fish?

Pisc.

66 The Compleat Angler. Part. I.

Pisc. By a leather-mouthed Fish, I mean such as have their teeth in their throat, as the *Chub* or *Cheven*, and so the *Barbel*, the *Gudgeon* and *Carp*, and divers others have; and the hook being stuck into the leather or skin of the mouth of such fish does very seldom or never lose its hold: But on the contrary, a *Pike* a *Pearch*, or *Trout*, and so some other Fish, which have not their teeth in their throats, but in their mouths, (which you shall observe to be very full of bones, and the skin very thin, and little of it:) I say, of these fish the hook never takes so sure hold, but you often lose your fish, unless he have gorg'd it.

Ven. I thank you, good Master, for this observation; but now what shall be done with my *Chub* or *Cheven*, that I have caught?

Pisc. Marry Sir, it shall be given away to some poor body, for I'll warrant you I'll give you a *Trout* for your supper: and it is a good beginning of your Art to offer your first fruits to the poor, who will both thank God and you for it, which I see by your silence you seem to consent to. And for your willingness to part with it so charitably, I will also teach more concerning Chub-Fishing: you are to note that in *March* and *April* he is usually taken with wormes; in *May*, *June*, and *July* he will bite at any fly, or at *Cherries*, or at *Beetles* with their legs and wings cut off, or at any kind of *Snail*, or at the black *Bee* that breeds in clay walls;
and

Chap. 3. The Compleat Angler. 67

and he never refuses a Grasshopper on the top of a swift stream, nor at the bottom the young *bumble-bee* that breeds in long grasse, and is ordinarily found by the Mower of it. In *August*, and in the cooler months a yellow *paste*, made of the strongest cheese, and pounded in a Mortar with a little butter and saffron, (so much of it as being beaten small will turn it to a lemon colour.) And some make a paste for the Winter months, at which time the Chub is accounted best, (for then it is observed, that the forked bones are lost, or turned into a kind of gristle, (especially if he be baked) of Cheese and Turpentine; he will bite also at a Minnow or Penk, as a Trout will: of which I shall tell you more hereafter, and of divers other baits. But take this for a rule, that in hot weather he is to be fished for towards the mid-water, or near the top; and in colder weather nearer the bottom. And if you fish for him on the top, with a Beetle or any *fly*, then be sure to let your line be very long, and to keep out of sight. And having told you that his Spawn is excellent meat and that the head of a large Cheven, the Throat being well washt, is the best part of him, I will say no more of this Fish at the present, but wish you may catch the next you fish for.

But lest you may judg me too nice in urging to have the Chub drest so presently after he is taken

taken, I will commend to your consideration how curious former times have been in the like kind.

You shall read in *Seneca* his natural Questions (*Lib. 3. cap. 17.*) that the Ancients were so curious in the newnesse of their Fish, that that seemed not new enough that was not put alive into the guests hand; and he says that to that end they did usually keep them living in glass-bottles in their dining-rooms; and they did glory much in their entertaining of friends to have that Fish taken from under their table alive, that was instantly to be fed upon. And he says, they took great pleasure to see their Mulletts change to several colours, when they were dying. But enough of this, for I doubt I have stay'd too long from giving you some observations of the *Trout*, and how to fish for him, which shall take up the next of my spare time.

C H A P. IV.

Observations of the nature and breeding of the Trout; and how to fish for him. And the Milk maids Song.

P*isc.* The *Trout* is a fish highly valued both in this and forraign Nations: he may be justly said, (as the old Poet said of wine, and we
English

Chap.4. The Compleat Angler. 69

English say of Venison) to be a generous Fish : a Fish that is so like the *Buck* that he also has his seasons, for it is observed, that he comes in and goes out of season with the *Stag* and *Buck*, *Gesner* says, his name is of a Germane off-spring, and says he is a fish that feeds clean and purely, in the swiftest streams, and on the hardest gravel ! and that he may justly contend with all fresh-water-Fish , as the Mullet may with all Sea-Fish for precedency and daintiness of taste, and that being in right season, the most dainty palats have allowed precedency to him.

And before I go farther in my Discourse, let me tell you , that you are to observe , that as there be some *barren Does* , that are good in Summer , so there be some *barren Trouts* that are good in Winter , but there are not many that are so , for usually they be in their perfection in the month of *May*, and decline with the *Buck*. Now you are to take notice, that in several Countries, as in *Germany* and in other parts, compar'd to ours, Fish do differ much in their bigness , and shape, and other ways, and so do *Trouts* ; it is well known that in the Lake *Leman* (the Lake of *Geneva*) there are *Trouts* taken of three Cubits long, as is affirmed by *Gesner*, a Writer of good credit ; and *Mercator* says, the *Trouts* that are taken in the Lake of *Geneva*, are a great part of the Merchandize of that famous City. And you
are

are further to know, that there be certain waters that breed *Trouts* remarkable, both for their number and smallness. I know a little Brook in *Kent*, that breeds them to a number incredible, and you may take them twenty or forty in an hour, but none greater than about the size of a *Gudgion*; There are also in divers Rivers, especially that relate to, or be near to the Sea (as *Winchester*, or the *Thames* about *Windsor*) a little *Trout* called a *Samlet* or *Skegger Trout* (in both which places I have caught twenty or forty at a standing) that will bite as fast and as freely as *Minnows*; these be by some taken to be young *Salmons*, but in those waters they never grow to be bigger than a *Herring*.

There is also in *Kent* near to *Canterbury*, a *Trout* (call'd there a *Fordidge Trout*) a *Trout* (that bears the name of the Town, where it is usually caught) that is accounted the rarest of Fish; many of them near the bigness of a *Salmon*, but known by their different colour, and in their best season they cut very white; and none of these have been known to be caught with an Angle, unless it were one that was caught by Sir *George Hastings* (an excellent Angler, and now with God) and he hath told me, he thought that *Trout* bit not for hunger but wantonness; and it is the rather to be believed, because both he then, and many others before him, have been curious to
search

Chap.4. The Compleat Angler. 71

search into their bellies, what the food was by which they lived; and have found out nothing by which they might satisfy their curiosity.

Concerning which you are to take notice, that it is reported by good Authors, that *grasshoppers* and some Fish have no mouths, but are nourisht and take breath by the porousness of their Gills, Man knows not how; And this may be believed, if we consider that when the *Raven* hath hatcht her eggs, she takes no further care, but, leaves her young ones, to the care of the God of Nature, who is said in the *Psalms*, *To feed the young Ravens that call upon him.* And they be kept alive, and fed by a *dew*, or *worms* that breed in their nests, or some other ways that we Mortals know not, and this may be believed of the *Fordidge Trout*, which (as it is said of the *Stork*, that he knows his season, so he) knows his times (I think almost his day) of coming into that River out of the Sea, where he lives (and it is like, feeds) nine months of the Year, and fasts three in the River of *Fordidge*. And you are to note, that those Townsmen are very punctual in observing the time of beginning to fish for them; and boast much that their River affords a Trout, that exceeds all others. And just so does *Sussex* boast of several Fish; as namely, a *Shelfey Cockle*, a *Chichester Lobster*,

ster, an *Arundel Mullet*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

And now for some confirmation of the *Fordidge Trout*, you are to know that this Trout is thought to eat nothing in the fresh water; and it may be the better believed, because it is well known, that *Swallows* and *Bats* and *Wag-tails*, which are call'd half year birds, and not seen to flie in *England* for six months in the Year (but about *Michaelmas* leave us for a hotter Climate;) yet some of them that have

*View Sir Fra.
Bacon, exper.
899.*

been left behind their fellows, have been found (many thousands at a time) in hollow trees, or clay-Caves, where they have been observed, to live and sleep out the whole Winter without meat; and so *Albertus* observes that there is one kind of *Frog* that hath her mouth naturally shut up about the end of *August*, and that she lives so all the Winter: and though it be strange to some, yet it is known to too many among us to be doubted.

And so much for these *Fordidge trouts*, which never afford an *Angler* sport, but either live their time of being in the fresh water, by their meat formerly gotten in the Sea (not unlike the *Swallow* or *Frog*) or by the vertue of the fresh water only; or as the birds of *Paradise*, and the *Camelion* are said to live by the *Sun* and the *Air*. There

Chap. 4. The Compleat Angler. 73

There is also in *Northumberland* a *Trout* called a *Bull-trout*, of a much greater length and bigness, than any in these Southern parts: and there are in many Rivers that relate to the Sea, *Salmon-trouts*, as much different from others, both in shape and in their spots, as we see sheep in some Countries differ one from another in their shape and bigness, and in the fineness of their wool: and certainly, as some pastures breed larger sheep, so do some Rivers, by reason of the ground over which they run, breed larger *Trouts*.

Now the next thing that I will commend to your consideration is, that the *Trout* is of a more sudden growth than other Fish: concerning which you are also to take notice, that he lives not so long as the *Pearch* and divers other Fishes do, as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath observed in his History of Life and Death.

And next you are to take notice, that he is not like the *Crocodile*, which if he lives never so long, yet always thrives till his death: but 'tis not so with the *Trout*, for after he is come to his full growth, he declines in his body, and keeps his bigness or thrives only in his head till his death. And you are to know, that he will about (especially before) the time of his Spawning, get almost miraculously through *Weires*, and *Floud-gates* against the stream; even, through such high and swift places as is almost

G

in-

incredible. Next, that the *Trout* usually Spawns about *October* or *November*, but in some Rivers a little sooner or later: which is the more observable, because most other fish Spawn in the Spring or Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and made it fit for generation. And you are to note, that he continues many months out of season: for it may be observed of the *Trout*, that he is like the *Buck* or the *Ox*, that will not be fat in many months, though he go in the very same pastures that horses do, which will be fat in one month; and so you may observe, that most other Fishes recover strength, and grow sooner fat, and in season than the *Trout* doth.

And next, you are to note, that till the Sun gets to such a height as to warm the earth and the water, the *Trout* is sick and lean, and low-sie, and unwholsom: for you shall in winter find him to have a big head, and then to be lank, and thin, and lean; at which time many of them have sticking on them Sugs, or *Trout lice*, which is a kind of a worm, in shape like a clove or pin with a big head, and sticks close to him and sucks his moisture; those, I think, the *Trout* breeds himself, and never thrives till he free himself from them, which is when warm weather comes; and then, as he grows stronger, he gets from the dead, still water, into the sharp streams, and the gravel, and there rubs off these worms

Chap. 4. The Compleat Angler. 75

worms or lice ; and then, as he grows stronger, so he gets him into swifter and swifter streams, and there lies at the watch for any flie or Minnow, that comes near to him ; and he especially loves the *May-flie*, which is bred of the *Cod-worm*, or *Caddis*; and these make the Trout bold and lusty, and he is usually fatter and better meat at the end of that month, than at any time of the year.

Now you are to know, that it is observed, that usually the best *trouts* are either red or yellow, though some (as the *Fordidge trout*) be white and yet good ; but that is not usual : and it is a note observable, that the female *Trout* hath usually a less head, and a deeper body than the male *Trout* ; and is usually the better meat : and note that a hogback, and a little head to either *Trout*, *Salmon*, or any other fish, is a sign that that fish is in season.

But yet you are to note, that as you see some Willows or palm-trees bud and blossom sooner than others do, so some *Trouts* be in *Rivers* sooner in season; and as some *Hollies* or *Oaks* are longer before they cast their leaves, so are some *Trouts* in *Rivers* longer before they go out of season.

And you are to note, that there are several kinds of *Trouts*, but these several kinds are not considered but by very few men, for they go under the general name of *Trouts* : just as *Pigeons* do in most places ; though it is certain there are tame, and wild *Pigeons* : and of the

tame, their be *Helmits* and *Runts* and *Carriers*, and *Croppers*, and indeed too many to name. Nay, the *Royal Society* have found and publisht lately, that there be thirty and three kinds of *Spiders*: and yet, all (for ought I know) go under that one general name of *Spider*. And 'tis so with many kinds of *Fish*, and of *Trouts* especially, which differ in their bigness and shape, and spots, and colour. The great *Kennish Hens* may be an instance, compared to other *Hens*; And doubtless there is a kind of small *Trout*, which will never thrive to be big, that breeds very many more than others do, that be of a larger size; which you may rather believe, if you consider, that the little *Wren* and *Titmouse* will have twenty young ones at a time, when usually the noble *Hawk* or the Musical *Thrassal* or *Black-bird* exceed not four or five.

And now you shall see me try my skill to catch a *Trout*, and at my next walking either this evening, or to morrow morning I will give you direction, how you your self shall fish for him.

Venat. Trust me, Master, I see now it is a harder matter to catch a *Trout* than a *Chub*: for I have put on patience, and followed you these two hours, and not seen a *Fish* stir, neither at your *Minnow* nor your *Worm*.

Pisc. Well Scholar, you must endure worse luck

Chap.4. The Compleat Angler. 77

luck sometime, or you will never make a good Angler. But what say you now? there is a *Trout* now, and a good one too, if I can but hold him, and two or three turns more will tire him: Now you see he lies still, and the sleight is to land him: Reach me that Landing Net: So (Sir) now he is mine own, what say you now? is not this worth all my labour and your patience?

Venat. On my word Master, this is a gallant *Trout*, what shall we do with him?

Pisc. Marry e'en eat him to supper: We'll go to my Hostess, from whence we came; she told me, as I was going out of door, that my brother *Peter*, a good Angler and a chearful companion, had sent word he would lodge there to night, and bring a friend with him. My Hostess has two beds, and, I know, you and I may have the best: we'll rejoice with my brother *Peter* and his friend, tell tales, or sing Ballads, or make a Catch, or find some harmless sport to content us, and pass away a little time without offence to God or man.

Venat. a match, good Master, lets go to that house for the linnen looks white, and smells of Lavender, and I long to lie in a pair of sheets that smell so: lets be going, good Master, for I am hungry again with fishing.

Pisc. Nay, stay a little good Scholar, I caught my last *Trout* with a Worm, now I will

78 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

put on a Minnow and try a quarter of an hour about yonder trees for another, and so walk towards our Lodging. Look you Scholar, thereabout we shall have a bite presently, or not at all : Have with you (Sir!) o' my word I have hold of him. Oh it is a great loggerheaded *Chub* ; Come, hang him upon that Willow twig, and lets be going, But turn out of the way a little, good Scholar, towards yonder high *bonyfuckle* hedg : there we'll sit and sing whilst this showr falls so gently upon the teeming earth, and gives yet a sweeter smell to the lovely flowers that adorn these verdant Meadows.

Look ; under that broad *Beech-tree*, I sate down, when I was last this way a fishing, and the birds in the adjoyning Grove seemed to have a friendly contention with an Eccho, whose dead voice seemed to live in a hollow tree, near to the brow of that Primrose-hill ; there I sate viewing the silver-streams glide silently towards their center, the tempestuous Sea ; yet, sometimes opposed by rugged roots, and pebble stones, which broke their waves, and turned them into foam : and sometimes I beguill'd time by viewing the harmless Lambs, some leaping securely in the cool shade, whilst others sported themselves in the chearful Sun : and saw others craving comfort from the swoln Udders of their bleating Dams. As I thus sate, these

Chap. 4. The Compleat Angler. 79

these and other sights had so fully possess'd my soul with content, that I thought as the Poet has happily express'd it :

*I was for that time lifted above earth ;
And possess'd joys not promis'd in my birth,*

As I left this place, and entred into the next field, a second pleasure entertained me, 'twas a handsom milk-maid that had not yet attain'd so much age and wisdom as to load her mind with any fears of many things that will never be (as too many men too often do) but she cast away all care, and sung like a *Nightingale*: her voice was good, and the Ditty fitted for it; 'twas that smooth song, which was made by *Kit. Marlow*, now at least fifty years ago : and the Milk-maid's Mother sung an answer to it, which was made by *Sir Walter Rawleigh* in his younger days.

They were old fashioned Poetry, but choicely good, I think much better than the strong lines that are now in fashion in this critical age. Look yonder ! on my word, yonder they both be a milking again, I will give her the *Chub*, and perswade them to sing those two songs to us.

God speed you good woman, I have been a Fishing, and am going to *Bleak-Hall* to my bed, and having caught more Fish than will sup my self and my friend, I will bestow this upon you and your Daughter, for I use to sell none.

G 4

Milkw.

80 **The Compleat Angler. Part.I.**

Milk. Marry God requite you Sir , and we'll eat it chearfully : and if you come this way a Fishing two months hence, a grace of God I'll give you a Sillybub of new Verjuice in a new made Hay-cock, for it, and my *Mandlin* shall sing you one of her best *Ballads*; for she and I both love all *Anglers*, they be such honest, civil, quiet men ; in the mean time will you drink a draught of *Red-Cows milk*, you shall have it freely.

• *Pisc.* No, I thank you, but I pray do us a courtesie that shall stand you and your daughter in nothing, and yet we will think our selves still something in your debt ; it is but to sing us a Song, that was sung by your daughter, when I last past over this Meadow, about eight or nine days since.

Milk. What Song was it , I pray ? was it, *Come Shepherds deck your herds*, or, *As at noon Dulcina rested*; or, *Phillida flouts me* : or, *Chevy Chase* ? or , *Jonny Armstrong* ? or *Troy Town* ?

Pisc. No, it is none of those : it is a Song that your daughter sung the first part, and you sung the answer to it.

Milk. O, I know it now, I learn'd the first part in my golden age, when I was about the age of my poor daughter ; and the latter part, which indeed fits me best now, but two or three years ago, when the cares of the World began

Chap.4. The Compleat Angler. 81

began to take hold of me : but you shall, God willing, hear them both, and sung as well as we can, for we both love Anglers. Come *Maudlin*, sing the first part to the Gentlemen with a merry heart, and I'll sing the second, when you have done.

The Milk-maids Song.

*Come live with me, and be my Love.
And we will all the pleasures prove
That valleys, groves, or hills, or fields,
Or woods, and steepy mountains yeilds.*

*Where we will sit upon the Rocks,
And see the Shepherds feed our flocks,
By shallow Rivers, to whose falls,
Melodious birds sing Madrigals.*

*And I will make thee beds of Roses,
And then a thousand fragrant Posies,
A Cap of flowers, and a Kirtle
Embroidered all with leaves of mirtle.*

*A Gown made of the finest Wool
Which from our pretty Lambs we pull;
Slippers lin'd choicely for the cold,
With buckles of the purest gold.*

A

*A Belt of Straw, and Ivy-buds,
With Coral Clasps and Amber studs :
And if these pleasures may thee move,
Come live with me and be my Love.*

*Thy silver dishes for thy meat,
As precious as the Gods do eat,
Shall on an Ivory Table be
Prepar'd each day for thee and me.*

*The Shepherds Swains shall dance and sing
For thy delight each May-morning :
If these delights thy mind may move,
Then live with me, and be my Love.*

Venat. Trust me, Master, it is a choice Song, and sweetly sung by honest *Maudlin*. I now see it was not without cause, that our good Queen *Elizabeth* did so often with her self a Milkmaid all the month of *May*, because they are not troubled with fears and cares, but sing sweetly all the day, and sleep securely all the night : and without doubt, honest, innocent, pretty *Maudlin* does so. I'll bestow Sir *Thomas Overbury's* Milk-maids with upon her, *That she may dye in the Spring, and being dead may have good store of flowers stuck round about her winding sheet.*

The

The Milk-maids Mothers Answer.

*If all the world and Love were young,
And truth in every Shepherds tongue,
These pretty pleasures might me move
To live with thee, and be thy Love.*

*But time drives flocks from field to fold,
When Rivers rage, and rocks grow cold,
Then Philomel becometh dumb,
And age complains of care to come.*

*The flowers do fade, and wanton fields
To wayward Winter reckoning yields,
A hony tongue, a heart of gall,
Is fancies Spring, but sorrows fall;*

*Thy gowns, thy shooes, thy beds of roses,
Thy cap, thy kirtle, and thy posies,
Soon break, soon wither, soon forgotten,
In folly ripe, in reason rotten.*

*Thy Belt of Straw, and Ivy-buds,
Thy Coral clasps, and Amber-sluds,
All these in me no means can move
To come to thee, and be thy Love.*

*What should we talk of dainties then,
Of better meat than's fit for men?*

These

34 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

*These are but vain : that's only good
Which God hath blest, and sent for food.*

*But could Youth last, and love still breed,
Had joys no date, nor age no need ;
Then those delights my mind might move,
To live with thee, and be thy Love.*

*Mother, Well I have done my Song ; but
stay honest Anglers, for I will make Maudlin
to sing you one short Song more. Maudlin;
sing that Song that you sung last night, when
young Corydon the Shepherd plaid so purely on
his oaten pipe to you and your Cozen Betty.*

*Maud. I will Mother.
I married a Wife of late,
The more's my unhappy fate :
I married her for love,
As my fancy did me move,
And not for a worldly estate :*

*But Oh ! the green-sickness
Soon changed her likeness ;
And, all her beauty did fail.
But 'tis not so,
With those that go,
Through frost and snow,
As all men know,
And, carry the Milking-pail.*

Pisc.

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 85

Pisc. Well sung good Woman I thank you, I'll give you another dish of fish one of these days; and then, beg another Song of you. Come Scholar, let *Maudlin* alone: do not you offer to spoil her voice. Look, yonder comes mine *Hostess*, to call us to supper. How now? is my Brother *Peter* come?

Hostess: Yes, and a friend with him, they are both glad to hear that you are in these parts, and long to see you, and long to be at supper, for they be very hungry.

C H A P. V.

More Directions how to Fish for, and how to make for the Trout an Artificial Minnow, and Flies, with some Merriment.

P*ISC.* Well met Brother *Peter*, I heard you and a friend would lodge here to night, and that hath made me to bring my Friend to lodge here too. My Friend is one that would fain be a *Brother of the Angle*, he hath been an *Angler* but this day, and I have taught him how to catch a *Chub* by daping with a *Grass-hopper*, and the *Chub* he caught was a
lusty

36 **The Compleat Angler.** Part. I.

lusty one of nineteen inches long. But pray Brother *Peter* who is your companion?

Peter. Brother *Piscator*, my friend is an honest *Country-man*, and his name is *Coridon*, and he is a downright witty companion that met me here purposely to be pleasant and eat a *Trout*, And I have not yet wetted my Line since we met together? but I hope to fit him with a *Trout* for his breakfast, for I'll be early up.

Pisc. Nay Brother you shall not stay so long: for look you here is a *Trout*



will fill six reasonable bellies. Come Hostess, dress it presently, and get us what other meat the house will afford, and give us some of your best *Barly-wine*, the good liquor that our honest Fore-fathers did use to drink of; the drink which preserved their health, and made them live

Chap.5. The Compleat Angler. 87

live so long, and to do so many good deeds.

Peter. O' my word this *Trout* is perfect in season. Come, I thank you, and here is a hearty draught to you, and to all the brothers of the Angle wheresoever they be, and to my young brothers good fortune to morrow : I will furnish him with a Rod, if you will furnish him with the rest of the Tackling; we will set him up and make him a Fisher.

And I will tell him one thing for his encouragement, that his fortune hath made him happy to be Scholar to such a Master ; a Master that knows as much both of the nature and breeding of fish as any man : and can also tell him as well how to catch and cook them, from the *Minnow* to the *Salmon* , as any that I ever met withall.

Pisc. Trust me , brother *Peter* , I find my Scholar to be so sutable to my own humour , which is to be free and pleasant , and civilly merry, that my resolution is to hide nothing that I know from him. Believe me, Scholar, this is my resolution ; and so here's to you a hearty draught, and to all that love us, and the honest Art of Angling.

Ven. Trust me , good Master, you shall not sow your seed in barren ground , for I hope to return you an increase answerable to your hopes ; but however you shall find me obedient,

88 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

ent, and thankful, and serviceable to my best abilities.

Pisc. 'Tis enough, honest Scholar, come lets to supper. Come my friend *Coridon* this *Trout* looks lovely, it was twentie two inches when it was taken, and the belly of it looked some part of it as yellow as a Marigold, and part of it as white as a lilly, and yet methinks it looks better in this good sawce.

Cor. Indeed honest friend, it looks well, and tastes well, I thank you for it, and so doth my friend *Peter*, or else he is to blame.

Pet. Yes, and so I do, we all thank you, and when we have suppt, I will get my friend *Coridon* to sing you a Song for requital.

Cor. I will sing a song, if any body will sing another; else, to be plain with you, *I will sing none*: I am none of those that sing for meat, but for company: I say, *'Tis merry in Hall, when men sing all.*

Pisc. I'll promise you I'll sing a song that was lately made at my request, by Mr. *William Basse*, one that hath made the choice songs of the *Hunter in his carriere*, and of *Tom of Bedlam*, and many others of note; and this that I will sing is in praise of Angling.

Cor. And then mine shall be the praise of a Country mans life: What will the rest sing of?

Pet. I will promise you, I will sing another song in praise of Angling to morrow night,
for

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 39

for we will not part till then, but Fish to morrow, and sup together, and the next day every man leave Fishing, and fall to his businesse.

Venat. 'Tis a match, and I will provide you a Song or a Catch against then too, which shall give some addition of mirth to the company; for we will be civil and as merry as beggers.

Pisc. 'Tis a match my Masters, lets ev'n say Grace, and turn to the fire, drink the other cup to wet our whistles, and so sing away all sad thoughts.

Come on my Masters, who begins? I think it is best to draw cuts, and avoid contention.

Pet. It is a match. Look, the shortest cut falls to *Coridon*.

Cor. Well then, I will begin, for I hate contention.

CORIDONS Song.

*Oh the sweet contentment
The country-man doth find!
high trolollie loe
high trolollie lee,
That quiet contemplation
possesseth all my mind:
Then care away,
and wend along with me.*

H

For

For Courts are full of flattery,
 As hath too oft been tri'd;
 high trolollie lollie lee, &c.
 The City full of wantonness,
 And both are full of pride:
 Then care away, &c.

But oh the honest Country-man
 Speaks truly from his heart,
 high trolollie lollie lee, &c.
 His pride is in his tillage,
 His horses, and his cart:
 Then care away, &c.

Our cloathing is good sheep skins,
 Gray rasset for our wives,
 high trolollie lollie lee, &c.
 'Tis warmth and not gay cloathing
 That doth prolong our lives:
 Then care away, &c.

The plough man, though he labour hard,
 Yet on the Holy-Day,
 high trolollie lollie lee, &c.
 No Emperour so merrily
 Does passe his time away:
 Then care away, &c.

*To recompence our tillage,
The Heavens afford us showers ;
 high trolollie lollie lee , &c.
And for our sweet refreshments
The earth affords us bowers :
 Then care away , &c.*

*The Cuckow and the Nightingale
Full merrily do sing ,
 high trolollie lollie lee , &c.
And with their pleasant roundelaies
Bid welcome to the Spring.
 Then care away , &c.*

*This is not half the happiness
The country-man enjoys ;
 high trolollie lollie lee , &c.
Though others think they have as much ,
Yet he that says so lies :
 Then come away, turn
 Country man with me.*

Jo. Chalkbill.

Pisc. Well sung *Coridon*, this song was sung with mettle ; and it was choicely fitted to the occasion ; I shall love you for it as long as I know you ; I would you were a brother of the Angle, for a companion that is chearful , and free from swearing and scurrilous discourse, is worth gold. I love such mirth as does not make
H 2 friends

friends ashamed to look upon one another next morning ; nor men (that cannot well bear it) to repent the money they spend when they be warmed with drink : and take this for a rule, You may pick out such times and such companies, that you may make your selves merrier for a little than a great deal of money ; for *'Tis the company and not the charge that makes the feast* : and such a companion you prove, I thank you for it.

But I will not complement you out of the debt that I owe you, and therefore I will begin my Song and wish it may be so well liked.

The Anglers Song.

*As inward love breeds outward talk,
The Hound some praise, and some the Hawk :
Some better pleas'd with private sport,
Use Tennis, some a Mistress court:
But these delights I neither wish,
Nor envy, while I freely fish.*

*Who Hunts, doth oft in danger ride ;
Who Hawks, lures oft both far and wide ;
Who uses Games shall often prove
A loser, but who falls in love,
Is fettered in fond Cupids snare :
My Angle breeds me no such care.*

Of

*Of Recreation there is none
So free as Fishing is alone ;
All other pastimes do no lesse
Than mind and body both possesse :
My hand alone my work can doe,
So I can fish and study too.*

*I care not, I, to fish in seas
Fresh rivers best my mind do please ;
Whose sweet calm course I contemplate ;
And seek in life to imitate :
In civil bounds I fain would keep ,
And for my past offences weep.*

*And when the timorous Trout I wait
To take, and he devours my bait ,
How poor a thing sometimes I find
Will captivate a greedy mind :
And when none bite, I praise the wise ,
Whom vain allurements ne're surprise.*

*But yet though while I fish I fast ;
I make good fortune my repast ,
And thereunto my friend invite ,
In whom I more than that delight :
Who is more welcom to my dish ,
Than to my angle was my fish ,*

*As well content no prize to take ,
As use of taken prize to make :*

For so our Lord was pleased when
 He fishers made fishers of men :
Where (which is in no other game)
A man may fish and praise his name.

The first men that our Saviour dear
Did chuse to wait upon him here ,
Blest Fishers were, and fish the last
Food was, that he on earth did taste.
I therefore strive to follow those ,
Whom he to follow him hath chose ,

Cor. Well sung brother, you have paid your debt in good coin , we Anglers are all behold-
 ing to the good man that made this Song. Come
 Hostess, give us more Ale , and lets drink to
 him.

And now lets every one go to bed that we
 may rise early ; but first lets pay our reckoning,
 for I will have nothing to hinder me in the
 morning for my purpose is to prevent the Sun-
 rising.

Pet. A match ; Come *Coridon*, you are to be
 my Bed-fellow : I know , brother, you and
 your Scholar will lie together ; but where shall
 we meet to-morrow night ? for my friend *Co-*
ridon and I will go up the water towards *Ware*.

Pisc. And my Scholar and I will go down
 towards *Walsbam*.

Cor.

Chap. 5. **The Compleat Angler.** 95

Cer. Then lets meet here, for here are fresh sheets that smell of *Lavender*, and I am sure we cannot expect better meat, or better usage in any place.

Pet. 'Tis a match. Good night to every body.

Pisc. And so say I.

Venat. And so say I.

Pisc. Good morrow good Hostess, I see my brother *Peter* is still in bed: Come give my Scholar and me a Morning-drink, and a bit of meat to breakfast, and be sure to get a good dish of meat or two against supper, for we shall come home as hungry as *Hawks*. Come Scholar, lets be going.

Venat. Well now, good Master, as we walk towards the River give me direction, according to your promise, how I shall fish for a *Trout*.

Pisc. My honest Scholar, I will take this very convenient opportunity to do it.

The *Trout* is usually caught with a worm or a *Minnow*, (which some call a *Penk*) or with a *flie*, viz. either a *natural* or an *artificial flie*: concerning which three I will give you some observations and directions.

And first for *Worms*: Of these there be very many sorts, some breed only in the earth, as the *Earth-worm*; others of or amongst Plants, as the *Dug-worm*; and others breed either out of

H 4

Excre-

excrements, or in the bodies of living creatures, as in the horns of Sheep or Deer; or some of dead flesh, as the *Maggot* or *gentle*, and others.

Now these be most of them particularly good for particular Fishes: but for the *Trout* the *dew-worm*, (which some also call the *Lob-worm*) and the *Brandling* are the chief; and especially the first for a great Trout, and the latter for a less. There be also of *Lob-worms* some called *squirrel-tails*, (a worm that has a red head, a streak down the back and a broad tail) which are noted to be the best, because they are the roughest and most lively, and live longest in the water: for you are to know, that a dead worm is but a dead bait and like to catch nothing, compared to a lively, quick, stirring worm: and for a *Brandling*, he is usually found in an old dunghil, or some very rotten place near to it: but most usually in Cow-dung, or hogs-dung, rather than horse-dung, which is somewhat too hot and dry for that worm. But the best of them are to be found in the bark of the Tanners which they cast up in heaps after they have used it about their leather.

There are also divers other kinds of worms which for colour and shape alter even as the ground out of which they are got, as the *marsh-worm*, the *tag-tail*, the *stag-worm*, the *dock-worm*, the *oak-worm*, the *gilt-tayle*, the *twachel* or *lob-worm* (which of all others is the most excellent bait

bait for a *Salmon*) and too many to name, even as many sorts, as some think there be of several hearbs or shrubs, or of several kinds of birds in the air; of which I shall say no more, but tell you, that what worms soever you fish with, are the better for being well scowred, that is long kept, before they be used; and in case you have not been so provident, then the way to cleanse and scowr them quickly, is to put them all night in water, if they be *Lob-worms*, and then put them into your bag with fennel: but you must not put your Brandlings above an hour in water, and then put them into fennel for suddain use: but if you have time and purpose to keep them long, then they be best preserved in an earthen pot with good store of *Mosse*, which is to be fresh every three or four dayes in Summer, and every week or eight dayes in Winter: or at least the mosse taken from them, and clean washed, and wrung betwixt your hands till it be dry, and then put it to them again. And when your worms, especially the Brandling, begins to be sick, and lose of his bigness, then you may recover him, by putting a little milk or cream (about a spoonful in a day) into them by drops on the mosse; and if there be added to the cream an egge beaten and boiled in it, then it will both fatten and preserve them long. And note, that when the *knout*, which is near to the middle of the *brandling* begins to swell, then he is sick,
and,

98 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

and, if he be not well look'd to, is near dying. And for mosse, you are to note, that there be divers kinds of it, which I could name to you, but will onely tell you, that that which is likest a *Bucks-Horn* is the best, except it be soft white moss, which grows on some heaths, and is hard to be found. And note, that in a very dry time, when you are put to an extremity for worms, Walnut-tree leaves squeez'd into water, or salt in water, to make it bitter or salt, and then that water poured on the ground, where you shall see worms are used to rise in the night, will make them to appear above ground presently. And you may take notice some say that *Camphire* put into your bag with your mosse and worms, gives them a strong and so tempting a smell, that the fish fare the worse and you the better for it.

And now, I shall shew you how to bait your hook with a worm, so as shall prevent you from much trouble, and the loss of many a hook too; when you Fish for a *Trout* with a running line: that is to say, when you fish for him by hand at the ground, I will direct you in this as plainly as I can, that you may not mistake.

Suppose it be a big Lob-worm, put your hook into him somewhat above the middle, and out again a little below the middle: having so done, draw your worm above the arming of your hook, but note that at the entring of your hook it must not be

at

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 99

at the head-end of the worm, but at the tail-end of him, (that the point of your hook may come out toward the head-end) and having drawn him above the arming of your hook, then put the point of your hook again into the very head of the worm, till it come near to the place where the point of the hook first came out : and then draw back that part of the worm that was above the shank or arming of your hook, and so fish with it. And if you mean to fish with two worms, then put the second on before you turn back the books-head of the first worm ; you cannot lose above two or three worms before you attain to what I direct you ; and having attain'd it, you will find it very useful, and thank me for it : For you will run on the ground without tangling.

Now for the Minnow or Penk he is not easily found and caught till March, or in April, for then he appears first in the River, Nature having taught him to shelter and hide himself in the Winter in ditches that be near to the River, and there both to hide and keep himself warm in the mud or in the weeds, which rot not so soon as in a running River, in which place if he were in Winter, the distemper'd Floods that are usually in that season, would suffer him to take no rest, but carry him head-long to Mills and Weires to his confusion. And of these Minnows, first you are to know, that the biggest size is not the best ; and next, that the middle size and
the

the whitest are the best : and then you are to know, that your *Minnow* must be so put on your hook that it must turn round when 'tis drawn against the stream, and that it may turn nimbly, you must put it on a big-sized hook as I shall now direct you, which is thus. Put your hook in at his mouth and out at his gill, then having drawn your hook 2 or 3 inches beyond or through his gill, put it again into his mouth, and the point and beard out at his taile, and then tie the hook and his taile about very neatly with a white thred, which will make it the apter to turn quick in the water : that done, pull back that part of your line which was slack when you did put your hook into the *Minnow* the second time : I say pull that part of your line back so that it shall fasten the head, so that the body of the *Minnow* shall be almost streight on your hook ; this done, try how it will turn by drawing it cross the water or against a stream, and if it do not turn nimbly, then turn the tail a little to the right or left hand, and try again, till it turn quick ; for if not ? you are in danger to catch nothing ; for know, that it is impossible that it should turn too quick : And you are yet to know, that in case you want a *Minnow*, then a small *Loch* or a *Stickle-bag*, or any other small fish that will turn quick will serve as well : And you are yet to know, that you may salt them, and by that means keep them ready and fit for use

Chap.5. The Compleat Angler. 101

use three or four days, or longer, and that of salt, bay-salt is the best.

And here let me tell you, what many old Anglers know right well, that at some times, and in some waters a *Minnow* is not to be got, and therefore let me tell you, I have (which I will shew to you) an *artificial Minnow*, that will catch a Trout as well as an *artificial Flie*, and it was made by a handfom Woman that had a fine hand, and a live *Minnow* lying by her : *the mould or body of the Minnow was cloth, and wrought upon or over it thus with a needle : the back of it with very sad French green silk, and paler green silk towards the belly, shadowed as perfectly as you can imagine, just as you see a Minnow ; the belly was wrought also with a needle, and it was a part of it white silk, and another part of it with silver thred, the tail and fins were of a quill, which was shaven thin, the eyes were of two little black beads, and the head was so shadowed, and all of it so curiously wrought, and so exactly dissembled, that it would beguile any sharpe sighted Trout in a swift stream. And this Minnow I will now shew you, (look here it is) and if you like it, lend it you, to have two or three made by it, for they be easily carryed about an Angler, and be of excellent use; for note, that a large Trout will come as fiercely at a Minnow, as the highest mett led Hawk doth seize on a Partridg, or a Grey-bound on a Hare. I have been told, that 160 Minnows have been found*

found in a *Trouts* belly; either the *Trout* had devoured so many; or the Miller that gave it a friend of mine had forced them down his throat after he had taken him.

Now for *Flies*, which is the third bait where-with *Trouts* are usually taken. You are to know, that there are so many sorts of *Flies* as there be of Fruits : I will name you but some of them, as the *dun-flie*, the *stone-flie*, the *red-flie*, the *moor-flie*, the *tawny-flie*, the *shell-flie*, the *cloudy*, or *blackish-flie*, the *flag-flie*, the *vine-flie* : there be of *flies*, *Caterpillars*, and *Canker-flies*, and *Bear-flies*, and indeed too many either for me to name or for you to remember : and their breeding is so various and wonderful, that I might easily amaze my self, and tire you in a relation of them.

And yet I will exercise your promised patience by saying a little of the *Caterpillar* or the *Palmer-flie* or *worm*, that by them you may guess what a work it were in a Discourse but to run over those very many *flies*, *worms* and little living creatures with which the Sun and Summer adorn and beautifie the River banks and Meadows ; both for the recreation and contemplation of us Anglers, pleasures which (I think) my self enjoy more than any other man that is not of my profession.

Pliny holds an opinion, that many have their birth or being from a dew that in the Spring falls

I. Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 103

falls upon the leaves of trees; and that some kinds of them are from a dew left upon herbs or flowers; and others from a dew left upon Coleworts or Cabbages: All which kinds of dews being thickned and condensed, are by the Suns generative heat most of them hatch'd, and in three days made living creatures; and these of several shapes and colours; some being hard and tough, some smooth and soft; some are horned in their head, some in their tail, some have none: some have hair, some none: some have sixteen feet, some less, and some have none, but (as our *Topsel* hath with great diligence observed) those which have none, move upon the earth or upon broad leaves, their motion being not unlike to the waves of the Sea. Some of them he also observes to be bred of the Eggs of other Caterpillars, and that those in their time turn to be *Butter-flies*: and again, that their Eggs turn the following year to be *Caterpillars*. And some affirm, that every plant has his particular flie or Caterpillar, which it breeds and feeds. I have seen, and may therefore affirm it, a green Caterpillar, or worm, as big as a small Peascod, which had fourteen legs, eight on the belly, four under the neck, and two near the tail. It was found on a hedge of Privet, and was taken thence, and put into a large Box, and a little branch or two of Privet put

In his history of Serpents.

put to it ; on which I saw it feed as sharply as a dog gnaws a bone : it lived thus five or six daies, and thrived, and changed the colour two or three times, but by some neglect in the keeper of it, it then dyed and did not turn to a flie: but if it had lived, it had doubtless turned to one of those flies that some call flies of prey, which those that walk by the Rivers may in Summer, see fasten on smaller flies, and I think make them their food. And 'tis observable, that as there be these *flies of prey* which be very large, so there be others very little, created, I think, only to feed them, and breed out of I know not what ; whose life, they say, Nature intended not to exceed an hour, and yet that life is thus made shorter by other flies, or accident.

'Tis endless to tell you what the curious searchers into Natures productions have observed of these Worms and Flies : But yet I shall tell you what *Aldrovandus*, our *Topsel*, and others say of the *Palmer-worm* or *Caterpillar*, That whereas others content themselves to feed on particular herbs or leaves, (for most think those very leaves that gave them life and shape, give them a particular feeding and nourishment, and that upon them they usually abide) yet he observes, that this is called a *pilgrim* or *palmer-worm*, for his very wandering life and various food ; not contenting himself (as others do) with any one certain place for his abode, nor a-

ny

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 105

ny certain kind of herb or flower for his feeding; but will boldly and disorderly wander up and down, and not endure to be kept to a diet, or fixt to a particular place:

Nay, the very colours of *Caterpillars* are, as one has observed, very elegant and beautiful: I shall (for a taste of the rest) describe one of them, which I will sometime the next month shew you feeding on a Willow-tree, and you shall find him punctually to answer this very description; *His lips and mouth somewhat yellow, his eyes black as Jet, his forehead purple, his feet and hinder parts green, his tail two forked and black, the whole body stained with a kind of red spots which run along the neck and shoulderblade, not unlike the form of Saint Andrew's Cross, or the letter X, made thus cross-wise, and a white line drawn down his back to his tail; all which add much beauty to his whole body.* And it is to me observable, that at a fixed age this *Caterpillar* gives over to eat, and towards Winter comes to be covered over with a strange shell or crust called an *Aurelia*, and so lives a kind of dead life, without eating all the Winter; and (as others of several kinds turn to be several kinds of flies and vermin the Spring following (so this *Caterpillar* then turns to be a painted Butter-fly.

*View Sir
Fra. Bacon
exper. 728
§ 90. in
his Natural
History.*

Come, come my Scholar, you see the River
I stops

stops our morning walk, and I will also here stop my discourse, only as we sit down under this *Honey-suckle* hedg, whilst I look a Line to fit the Rod that our brother *Peter* hath lent you, I shall for a little confirmation of what I have said, repeat the observation of *Du Bartas*:

*God not contented to each kind to give, 6. Day of
And to infuse the vertue generative, Du Bartas.
By his wise power made many creatures breed
Of lifeless bodies without Venus deed.*

*So the cold humor breeds the Salamander,
who (in effect) like to her births commander,
With child with hundred winters, with her touch
Quencheth the fire though glowing ne'r so much.*

*So in the fire in burning furnace springs
The Fly Perausta with the flaming wings;
Without the fire it dyes, in it it joyes,
Living in that which all things else destroyes.*

*So slow Boôtes underneath him sees View Gerh.
In th' Icy Islands gossings hatcht of trees, Herbal and
Whose fruitful leaves falling into the water, Cambden.
Are turn'd (*tis known) to living fowls soon after.*

*So rotten planks of broken ships do change
To Barnacles. O transformation strange!
'Twas first a green tree, then a broken bull,*

Lately

Lately a mushrome, now a flying Gull.

Venat. O my good Master, this morning-walk has been spent to my great pleasure and wonder : but I pray, when shall I have your direction how to make artificial flies, like to those that the *Trout* loves best ? and also how to use them?

Pisc. My honest Scholar, it is now past five of the Clock, we will fish till nine, and then go to breakfast : Go you to yonder *Sycamore-tree*, and hide your Bottle of drink under the hollow root of it ; for about that time, and in that place, we will make a brave breakfast with a piece of powderd Beef, and a Radish or two that I have in my Fish-bag ; we shall, I warrant you, make a good, honest, wholsome, hungry breakfast, and I will then give you direction for the making and using of your flies : and in the mean time there is your Rod and Line, and my advice is, that you fish as you see me do, And let's try which can catch the first Fish.

Venat. I thank you Master, I will observe and practice your direction as far as I am able.

Pisc. Look you Scholar, you see I have hold of a good Fish : I now see it is a *Trout*, I pray, put that Net under him, and touch not my line for if you do, then we break all. Well done Scholar, I thank you.

108 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

Now for another. Trust me I have another bite: come Scholar, come lay down your Rod, and help me to land this as you did the other. So, now we shall be sure to have a good dish of Fish for supper.

Venat. I am glad of that; but I have no fortune: sure, Master, yours is a better Rod, and better tackling.—

Pisc. Nay, then take mine, and I will fish with yours. Look you, Scholar, I have another; come, do as you did before. And now I have a bite at another: Oh me! he has broke all; there's half a line and a good hook lost.

Venat. I and a good *Trout* too.

Pisc. Nay, the *Trout* is not lost, for pray take notice no man can lose what he never had.

Venat. Master, I can neither catch with the first nor second Angle: I have no fortune.

Pisc. Look you, Scholar, I have yet another: and now having caught three brace of *Trouts*, I will tell you a short Tale as we walk towards our breakfast: *A Scholar (a Preacher I should say) that was to preach to procure the approbation of a Parish, that he might be their Lecturer, had got from his Fellow-pupil the copy of a Sermon that was first preached with great commendation by him that composed it; and though the borrower of it preach'd it word for word, as it was at first, yet it was utterly disliked as it was*
preached

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 109

preached by the second to his Congregation: which the sermon-borrower complained of to the lender of it, and was thus answered; I lent you indeed my Fiddle, but not my Fiddlestick; for you are to know, that every one cannot make musick with my words, which are fitted for my own mouth. And so, my Scholar, you are to know, that as the ill pronounciation or ill accenting of words in a Sermon spoils it, so the ill carriage of your line, or not fishing even to a foot in a right place, makes you lose your labour: and you are to know, that though you have my *Fiddle*, that is, my very Rod and Tacklings with which you see I catch Fish; yet you have not my *Fiddlestick*, that is, you yet have not skill to know how to carry your hand and line, nor how to guide it to a right place: and this must be taught you (for you are to remember I told you, Angling is an Art) either by practice, or a long observation or both. But take this for a rule, when you fish for a Trout with a Worm, let your line have so much, and not more Lead than will fit the stream in which you fish; that is to say; more in a great troublesome stream than in a smaller that is quieter; as near as may be, so much as will sink the bait to the bottom, and keep it still in motion, and not more.

But now lets say Grace and fall to breakfast: what say you, Scholar, to the providence of an old Angler? does not this meat taste well? and

110 **The Compleat Angler. Part.I.**

was not this place well chosen to eat it? for this Sycamore-tree will shade us from the Suns heat.

Venat. All excellent good, and my stomach excellent good too. And I now remember and find that true which devout *Lessius* says, *That poor men, and those that fast often, have much more pleasure in eating than rich men and gluttons, that always feed before their stomachs are empty of their last meat, and call for more: for by that means they rob themselves of that pleasure that hunger brings to poor men.* And I do seriously approve of that saying of yours, *That you had rather be a civil, well govern'd, well grounded, temperate, poor Angler, than a drunken Lord.* But I hope there is none such; however I am certain of this, that I have been at many very costly dinners that have not afforded me half the content that this has done, for which I thank God and you.

And now good Master, proceed to your promised direction for making and ordering my Artificial flie.

Pisc. My honest Scholar, I will do it, for it is a debt due unto you by my promise: and because you shall not think your self more engaged to me than indeed you really are, I will freely give you such directions as were lately given to me by an ingenuous brother of the Angle, an honest man, and a most excellent *Flie-fisher.* You

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. III

You are to note, that there are twelve kinds of Artificial made Flies to Angle with upon the top of the water (note by the way, that the fittest season of using these is in a blustering windy day, when the waters are so troubled that the natural flie cannot be seen, or rest upon them.) The first is the *dun-flie* in *March*, the body is made of *dun wool*, the wings of the Partridges feathers. The second is another *dun-Flie*, the body of *Black wool*, and the wings made of the black Drakes feathers, and of the feathers under his tail. The third is the *stone-flie* in *April*, the body is made of *black wool* made yellow under the wings, and under the tail, and so made with wings of the Drake. The fourth is the *ruddy Flie* in the beginning of *May*, the body made of *red wool* wrapt about with black silk, and the feathers are the wings of the Drake, with the feathers of a red Capon also, which hang dangling on his sides next to the tail. The fifth is the *yellow* or *greenish-flie* (in *May* likewise) the body made of *yellow wool*, and the wings made of the red cocks hackle or tail. The sixth is, the *black Flie* in *May* also, the body made of *black wool* and lapt about with the herl of a Peacocks tail; the wings are made of the wings of a brown Capon with his blew feathers in his head. The seventh is the sad *yellow-flie* in *June*, the body is made of *black wool*, with a yellow list on either side, and

the wings taken off the wings of a Buzzard, bound with black braked hemp. The eighth is the *moorish flie* made with the body of duskyish Wool, and the wings made of the blackish mail of the Drake. The ninth is the *tawny-flie*, good until the middle of *June*; the body made of *tawny-wool*, the wings made contrary one against the other, made of the whitish mail of the wild Drake. The tenth is the *Wasp-flie* in *July*, the body made of *black wool*, lapt about with yellow silk, the wings made of the feathers of the Drake, or of the Buzzard. The Eleventh is the *shell-flie*, good in mid *July*, the body made of greenish wool, lapt about with the herle of a Peacocks tail; and the wings made of the wings of the Buzzard. The twelfth is the dark *Drake-flie*, good in *August*, the body made with *black Wool*, lapt about with black silk; his wings are made with the mail of the black Drake, with a black head. Thus have you a Jury of flies likely to betray and condemn all the Trouts in the River.

I shall next give you some other Directions for Flie-fishing, such as are given by Mr. *Thomas Barker*, a Gentleman that hath spent much time in Fishing: but I shall do it with a little variation.

First, let your Rod be light, and very gentle, I take the best to be of two pieces, and let not your Line exceed (especially for three or four links

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 113

links next to the hook) I say, not exceed three or four hairs at the most, though you may Fish a little stronger above in the upper part of your Line : but if you can attain to Angle with one hair, you shall have more rises and catch more Fish. Now you must be sure not to cumber your self with too long a Line, as most do: and before you begin to Angle, cast to have the wind on your back, and the Sun (if it shines) to be before you, and to fish down the stream; and carry the point or top of your Rod downward, by which means the shadow of your self, and Rod too will be the least offensive to the Fish, for the sight of any shade amazes the fish, and spoils your sport, of which you must take a great care.

In the middle of *March* (till which time a man should not in honesty catch a Trout) or in *April*, if the weather be dark, or a little windy or cloudy, the best fishing is with the *Palmer-worm*, of which I last spoke to you, but of these there be divers kinds, or at least of divers colours; these and the *May-flie* are the ground of all Flie-angling, which are to be thus made.

First, you must arm your hook with the line in the inside of it, then take your Scissars, and cut so much of a brown Mallards feather as in your own reason will make the wings of it, you having withal regard to the bigness or littleness

114 The Compleat Angler. Part. I.

teness of your hook, then lay the outmost part of your feather next to your hook, then the point of your feather next the shank of your hook; and having so done, whip it three or four times about the hook with the same Silk, with which your hook was armed, and having made the Silk fast, take the hackle of a *Cock* or *Capons* neck, or a *Plovers* top, which is usually better: take off the one side of the feather, and then take the hackle, Silk, or Crewel, Gold or Silver thred, make these fast at the bent of the hook, that is to say, below your arming; then you must take the hackle, the Silver or Gold thred, and work it up to the wings, shifting or still removing your finger, as you turn the Silk about the hook: and still looking at every stop or turn, that your Gold, or what materials soever you make your *Flie* of, do lie right and neatly; and if you find they do so, then when you have made the head, make all fast, and then work your hackle up to the head, and make that fast: and then with a needle or pin divide the wing into two, and then with the arming Silk whip it about cross-waies betwixt the wings; and then with your thumb you must turn the point of the feather towards the bent of the hook, and then work three or four times about the shank of the hook, and then view the proportion, and if all be neat and to your liking fasten.

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 115

I confefs, no direction can be given to make a man of a dull capacity able to make a Flie well : and yet I know, this with a little practice will help an ingenuous Angler in a good degree : but to see a Flie made by an Artist in that kind, is the best teaching to make it, and then an ingenuous Angler may walk by the River and mark what flies fall on the water that day, and catch one of them, if he see the *Trouts* leap at a flie of that kind : and then having alwaies hooks ready hung with him, and having a bag also always with him, with Bears hair, or the hair of a brown or sad-coloured Heifer, hackles of a Cock or Capon, several coloured Silk and Crewel to make the body of the flie, the feathers of a Drakes head, black or brown Sheeps wool, or Hogs wool, or hair, thred of Gold and of Silver : Silk of several colours (especially sad coloured to make the flies head :) and there be also other coloured feathers both of little birds and of peckled fowl. I say, having those with him in a bag, and trying to make a flie, though he miss at first, yet shall he at last hit it better, even to such a perfection, as none can well teach him; and if he hit to make his Flie right, and have the luck to hit also where there is store of *Trouts*, a dark day, and a right wind, he will catch such store of them, as will encourage him to grow more and more in love with the Art of *Fly-making*.
Venar.

Venat. But my loving master, if any wind will not serve, then I wish I were in *Lapland*, to buy a good wind of one of the honest Witches, that sell so many winds there, and so cheap.

Pisc. Marry Scholar, but I would not be there, nor indeed from under this tree: for look how it begins to rain, and by the clouds, if I mistake not we shall presently have a smoaking showre, and therefore sit close, this *Sycamore-tree* will shelter us: and I will tell you, as they shall come into my mind, more observations of flie-fishing for a Trout.

But first for the wind, you are to take notice, that of the winds the *Southwind* is said to be best. One observes, That

— *When the wind is South,
It blows your bait into a fishes mouth.*

Next to that, the *West* wind is believed to be the best: and having told you that the *East* wind is the worst, I need not tell you which wind is the best in the third degree: And yet (as *Solomon* observes) that *He that considers the wind shall never sow*: so he that busies his head too much about them, (if the weather be not made extream cold by an *East* wind) shall be a little superstitious: For as it is observed by some, That there is no good Horse of a bad colour; so I have observed that if it be a cloudy day,

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 117

day, and not extream cold, let the Wind sit in what corner it will, and do its worst I heed it not. And yet take this for a rule, that I would willingly fish standing on the Lee-shore: and you are to take notice, that the fish lies or swims nearer the bottom, and in deeper water in Winter than in Summer; and also nearer the bottom in any cold day, and then gets nearest the Lee-side of the water.

But I promised to tell you more of the Flie-fishing for a *Trout*, which I may have time enough to do, for you see it rains *May-butter*: First for a *May-Flie*, you may make his body with greenish coloured Crewel, or Willowish colour; darkning it in most places with waxed Silk, or rib'd with black hair, or some of them rib'd with silver thred; and such Wings for the colour as you see the flie to have at that season; nay, at that very day on the water. Or you may make the *Oak-flie* with an Orange-tawny and black ground, and the brown of a Mallards feather for the Wings; and you are to know, that these two are most excellent flies, that is, the *May-flie* and the *Oak-Flie*. And let me again tell you, that you keep as far from the water as you can possibly, whether you fish with a flie or worm, and fish down the stream; and when you fish with a flie, if it be possible, let no part of your line touch the water, but your flie only; and be still moving your flie upon the water,

water, or casting it into the water, you your self being also always moving down the stream. Mr. *Barker* commends several sorts of the *Palmer* flies, not only those rib'd with silver and gold, but others that have their bodies all made of black, or some with red, and a red hackle; you may also make the *Hawthorn-flie*, which is all black, and not big, but very small, the smaller the better; or the *Oak-Flie*, the body of which is Orange-colour and black Crewel, with a brown Wing; or a flie made with a *Peacock's* feather, is excellent in a bright day: You must be sure you want not in your *Magazine-bag* the *Peacock's* feather, and grounds of such wool and Crewel as will make the Grasshopper; and note that usually the smallest flies are the best; and note also, that the light flie does usually make most sport in a dark day, and the darkest and least flie in a bright or clear day; and lastly note, that you are to repair upon any occasion to your *Magazine-bag*, and upon any occasion vary and make them lighter or sadder according to your fancy or the day.

And now I shall tell you, that the fishing with a natural flie is excellent, and affords much pleasure; they may be found thus, the *May-flie* usually in and about that month near to the River side, especially against rain; the *Oak-Flie* on the butt or body of an *Oak* or *Ash* from the beginning of May to the end of August,

I.
elf
r.
er
d,
of
ou
all
er
ch
a
ke
ift
ag
ol
d
t;
y
ft
y
n
n
d-
g
ds
e
h
i;
or
of
s

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 119

August; it is a brownish flie, and easie to be so found, and stands usually with his head downward, that is to say, towards the root of the tree; the small black flie, or Hawthorn flie, is to be had on any Hawthorn bush after the leaves be come forth: with these and a short Line (as I shewed to Angle for a *Cub*) you may dape or dop, and also with a *Grasshopper* behind a tree, or in any deep hole, still making it to move on the top of the water, as if it were alive, and still keeping your self out of sight, you shall certainly have sport if there be *Trouts*; yea, in a hot day, but especially in the evening of a hot day you will have sport.

And now, Scholar, my direction for flie-fishing is ended with this showre, for it has done raining; and now look about you, and see how pleasantly that Meadow looks; nay, and the Earth swells as sweetly too. Come, let me tell you what holy Mr. *Herbert* says of such days and flowers as these, and then we will thank God that we enjoy them, and walk to the River and sit down quietly, and try to catch the other brace of *Trouts*.

*Sweet day, so cool, so calm, so bright,
The bridal of the earth and skie,
Sweet dews shall weep thy fall to night,
for thou must die.*

Sweet

120 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

*Sweet Rose, whose brow angry and brave
Bids the rash gazer wipe his eye,
Thy root is ever in its grave,
and thou must die.*

*Sweet Spring, full of sweet days and roses,
A box where sweets compacted lye;
My Musick shews you have your closes,
and all must dye.*

*Only a sweet and vertuous soul,
Like seasoned Timber never gives,
But when the whole world turns to coal,
then chiefly lives.*

Venat. I thank you, good Master, for your good direction for Flie-fishing, and for the sweet enjoyment of the pleasant day, which is so far spent without offence to God or man: and I thank you for the sweet close of your discourse with Mr. Herberts Verses, who I have heard loved Angling: and I do the rather believe it, because he had a spirit suitable to Anglers, and to those primitive Christians, that you love, and have so much commended.

Pisc. Well my loving Scholar, and I am pleased, to know that you are so well pleased with my direction and discourse.

And since you like these Verses of Mr. Herberts so well, let me tell you what a reverend and

Chap. 5. **The Compleat Angler.** 121

and learned Divine that professes to imitate him (and has indeed done so most excellently) hath writ of our *Book of Common Prayer*, which I know you will like the better, because he is a friend of mine, and I am sure no enemy to Angling.

(not ?
What ? pray'r by th'book? and common ? Yes, why

*The Spirit of grace,
And supplication,
Is not left free alone*

*For time and place,
But manner too : to read or speak by rote,
Is all alike to him, that prays
In's heart, what with his mouth he says.*

*They that in private by themselves alone
Do pray, may take
What liberty they please,
In chusing of the ways
Wherein to make
Their souls most intimate affections known
To him that sees in secret, when
Th' are most conceal'd from other men.*

*But he, that unto others leads the way
In publick prayer,
Should do it so
As all that hear may know.*

K

They

*They need not fear
To tune their hearts unto his tongue, and say,
Amen ; not doubt they were betray'd
To blaspheme, when they meant to have pray'd.*

*Devotion will add Life unto the Letter,
And why should not
That which Authority
Prescribes, esteemed be
Advantage got ?*

*If th' prayer be good, the commoner the better,
Prayer in the Churches words, as well
As sense, of all prayers bears the bell.*

Ch. Harvie.

And now, Scholar, I think it will be time to repair to our Angle-rods, which we left in the water, to fish for themselves, and you shall chuse which shall be yours ; and it is an even lay, one of them catches.

And let me tell you, this kind of fishing with a dead rod, and laying night-hooks, are like putting money to Use, for they both work for the Owners, when they do nothing but sleep, or eat, or rejoyce ; as you know we have done this last hour, and sate as quietly and as free from cares under this *Sycamore*, as *Virgil's Tityrus* and his *Melibæus* did under their broad *Beech-tree* : No life, my honest Scholar, no life so happy and so pleasant, as the life of a well

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 123

well governed *Angler*; for when the *Lawyer* is swallowed up with business, and the *Statesman* is preventing or contriving plots, then we sit on *Cowslip-banks*, hear the birds sing, and possess our selves in as much quietness as these silent silver streams, which we now see glide so quietly by us. Indeed my good Scholar, we may say of *Angling*, as *Dr. Boteler* said of *Strawberries*, Doubtless God could have made a better berry, but doubtless God never did: And so (if I might be Judge) God never did make a more calm, quiet, innocent recreation than *Angling*.

I'll tell you Scholar, when I sate last on this *Primrose-bank*, and look'd down these *Meadows*; I thought of them as *Charles the Emperour* did of the City of *Florence*: That they were too pleasant to be look'd on, but only on *Holy-days*: as I then sate on this very grass, I turn'd my present thoughts into verse: 'Twas a wish which I'll repeat to you.

The Anglers wish.

*I in these flowry Meads won'd be :
These Chrystal streams should solace me;
To whose harmonious bubbling noise,
I with my Angle wo'd rejoice
Sit here and see the Turtle-dove,
Court his chaste Mate to acts of love,*

*Or on that bank, feel the west wind
 Breath health and plenty, please my mind
 To see sweet dew-drops kiss these flowers,*

* Like
 Hermit
 poor.

*And then, washt off by April-showers:
 Here hear my Kenna sing * a song,
 There see a Black-bird feed her young,*

*Or a Levercock build her nest ;
 Here, give my weary spirits rest,
 And raise my low pitchd thoughts above
 Earth, or what poor mortals love :*

*Thus free from Law-suits, and the noise
 Of Princes Courts I wou'd rejoyce.*

*Or, with my Bryan, and a book,
 Loyter long days near Shawford-brook ;
 There sit by him, and eat my meat,
 There see the Sun both rise and set :
 There bid good morning to next day,
 There meditate my time away :
 And angle on, and beg to have
 A quiet passage to a welcome grave.*

When I had ended this compofure, I left this place, and saw a Brother of the Angle sit under that *bony-suckle-hedg* (one that will prove worth your acquaintance) I fate down by him, and presently we met with an accidental piece of merriment, which I will relate to you ; for it rains still.

On the other side of this very hedge fate a gang

Chap. 5. **The Compleat Angler.** 125

gang of *Gypsies*, and near to them sate a gang of *Beggars*: the *Gypsies* were then to divide all the money that had been got that week, either by stealing linnen or poultrie, or by Fortune-telling, or Legerdemain, or indeed by any other sleights and secrets belonging to their mysterious Government. And the sum that was got that week proved to be but twenty and some odd shillings. The odd money was agreed to be distributed amongst the poor of their own Corporation; and for the remaining twenty shillings, that was to be divided unto four Gentlemen *Gypsies*, according to their several degrees in their Commonwealth.

And the first or chiefest *Gypsie*, was by consent to have a third part of the twenty shillings; which all men know is 6 s. 8 d.

The second was to have a fourth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 5 s.

The third was to have a fifth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 4 s.

The fourth and last *Gypsie*, was to have a sixth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 3 s. 4 d.

As for example,

3 times 6 s. 8 d. is — 20 s.

And so is 4 times 5 s. — 20 s.

And so is 5 times 4 s. — 20 s.

And so is 6 times 3 s. 4 d. --- 20 s.

K 3

And

And yet he that divided the money was so very a *Gypsie*, that though he gave to every one these said sums, yet he kept one shilling of it for himself.

As for Example,

s.	d.
6	8
5	0
4	0
3	4
19	0

make but

But now you shall know, that when the four *Gypsies* saw that he had got one shilling by dividing the money, though not one of them knew any reason to demand more, yet like Lords and Courtiers every *Gypsie* envied him that was the gainer, and wrangled with him, and every one said the *remaining shilling belonged to him*: and so they fell to so high a contest about it, as none that knows the faithfulness of one *Gypsie* to another, will easily believe; only we that have lived these last twenty years, are certain that money has been able to do much mischief. However the *Gypsies* were too wise to go to Law, and did therefore chuse their choice friends *Rook* and *Shark*, and our late English *Gusman* to be their Arbitrators and Umpires;

Umpires; and so they left this *Hony-suckle-bedg*, and went to *tell fortunes*, and *cheat*, and get more money and lodging in the next Village.

When these were gone we heard as high a contention amongst the *beggars*, *Whether it was easiest to rip a Cloak, or to unrip a Cloak?* One beggar affirmed it was all one. But that was denied by asking her, *If doing and undoing were all one?* then another said, *'Twas easiest to unrip a Cloak*, for that was to let it alone. But she was answered, by asking her, how she unript it, if she let it alone? And she confest her self mistaken. These and twenty such like questions were proposed, and answered with as much beggarly Logick and earnestness, as was ever heard to proceed from the mouth of the most pertinacious Schismatick; and sometimes all the Beggars (whose number was neither more nor less than the Poets nine Muses) talk'd all together about this ripping and unripping, and so loud that not one heard what the other said; but at last one beggar crav'd audience, and told them, that old Father *Clause*, whom Ben Johnson in his Beggars-bush created King of their Corporation, was that night to lodg at an Ale-house (called *Catch-her-by-the-way*) not far from *Waltham-Cross*, and in the high-road towards *London*; and he therefore desired them to spend no more time about that and such like questions, but refer all to Father

Classe at night, for he was an upright Judge, and in the mean time draw cuts what Song should be next sung, and who should sing it; They all agreed to the motion, and the lot fell to her that was the youngest, and veriest Virgin of the Company, and she sung *Frank Davisons* Song, which he made forty years ago, and all the others of the company joyned to sing the burthen with her: the Ditty was this, but first the burthen.

*Bright shines the Sun, play beggars, play,
Here's scraps enough to serve to day.*

*What noise of viols is so sweet
As when our merry clappers ring?
What mirth doth want when beggars meet?
A beggars life is for a King:*

*Eat, drink and play, sleep when we list,
Go where we will so stocks be mist.
Bright shines the Sun, play beggars play,
Here's scraps enough to serve to day.*

*The world is ours and ours alone,
For we alone have world at will;
We purchase not, all is our own,
Both fields and streets we beggars fill:
Play beggars play, play beggars play,
Here's scraps enough to serve to day.*

*A hundred herds of black and white
Upon our Gowns securely feed
And yet if any dare us bite,
He dies therefore as sure as Creed:
Thus beggars Lord it as they please,
And only beggars live at ease:
Bright shines the sun, play beggars play,
Here's scraps enough to serve to day.*

Venat. I thank you good Master, for this piece of merriment, and this Song, which was well humoured by the Maker, and well remembered by you.

Pisc. But I pray forget not the Catch which you promised to make against night, for our Country-man, honest *Coridon*, will expect your Catch and my Song, which I must be forced to patch up, for it is so long since I learnt it, that I have forgot a part of it. But come, now it hath done raining, let's stretch our legs a little in a gentle walk to the River, and try what interest our Angles will pay us for lending them so long to be used by the *Trouts*, lent them indeed, like Usurers, for our profit and their destruction.

Venat. Oh me, look you Master, a fish a fish, oh las Master, I have lost her!

Pisc. I marry Sir, that was a good fish indeed: if I had had the luck to have taken up that Rod, then 'tis twenty to one, he should
not

not have broke my line by running to the rods end as you suffered him : I vould have held him vvithin the bent of my Rod (unless he had been fellow to the great *Trout* that is near an ell long, which was of such a length and depth, that he had his picture drawn, and now is to be seen at mine Host *Rickabies* at the *George* in *Ware*,) and it may be, by giving that very great *Trout* the Rod, that is, by casting it to him into the water, I might have caught him at the long run, for so I use alwayes to do when I meet with an overgrown fish, and you will learn to do so too hereafter : for I tell you, Scholar, fishing is an Art, or at least, it is an Art to catch fish.

Venat. But Master, I have heard that the great *Trout* you speak of is a *Salmon*.

Pisc. Trust me Scholar, I know not what to say to it. There are many Country people that believe *Hares* change Sexes every year: And there be very many learned men think so too, for in their dissecting them they find many reasons to incline them to that belief. And to make the wonder seem yet less that *Hares* change Sexes, note that Doctor *Mer. Casaubon* affirms in his book of credible and incredible things, that *Gasper Peuseus* a learned Phylician, tells us of a people that once a year turn wolves, partly in shape, and partly in conditions. And so whether this were a *Salmon* when he came into the fresh water, and his not returning into the Sea

Chap 5. The Compleat Angler. 131

Sea hath altered him to another colour or kind, I am not able to say; but I am certain he hath all the signs of being a *Trout* both for his *shape*, *colour*, and *spots*, and yet many think he is not.

Venat. But Master, will this *Trout* which I had hold of die? for it is like he hath the hook in his belly.

Pisc. I will tell you, Scholar, that unless the hook be fast in his very Gorge, tis more than probable he will live, and a little time with the help of the water, will rust the hook, and it will in time wear away: as the gravel doth in the horse hoof, which only leaves a false quarter.

And now Scholar, lets go to my Rod. Look you Scholar, I have a fish too, but it proves a logger-headed *Cbub*, and this is not much amiss, for this will pleasure some poor body, as we go to our lodging to meet our Brother *Peter* and honest *Coridon*. Come, now bait your hook again, and lay it into the water, for it rains again; and we will ev'n retire to the *Sycamore tree*, and there I will give you more directions concerning Fishing: For I would fain make you an Artist.

Venat. Yes, good Master, I pray let it be so.

Pisc. Well Scholar, now we are fate down and are at ease, I shall tell you a little more of *Trout* fishing, before I speak of the *Salmon* (which I purpose shall be next,) and then of the *Pike* or *Luce*. You are to know, there is night as well

as

as day-fishing for a *Trout*, and that in the night the best *Trouts* come out of their holes : and the manner of taking them, is on the top of the water with a great *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, or rather two, which you are to fish with in a place where the waters run somewhat quietly (for in a stream the bait will not be so well discerned.) I say in a *quiet* or dead place near to some swift, there draw your bait over the top of the water to and fro, and if there be a good *Trout* in the hole, he will take it, especially if the night be dark : for then he is bold and lies near the top of the water, watching the motion of any *Frog* or *Water-Rat* or *Mouse* that swims betwixt him and the skie ; these he hunts after, if he sees the water but wrinkle, or move in one of these dead holes, where these great old *Trouts* usually lie near to their holds ; for you are to note, that the great old *Trout* is both subtil and fearful, and lies close all day, and does not usually stir out of his hold, but lies in it as close in the day, as the *timorous Hare* does in her form : for the chief feeding of either is seldom in the day, but usually in the night, and then the great *Trout* feeds very boldly.

And you must fish for him with a strong Line, and not a little hook, and let him have time to gorge your hook, for he does not usually forsake it, as he oft will in the day-fishing : and if the night be not dark, then Fish so with an *Artificial*

I.
ght
the
ater
wo,
the
am
n a
ere
and
he
for
wa-
ter-
the
ater
les,
r to
reat
lies
his
im-
ed-
ally
ery
ine,
to
ake
the
ifi-
ial

Chap.5. The Compleat Angler. 133

cial *flie* of a light-colour, and at the snap: nay, he will sometimes rise at a dead Mouſe, or a piece of cloth, or any thing, that ſeems to ſwim croſs the water, or to be in motion: this is a choice way, but I have not oft uſed it, becauſe it is void of the pleaſures, that ſuch dayes as theſe, that we two now enjoy, afford an Angler.

And you are to know, that in *Hampſhire*, which I think exceeds all *England* for ſwift ſhallow, clear, pleaſant Brooks, and ſtore of *Trouts*, they uſe to catch *Trouts* in the night, by the light of a Torch or ſtraw, which when they have diſcovered, they ſtrike with a *Troutſpear* or other wayes. This kind of way they catch very many, but I would not believe it till I was an eye-witneſs of it, nor do I like it now I have ſeen it.

Venat. But Maſter, do not *Trouts* ſee us in the night?

Piſc. Yes, and hear, and ſmell too, both then and in the day time, for *Gefner* obſerves, the *Otter* ſmells a Fiſh forty furlongs off him in the water: and that it may be true, ſeems to be affirmed by *Sir Francis Bacon* (in the eighth Century of his Natural Hiſtory) who there proves, that waters may be the *Medium* of ſounds, by demonſtrating it thus, *That if you knock two ſtones together very deep under the water, thoſe that ſtand on a bank near to that place may hear the noiſe without any diminution of it by the water.*

He

He also offers the like experiment concerning the letting an *Anchor* fall by a very long cable or rope on a rock, or the sand within the Sea : and this being so well observed and demonstrated, as it is by that learned man, has made me to believe that *Ecles* unbed themselves, and stir at the noise of Thunder, and not only, as some think, by the motion or stirring of the earth which is occasioned by that Thunder.

And this reason of Sir *Francis Bacon* (*Exper. 792.*) has made me crave pardon of one that I laught at for affirming, that he knew *Carp*s come to a certain place in a Pond, to be fed at the ringing of a Bell, or the beating of a Drum : and however, it shall be a rule for me to make as little noise as I can when I am fishing, untill Sir *Francis Bacon* be confuted, which I shall give any man leave to do.

And, lest you may think him singular in this opinion, I will tell you, this seems to be believed by our learned Doctor *Hackwell*, who (in his *Apology of Gods Power and Providence*, f. 360) quotes *Pliny* to report, that one of the Emperors had particular Fish-ponds, and in them several Fish, that appeared and came when they were called by their particular names : and St. *James* tells us (*chap. 1. and 7.*) that all things in the Sea have been tamed by Mankind. And *Pliny* tells us (*lib. 9. 35.*) that *Antonia* the Wife of *Drusus* had a *Lamprey*, at whose gills she hung Jewels or Ear-

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 135

Ear-rings; and that others have been so tender-hearted, as to shed tears at the death of Fishes, which they have kept and loved. And these Observations, which will to most hearers seem wonderful, seem to have a further confirmation from *Martial* (*lib. 4. epigr. 30.*) who writes thus :

Piscator fuge ne nocens, &c.

Angler, would'st thou be guiltless? then forbear,
For these are sacred fishes that swim here;
Who know their Sovereign, and will lick his hand;
Than which none's greater in the worlds command:
Nay more, th' have names, & when they called are,
Do to their several Owners Call repair.

All the further use that I shall make of this, shall be, to advise Anglers to be patient, and forbear swearing, lest they be heard and catch no Fish.

And so I shall proceed next to tell you, it is certain, that certain fields near *Lemster*, a Town in *Hereford-shire*, are observed to make the sheep that graze upon them more fat than the next, and also to bear finer wool; that is to say, that, that year in which they feed in such a particular pasture, they shall yield finer wool than they did that year before they came to feed in it, and courser again if they shall return
to

to their former pasture; and again return to a finer wool being fed in the fine-wool-ground. Which I tell you, that you may the better believe that I am certain, if I catch a *Trout* in one Meadow, he shall be *white* and *faint*, and very like to be *lowfie*; and as certainly, if I catch a *Trout* in the next Meadow, he shall be *strong*, and *red*, and *lusty*, and much better meat: Trust me, Scholar, I have caught many a *Trout* in a particular Meadow, that the very shape and the enamell'd colour of him hath been such, as hath joyed me to look on him; and I have then with much pleasure concluded with *Solomon*, *Every thing is beautiful in his season*.

I should by promise speak next of the *Salmon*, but I will by your favour say a little of the *Umber* or *Grayling*; which is so like a *Trout* for his shape and feeding, that I desire I may exercise your patience with a short discourse of him, and then the next shall be of the *Salmon*.

CHAP.

C H A P. VI.

*Observations of the Umber or Grayling;
and directions how to fish for them.*

PISC. The *Umber* and *Grayling* are thought by some to differ as the *Herring* and *Pilcher* do. But though they may do so in other Nations, I think those in *England* differ nothing but in their names. *Aldrovandus* says, they be of a *Trout* kind : and *Gesner* says, that in his Country (which is *Switzerland*) he is accounted the choicest of all Fish. And in *Italy*, he is in the month of *May* so highly valued, that he is sold then at a much higher rate than any other Fish. The *French* (which call the *Chub* *Un Villain*) call the *Umber* of the *Lake Leman*, *Un Umble Chevalier* ; and they value the *Umber* or *Grayling* so highly, that they say he feeds on Gold, and say that many have been caught out of their famous River of *Loyre*, out of whose bellies grains of Gold have been often taken. And some think that he feeds on *Water-time*, and smells of it at his first taking out of the water ; and they may think so with as good reason as we do, that our *Smelts* smell like *Violets* at their being first caught ; which I think is a
L truth.

truth. *Aldrovandus* says, the *Salmon*, the *Grayling*, and *Trout*, and all Fish that live in clear and sharp streams, are made by their mother Nature of such exact shape and pleasant colours, purposely to invite us to a joy and contentedness in feasting with her. Whether this is a truth or not, is not my purpose to dispute; but 'tis certain, all that write of the *Umber* declare him to be very medicinable. And *Gesner* says, that the fat of an *Umber* or *Grayling* being set with a little Honey a day or two in the Sun in a little glass, is very excellent against redness, or swarthiness, or any thing that breeds in the eyes. *Salvian* takes him to be called *Umber* from his swift swimming or gliding out of sight, more like a shadow or a Ghost than a fish. Much more might be said both of his smell and tast, but I shall only tell you, that *St. Ambrose* the glorious Bishop of *Millan* (who liv'd when the Church kept Fasting-days) calls him the *flower-fish*, or flower of Fishes, and that he was so far in love with him, that he would not let him pass without the honour of a long Discourse; but I must; and pass on to tell you how to take this dainty fish.

First, Note, That he grows not to the bigness of a Trout; for the biggest of them do not usually exceed eighteen inches, he lives in such Rivers as the Trout does, and is usually taken with the same baits as the Trout is, and after the

Chap. 6. The Compleat Angler. 139

the same manner, for he will bite both at the *Minnow*, or *Worm*, or *Fly*, (though he bites not often at the *Minnow*) and is very game-som at the *Fly*, and much simpler, and therefore bolder than a *Trout*, for he will rise twenty times at a fly, if you miss him, and yet rise again. He has been taken with a fly made of the red feathers of a *Parakita*, a strange out-landish bird, and he will rise at a fly not unlike a gnat or a small moth, or indeed, at most flies that are not too big. He is a Fish that lurks close all winter, but is very pleasant and jolly after mid-*April*, and in *May*, and in the hot months: he is of a very fine shape, his flesh is white, his teeth, those little ones that he has, are in his throat, yet he has so tender a mouth, that he is oftner lost after an Angler has hooked him, than any other Fish. Though there be many of these Fishes in the delicate River *Dove*, and in *Trent*, and some other smaller Rivers, as that which runs by *Salisbury*, yet he is not so general a Fish as the *Trout*, nor to me so good to eat or to angle for. And so I shall take my leave of him, and now come to some Observations of the *Salmon*, and how to catch him.

C H A P. VII.

*Observations of the Salmon, with directions
how to fish for him.*

PISC. The *Salmon* is accounted the King of fresh-water-fish, and is ever bred in Rivers relating to the Sea, yet so high or far from it as admits of no tincture of salt, or brackishness; He is said to breed or cast his spawn in most Rivers in the month of *August*: some say, that then they dig a hole or grave in a safe place in the gravel, and there place their eggs or spawn (after the Melter has done his natural Office) and then hide it most cunningly, and cover it over with gravel and stones; and then leave it to their Creators protection; who by a gentle heat which he infuses into that cold element makes it brood and beget life in the spawn, and to become *Samlets* early in the spring next following.

The *Salmons* having spent their appointed time, and done this Natural Duty in the fresh waters; they then haste to the Sea before Winters; both the Melter and Spawner: but, if they be stopt by *Flood-gates* or *Weires*, or lost in the fresh waters; then, those so left behind, by degrees grow sick, and lean, and unseasonable, and kipper; that

that is to say, have bony gristles grow out of their lower chaps (not unlike a Hawks beak) which hinders their feeding, and in time such Fish so left behind, pine away and dye. 'Tis observed, that he may live thus one year from the Sea ; but he then grows insipid, and tasteless, and loses both his blood and strength, and pines and dies the second year. And 'tis noted, that those little *Salmons* called *Skeggers*, which abound in many Rivers relating to the *Sea*, are bred by such sick *Salmons*, that might not go to the Sea, and that though they abound, yet they never thrive to any considerable bigness.

But if the old *Salmon* gets to the Sea, then that gristle which shews him to be *kipper* wears away, or is cast off (as the *Eagle* is said to cast his bill) and he recovers his strength, and comes next Summer to the same River (if it be possible) to enjoy the former pleasures that there possesst him ; for (as one has wittily observed) he has (like some persons of Honour and Riches, which have both their Winter and Summer houses) the fresh Rivers for Summer, and the salt water for Winter to spend his life in ; which is not (as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath observed in his *History of Life and Death*) above ten years : And it is to be observed, that though the *Salmon* does grow big in the Sea, yet he grows not fat but in fresh Rivers ; and it is observed, that the farther

they get from the Sea, they be both the fatter and better.

Next, I shall tell you, that though they make very hard shift to get out of the fresh Rivers into the Sea: yet they will make harder shift to get out of the salt into the fresh Rivers, to spawn, or possess the pleasures that they have formerly found in them: to which end, they will force themselves through *Flood-gates*, or over *Weires*, or *hedges*, or *stops* in the water, even to a height beyond common belief. *Gesner* speaks of such places, as are known to be above eight foot high above water. And our *Cambden* mentions (in his *Britannia*) the like wonder to be in *Pembroke-shire*, where the River *Tivy* falls into the Sea, and that the fall is so down-right, and so high, that the people stand and wonder at the strength and flight by which they see the *Salmon* use to get out of the Sea into the said River; and the manner and height of the place is so notable, that it is known far by the name of the *Salmon-leap*; concerning which, take this also out of *Michael Drayton*, my honest old friend. As he tells it you in his *Polyalbion*.

*And when the Salmon seeks a fresher stream to find,
(which hither from the Sea comes yearly by his kind)
As he towards season grows, & stems the watry track
Where Tivy falling down, makes an high cataract,
Forc'd*

Chap.6. The Compleat Angler. 143

*Forc'd by the rising rocks that there her course oppose
As tho within her bounds they meant her to inclose;
Here, when the labouring fish does at the foot arrive,*

*(strive,
And finds that by his strength he does but vainly
His tail takes in his mouth, & bending like a bow*

*(throw,
That's to full compass drawn, aloft himself doth
Then springing at his height, as doth a little wand,
That bended end to end, & started from mans hand,
Far off it self doth cast; so, does the Salmon vault,
And if at first he fail, his second Summer-salt,
He instantly essaies, and from his nimble ring,
Still jerking, never leaves untill himself be fling
Above the opposing stream.—*

This *Michael Drayton* tells you of this leap or *Summer-salt* of the *Salmon*.

And next I shall tell you, that it is observed by *Gesner* and others, that there is no better *Salmon* than in *England*: and that though some of our Northern Countries have as fat and as large as the River *Thames*, yet none are of so excellent a taste.

And as I have told you that *Sir Francis Bacon* observes, the age of a *Salmon* exceeds not ten years, so let me next tell you, that his growth is very sudden: it is said, that after he is got into the Sea, he becomes from a *Samlet*, not so big as a *Gudgion*, to be a *Salmon*, in as short a

time as a Gosling becomes to be a Goose. Much of this has been observed by tying a *Ribband* or some known *tape* or *thread*, in the tail of some young *Salmons*, which have been taken in *Weirs* as they have swimm'd toward the salt water, and then by taking a part of them again with the known mark at the same place at their return from the Sea, which is usually about six months after; and the like experiment hath been tryed upon young *Swallows*, who have after six months absence, been observed to return to the same chimney, there to make their nests and habitations for the Summer following: which has inclined many to think, that every *Salmon* usually returns to the same River in which it was bred, as young *Pigeons* taken out of the same *Dove-cote*, have also been observed to do.

And you are yet to observe further, that the *Hee Salmon* is usually bigger than the *Spawner*, and that he is more kipper, and less able to endure a winter in the fresh water, than the *She* is, yet she is at that time of looking less kipper and better, as watry, and as bad meat.

And yet you are to observe, that as there is no general rule without an exception, so there are some few Rivers in this Nation, that have *Trouts* and *Salmons* in season a winter, as 'tis certain there be in the River *Wy* in *Moxmouth-shire*, where they be in season (as *Cambden* observes)

Chap. 7. The Compleat Angler. 145

serves) from *September* till *April*. But, my Scholar, the observation of this and many other things, I must in manners omit, because they will prove to large for our narrow compass of time, and therefore I shall next fall upon my direction *how to fish for this Salmon*.

And for that first, you shall observe, that usually he staies not long in a place (as *Trouts* will) but (as I said) covets still to go nearer the Spring head; and that he does not (as the *Trout* and many other fish) lie near the water side or bank or roots of trees, but swims in the deep and broad parts of the water, and usually in the middle, and near the ground; and that there you are to fish for him, and that it is to be caught as the *Trout* is, with a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, (which some call a *Penk*) or with a *Flie*.

And you are to observe, that he is very seldom observed to bite at a *Minnow*, (yet sometimes he will) and not usually at a *flie*, but more usually at a *Worm*, and then most usually at a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, which should be well scoured that is to say, kept seven or eight daies in Moss before you fish with them: and if you double your time of eight into sixteen twenty or more daies, it is still the better, for the worms will still be clearer, tougher; and more lively, and continue so longer upon your hook, and they may be kept longer by keeping them cool and in fresh Moss, and some advise to put Camphire into it.

Note

Note also, that many use to fish for a *Salmon* with a ring of wire on the top of their Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a length as is needful when he is hook'd. And to that end, some use a wheel about the middle of their Rod, or near their hand, which is to be observed better by seeing one of them, than by a large demonstration of words.

And now I shall tell you, that which may be called a secret: I have been a fishing with old *Oliver Henly*, (now with God) a noted Fisher, both for *Trout* and *Salmon*, and have observed, that he would usually take three or four worms out of his bag, and put them into a little box in his pocket, where he would usually let them continue half an hour or more, before he would bait his hook with them; I have asked him his reason, and he has replied, *He did but pick the best out to be in readiness against he baited his hook the next time*: But he has been observed both by others, and my self, to catch more fish than I or any other body, that has ever gone a fishing with him could do; and especially *Salmons*; and I have been told lately by one of his most intimate and secret friends, that the box in which he put those worms, was anointed with a drop, or two or three, of the Oyl of *Ivy berries*, made by expression or infusion; and told that by the worms remaining in that box an hour, or a like time, they had incorporated a kind of smell that

I. Chap.6. The Compleat Angler. 147

that was irresistibly attractive, enough to force any Fish within the smell of them, to bite. This I heard not long since from a friend, but have not tryed it; yet I grant it probable, and refer my Reader to Sir Francis Bacons Natural History, where he proves fishes may hear and doubtless can more probably smell: and I am certain Gesner says, the Otter can smell in the water, and I know not but that Fish may do so too: 'tis left for a lover of Angling, or any that desires to improve that Art, to try this conclusion.

I shall also impart two other Experiments (but not tryed by myself) which I will deliver in the same words that they were given me by an excellent Angler and a very friend, in writing; he told me the latter was too good to be told, but in a learned language, lest it should be made common.

Take the stinking oil, drawn out of Polypody of the Oak by a retort, mixt with Turpentine, and Hive-honey, and anoint your bait therewith, and it will doubtless draw the fish to it.

The other is this: *Vulnera hederae grandissime inflicta sudant Balsamum oleo getato, albicantiq; persimile, odoris vero longe suavissimi.*

'Tis supremely sweet to any fish, and yet *Asa fetida* may do the like.

But in these things I have no great faith, yet grant it probable, and have had from some chymical men (namely, from Sir George Hastings and

and others) an affirmation of them to be very advantageous : but no more of these, especially not in this place.

I might here, before I take my leave of the *Salmon*, tell you, that there is more than one sort of them, as namely, a *Tecon*, and another called in some places a *Samlet*, or by some, a *Skegger* : but these (and others which I forbear to name) may be Fish of another kind, (and differ, as we know a *Herring* and a *Pilcher* do,) which I think are as different, as the Rivers in which they breed, and must by me be left to the disquisitions of men of more leisure, and of greater abilities, than I profess my self to have.

And lastly, I am to borrow so much of your promised patience, as to tell you that the *Trout* or *Salmon* being in season, have at their first taking out of the water (which continues during life) their bodies adorned, the one with such red spots, and the other with such black or blackish spots, as give them such an addition of natural beauty, as I think, was never given to any woman by the Artificial Paint or Patches in which they so much pride themselves in this Age. And so I shall leave them both and proceed to some Observations of the *Pike*.

CHAP.

C H A P. VIII.

Observations of the Luce or Pike, with directions how to fish for him.

P*isc.* The mighty *Luce* or *Pike* is taken to be the Tyrant (as the *Salmon* is the King) of the fresh waters, 'Tis not to be doubted, but that they are bred, some by generation, and some not : as namely, of a Weed called *Pickerel-weed*, unless learned *Gesner* be much mistaken, for he says, this weed and other glutinous matter, with the help of the Suns heat in some particular Months, and some Ponds apted for it by nature, do become *Pikes*. But doubtless divers *Pikes* are bred after this manner, or are brought into some Ponds some such other ways as is past mans finding out, of which we have daily testimonies.

Sir *Francis Bacon* in his History of Life and Death, observes the *Pike* to be the longest lived of any fresh-water-fish, and yet he computes it to be not usually above forty years ; and others think it to be not above ten years ; and yet *Gesner* mentions a *Pike* taken in *Swedeland* in the Year 1449. with a Ring about his neck, declaring he was put into that Pond by *Frederick* the second, more than two hundred years before

fore he was last taken, as by the Inscription in that Ring (being Greek) was interpreted by the then Bishop of *Worms*. But of this no more, but that it is observed, that the old or very great *Pikes* have in them more of state than goodness; the smaller or middle sized *Pikes* being by the most and choicest Palates observed to be the best meat; and contrary, the *Eel* is observed to be the better for age and bigness.

All *Pikes* that live long prove chargeable to their Keepers, because their life is maintained by the death of so many other Fish, even those of their own kind, which has made him by some Writers to be called the *Tyrant* of the Rivers, or the *Fresh-water-wolf*, by reason of his bold, greedy devouring disposition, which is so keen, as *Gesner* relates, a man going to a Pond (where it seems a *Pike* had devoured all the fish) to water his Mule, had a *Pike* bit his Mule by the lips; to which the *Pike* hung so fast, that the Mule drew him out of the water, and by that accident the owner of the Mule angled out the *Pike*. And the same *Gesner* observes, that a Maid in *Poland* had a *Pike* bit her by the foot as she was washing clothes in a Pond. And I have heard the like of a woman in *Killingworth* Pond not far from *Coventry*. But I have been assured by my friend Mr. *Seagrave*, (of whome I spake to you formerly,) that keeps tame *Otters*, that he hath known a *Pike* in extream hunger fight with

Chap.6. The Compleat Angler. 151

with one of his Otters for a Carp that the Otter had caught and was then bringing out of the water. I have told you who relates these things, and tell you they are persons of credit, and shall conclude this observation, by telling you what a wise man has observed, *It is a hard thing to perswade the belly, because it has no ears.*

But if these relations be disbelieved, it is too evident to be doubted, that a *Pike* will devour a Fish of his own kind, that shall be bigger than his belly or throat will receive, and swallow a part of him, and let the other part remain in his mouth till the swallowed part be digested, and then swallow that other part that was in his mouth, and so put it over by degrees; which is not unlike the Ox and some other beasts, taking their meat not out of their mouth immediately into their belly, but first into some place betwixt, and then chaw it, or digest it by degrees after, which is called *Chewing the Cud*. And doubtless *Pikes* will bite when they are not hungry, but as some think even for very anger, when a tempting bait comes near to them.

And it is observed, that the *Pike* will eat venomous things (as some kind of *Frogs* are) and yet live without being harmed by them: for, as some say, he has in him a natural Balsom or Antidote against all poison: and he has a
strange

strange heat, that though it appear to us to be cold, can yet digest or put over, any Fish-flesh by degrees without being sick. And others observe, that he never eats the venomous *Frog*, till he have first killed her, and then (as *Ducks* are observed to do to *Frogs* in spawning time (at which time some *Frogs* are observed to be venomous) so thoroughly washt her, by tumbling her up and down in the water, that he may devour her without danger. And *Gesner* affirms, that a *Polonian* Gentleman, did faithfully assure him, he had seen two young Geese at one time in the belly of a *Pike*. And doubtless a *Pike* in his height of hunger will bite at and devour a dog that swims in a Pond, and there have been examples of it, or the like; for as I told you, *The belly has no ears when hunger comes upon it.*

The *Pike* is also observed to be a solitary, melancholy and a bold Fish: Melancholy, because he always swims or rests himself alone, and never swims in shoals or with company, as *Roach* and *Dace*, and most other Fish do: And bold, because he fears not a shadow, or to see or be seen of any body, as the *Trout* and *Chub*, and all other Fish do.

And it is observed by *Gesner*, that the Jaw-bones, and Hearts, and Galls of *Pikes* are very medicinable for several diseases, or to stop blood,

Chap 8. The Compleat Angler. 153

blood, to abate Fevers, to cure Agues, to oppose or expel the infection of the Plague, and to be many ways medicinable and useful for the good of Mankind ; but he observes, that the biting of a *Pike* is venomous and hard to be cured.

And it is observed, that the *Pike* is a fish that breeds but once a year, and that other fish (as namely *Loaches*) do breed oftner : as we are certain tame Pigeons do almost every month, and yet the *Hawk* (a Bird of Prey, as the *Pike* is of Fish) breeds but once in twelve months : and you are to note, that his time of breeding or spawning is usually about the end of *February*, or somewhat later, in *March*, as the weather proves colder or warmer) and to note, that his manner of breeding is thus, a He and a She *Pike* will usually go together out of a River into some ditch or creek, and that there the Spawner casts her eggs, and the Melter hovers over her all that time that she is casting her spawn, but touches her not.

I might say more of this, but it might be thought curiosity or worse, and shall therefore forbear it, and take up so much of your attention, as to tell you, that the best of *Pikes* are noted to be in *Rivers*, next those in great *Ponds*, or *Meres*, and the worst in small *Ponds*.

M

But

But before I proceed further, I am to tell you that there is a great antipathy betwixt the Pike and some Frogs; and this may appear to the Reader of *Dubravius* (a Bishop in *Bohemia*) who in his Book of Fish and Fish-ponds, relates what, he says, he saw with his own eyes, and could not forbear to tell the Reader. Which was:

As he and the Bishop Thurzo were walking by a large Pond in Bohemia, they saw a Frog, when the Pike lay very sleepily and quiet by the shore side, leap upon his head, and the Frog having exprest malice or anger by his swoln cheeks and staring eyes, did stretch out his legs and embraced the Pikes head, and presently reached them to his eyes, tearing with them and his teeth those tender parts; the Pike moved with anguish, moves up and down the water, and rubs himself against weeds, and whatever he thought might quit him of his enemy; but all in vain, for the frog did continue to ride triumphantly, and to bite and torment the Pike, till his strength failed, and then the frog sunk with the Pike to the bottom of the water; then presently the frog appeared again at the top and croaked, and seemed to rejoice like a Conqueror, after which he presently retired to his secret hole. The Bishop, that had beheld the battel, called his fisherman to fetch his nets, and by all means to get the Pike, that they might declare what had hapned: and the Pike was drawn

Chap. 8. The Compleat Angler. 155

drawn forth, and both his eyes eaten out, at which when they began to wonder, the Fisherman wished them to forbear, and assured them he was certain that Pikes were often so served.

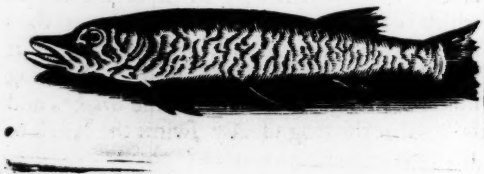
I told this which is to be read in the sixth Chapter of the Book of *Dubravius*) unto a friend, who replied, *It was as improbable as to have the mouse scratch out the cats eyes.* But he did not consider, that there be fishing Frogs (which the *Dalmatians* call the *Water-Devil*) of which I might tell you as wonderful a story, but I shall tell you, that 'tis not to be doubted, but that there be some Frogs so fearful of the *Water-snake*, that, when they swim in a place in which they fear to meet with him, they then get a reed across into their mouths, which if they two meet by accident, secures the frog from the strength and malice of the *Snake*, and note, that the frog usually swims the fastest of the two.

And let me tell you, that as there be *Water* and *Land-frogs*, so there be *Land* and *Water-Snakes*. Concerning which take this observation, that the *Land-snake* breeds, and hatches her eggs, which become young *Snakes*, in some old dunghill, or alike hot place; but the *Water-snake*, which is not venomous (and as I have been assured by a great observer of such secrets) does not hatch but breed her young alive, which she does not then forsake, but bides with them,

156 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

and in case of danger will take them all into her mouth and swim away from any apprehended danger, and then let them out again when she thinks all danger to be past ; These be accidents that we Anglers sometimes see and often talk of.

But whither am I going ? I had almost lost my self by remembering the Discourse of *Du-bravium*. I will therefore stop here, and tell you according to my promise how to catch this *Pike*.



His feeding is usually of *fish* or *frogs*, and sometimes a weed of his own called *Pickrell-weed*. Of which I told you some think some *Pikes* are bred ; for they have observed, that where none have been put into Ponds, yet they have there found many : and that there has been plenty of that weed in those Ponds, and that that weed both breeds and feeds them ; but
 whe-

Chap 8. The Compleat Angler. 157

whether those *Pikes* so bred will ever breed by generation as the others do, I shall leave to the disquisitions of men of more curiosity and leasure than I profess my self to have; and shall proceed to tell you that you may fish for a *Pike*, either with a *ledger* or a *walking-bait*; and you are to note, that I call that a *Ledger bait*, which is fixed, or made to rest in one certain place when you shall be absent from it: and I call that a *walking bait*, which you take with you, and have ever in motion. Concerning which two, I shall give you this direction; That your *ledger bait* is best to be a living bait, though a dead one may catch, whether it be a fish or a frog; and that you may make them live the longer, you may or indeed you must take this course.

First, for your live bait of fish, a *Roach* or *Dace* is (I think) best and most tempting, and a *Pearch* is the longest lived on a hook, and having cut off his fin on his back, which may be done without hurting him, you must take your knife (which cannot be too sharp) and betwixt the head and the fin on the back, cut or make an incision, or such a scar, as you may put the arming wire of your hook into it, with as little bruising or hurting the fish as art and diligence will enable you to do; and so carrying your arming wire along his back, unto, or near the tail of your Fish, betwixt the skin and the body

dy of it, draw out that wire or arming of your hook at another scar near to his tail: then ty him about it with thred, but no harder than of necessity to prevent hurting the fish; and the better to avoid hurting the fish, some have a kind of probe to open the way, for the more easie entrance and passage of your wire or arming: but as for these, time, and a little experience will teach you better than I can by words; therefore I will for the present say no more of this, but come next to give you some directions, how to bait your hook with a frog.

Ven. But, good Master, did you not say even now, that some *Frogs* were venemous, and is it not dangerous to touch them?

Pisc. Yes, but I will give you some Rules or Cautions concerning them: And first, you are to note, that there are two kinds of *Frogs*; that is to say (if I may so express my self) a *flesh*, and a *fish-frog*: by *flesh-frogs*, I mean *frogs* that breed and live on the land; and of these there be several sorts also and of several colours, some being peckled, some greenish, some blackish, or brown: the green *Frog*, which is a small one, is by *Topfel* taken to be venemous; and so is the *padock* or *Frog-paddock*, which usually keeps or breeds on the land, and is very large and bony, and big, especially the She frog of that kind; yet these will sometimes come into the water, but it is not often; and the land frogs are
some

Chap. 8. The Compleat Angler. 259

some of them observed by him, to breed by laying eggs: and others to breed of the slime and dust of the earth, and that in winter they turn to slime again, and that the next Summer that very slime returns to be a living creature; this is the opinion of *Pliny*: and **Cardanus* undertakes to give a reason for the raining of Frogs: but if it were in my power, it should rain none but water-Frogs, for those, I think are not venomous, especially the right water-Frog, which about *February* or *March* breeds in ditches by slime, and blackish eggs in that slime: about which time of breeding the He and She Frogs are observed to use divers *Simber-salts* and to croak and make a noise, which the land-frog, or Padock frog never does. Now of these water-frogs, if you intend to fish with a frog for a Pike, you are to chuse the yellowest that you can get, for that the Pike ever likes best. And thus use your frog, that he may continue long alive.

Put your hook into his mouth, which you may easily do from the middle of *April* till *August*, and then the frogs mouth grows up, and he continues so for at least six moneths without eating, but is sustained, none but he whose name is Wonderful, knows how; I say, put your hook, I mean the arming wire through his mouth,

M 4

and

and out at his gills, and then with a fine needle and silk sow the upper part of his leg with only one stitch to the arming wire of your hook, or tie the frogs leg above the upper joynt to the armed wire, and in so doing, use him as though you loved him, that is, harm him as little as you may possibly, that he may live the longer,

And now, having given you this direction for the baiting your ledger hook with a live Fish or frog, my next must be to tell you, how your hook thus baited must or may be used: and it is thus. Having fastened your hook to a line, which if it be not fourteen yards long, should not be less than twelve; you are to fasten that line to any bough near to a hole where a Pike is, or is likely to lie, or to have a haunt, and then wind your line on any forked stick, all your line except half a yard of it or rather more, and split that forked stick with such a nick or notch at one end of it, as may keep the line from any more of it ravelling from about the stick, than so much of it as you intend; and chuse your forked stick to be of that bigness as may keep the Fish or frog from pulling the forked stick under the water till the Pike bites, and then the Pike having pulled the line forth of the cleft or nick of that stick in which it was gently fastened, he will have line enough to go to his hold and pouch the bait; and if you would have this

Chap. 8. The Compleat Angler. 161

this ledger bait to keep at a fixt place, undisturbed by wind or other accidents which may drive it to the shore side, (for you are to note, that it is likeliest to catch a Pike in the midst of the water) then hang a small Plummets of lead, a stone, or piece of tile, or a turf in a string, and cast it into the water, with the forked stick, to hang upon the ground to be a kind of Anchor to keep the forked stick from moving out of your intended place till the Pike come. This I take to be a very good way, to use so many ledger baits as you intend to make trial of.

Or if you bait your hooks thus with live Fish or Frogs, and in a windy day, fasten them thus to a bough or bundle of straw, and by the help of that wind can get them to move cross a Pond or mere, you are like to stand still on the shore and see sport presently if there be any store of *Pikes*; or these live baits may make sport, being tied about the body or wings of a *Goose* or *Duck*, and she chased over a Pond: and the like may be done with turning three or four live baits thus fastened to bladders, or boughs, or bottles of hay or flags, to swim down a River, whilst you walk quietly alone on the shore, and are still in expectation of sport. The rest must be taught you by practice, for time will not allow me to say more of this kind of fishing with live baits.

And for your dead bait for a *Pike*, for that
you

you may be taught by one daies going a fishing with me, or any other body that fishes for him, for the baiting your hook with a dead *Gudgeon* or a *Roach*, and moving it up and down the water, is too easie a thing to take up any time to direct you to do it; and yet, because I cut you short in that, I will commute for it, by telling you that that was told me for a secret: it is this.

Dissolve Gum of Ivy in Oyl of Spike, and there-with anoynt your dead bait for a Pike, and then cast it into a likely place, and when it has lain a short time at the bottom, draw it towards the top of the water and so up the stream, and it is more than likely that you have a Pike follow with more than common eagerness.

And some affirm, that any bait anointed with the marrow of the Thigh-bone of an *Hern* is a great temptation to any Fish.

These have not been tried by me, but told me by a friend of note, that pretended to do me a courtesie, but if this direction to catch a *Pike* thus, do you no good, yet I am certain this direction how to roast him when he is caught, is choicely good, for I have tried it; and it is somewhat the better for not being common, but with my direction you must take this Caution, that your *Pike* must not be a small one, that is, it must be more than half a Yard, and should be bigger.

First open your Pike at the gills, and if need
be,

Chap. 8. The Compleat Angler. 163

be, cut also a little slit towards the belly; out of these take his guts, and keep his liver, which you are to shred very small with Tim^r, Sweet-margoram, and a little Winter-savoury; to these put some pickled Oysters, and some Anchovies, two or three, both these last whole (for the Anchovies will melt, and the Oysters should not) to these you must adde also a pound of sweet butter, which you are to mix with the herbs that are shred, and let them all be well salted (if the Pike be more than a yard long, then you may put into these herbs more than a pound, or if he be less, then less Butter will suffice:) these being thus mixt with a blade or two of Mace, must be put into the Pikes belly, and then his belly so sowed up, as to keep all the Butter in his belly if it be possible, if not, then as much of it as you possibly can, but take not off the scales; then you are to thrust the spit through his mouth out at his tail, and then take four, or five, or six split sticks, or very thin lathes, and a convenient quantity of Tape or Filleting, these lathes are to be tyed round about the Pikes body from his head to his tail, and the Tape tyed somewhat thick to prevent his breaking or falling off from the spit; let him be roasted very leasurely, and often basted with Claret wine, and Anchovyes, and Butter mixt together, and also with what moisture falls from him into the pan: when you have roasted him sufficiently you are to hold under him (when you unwind or cut the Tape that ties him)

such

such a dish as you purpose to eat him out of; and let him fall into it with the sawce that is roasted in his belly, and by this means the Pike will be kept unbroken and compleat: then, to the sawce which was within, and also that sawce in the pan, you are to add a fit quantity of the best Butter, and to squeeze the juyce of three or four Oranges: lastly, you may either put into the Pike with the Oysters, two cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out, when the Pike is cut off the spit, or to give the sawce a hogo, let the dish (into which you let the Pike fall) be rubbed with it: the using or not using of this Garlick is left to your discretion.

M. B.

This dish of meat is too good for any but Anglers or very honest men; and I trust, you will prove both, and therefore I have trusted you with this secret.

Let me next tell you, that *Gesner* tells us there are no Pikes in *Spain*, and that the largest are in the Lake *Thrasimene* in *Italy*; and the next, if not equall to them, are the Pikes of *England*, and that in *England*, *Lincolnshire* boasteth to have the biggest. Just so doth *Suffex* boast of four sorts of fish; namely an *Arundel Mullet*, a *Chichester Lobster*, a *Shelfey Cockle*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

But I will take up no more of your time with this relation, but proceed to give you some observation

I. Chap.9. The Compleat Angler. 165

nd
ed
be
ce
n,
ad
y,
s,
n
a
)
s

servations of the *Carp*, and how to angle for him,
and to dress him, but not till he is caught.

C H A P. IX.

*Observations of the Carp, with Directions
how to fish for him.*

P*Is.* The *Carp* is the Queen of Rivers: a state-
ly, a good, and a very subtil fish, that was
not at first bred. nor hath been long in *England*,
but is now naturalized. It is said, they were
brought hither by one Mr. *Mascul* a Gentleman,
that then lived at *Plumsted* in *Sussex*, a County
that abounds more with this fish than any in
this Nation.

You may remember that I told you, *Gesner*
says, there are no *Pikes* in *Spain*; and doubtless,
there was a time, about a hundred or a few more
years ago, when there were no *Carps* in *England*,
as may seem to be affirmed by *S. Richard Baker*,
in whose Chronicle you may find these Verses.

*Hops and Turkies, Carps and Beer
Came into England all in a year.*

And doubtless as of Sea-fish the *Herring* dies
soonest

soonest out of the water, and of fresh-water-fish the *Trout*, so (except the *Eel*) the *Carp* endures most hardness, and lives longest out of his own proper Element. And therefore the report of the Carps being brought out of a forraigne Country into this Nation is the more probable.

Carps and Loaches are observed to Breed several months in one year, which Pikes and most other fish do not. And this is partly proved by tame and wild *Rabbets*, as also by some *Ducks*, which will lay eggs nine of the twelve months, and yet there be other *Ducks* that lay not longer than about one month. And it is the rather to be believed, because you shall scarce or never take a *Male-Carp* without a *Melt*, or a *Female* without a *Roe* or *spawn*, and for the most part very much; and especially all the Summer season; and it is observed, that they breed more naturally in ponds than in running waters, (if they breed there at all;) and that those that live in Rivers are taken by men of the best palats to be much the better meat.

And it is observed, that in some ponds *Carps* will not breed, especially in cold ponds; but where they will breed, they breed innumera- bly; *Aristotle* and *Pliny* say, six times in a year, if there be no *Pikes* nor *Pearch* to devour their *Spawn*, when it is cast upon grass, or flags or weeds, where it lies ten or twelve dayes before it be enlivened.

The

Chap.9. The Compleat Angler. 167

The *Carp*, if he have water-room and good seed, will grow to a very great bigness and length: I have heard, to be much above a yard long. 'Tis said, (by *Jovius*, who hath writ of Fishes) that in the Lake *Lurian* in *Italy*, *Carps* have thriven to be more than fifty pound weight, which is the more probable, for as the *Bear* is conceiv'd and born suddenly; and being born is but short-liv'd: So on the contrary, the *Elephant* is said to be two years in his dam's belly (some think he is ten years in it) and being born grows in bigness twenty years; and 'tis observ'd too that he lives to the Age of a hundred years. And 'tis also observ'd that the *Crocodile* is very long-liv'd, and more than that, that all that long life he thrives in bigness, and so I think some *Carps* do, especially in some places; though I never saw one above 23. inches, which was a great and a goodly Fish: But have been assured there are of a far greater size, and in *England* too.

Now, as the increase of *Carps* is wonderful for their number; so there is not a reason found out, I think by any, why they should breed in some Ponds, and not in others of the same nature, for soil and all other circumstances: and as their breeding, so are their decays also very mysterious: I have both read it, and been told by a Gentleman of tryed honesty, that he has known sixty or more large *Carps* put into several

ral ponds near to a house, where by reason of the stakes in the ponds, and the Owners constant being near to them, it was impossible they should be stole away from him: and that when he has after three or four years emptyed the pond, and expected an increase from them by breeding young ones (for that they might do so, he had, as the rule is, put in three Melters for one Spawner) he has, I say, after three or four years, found neither a young nor old *Carp* remaining. And the like I have known of one that has almost watched the pond, and at a like distance of time, at the fishing of a pond, found of seventy or eighty large *Carps* not above five or six: and that he had forbore longer to fish the said pond, but that he saw in a hot day in Summer, a large *Carp* swim near the top of the water with a Frog upon his head, and that he upon that occasion caused his pond to be let dry: and I say, of seventy or eighty *Carps*, only found five or six in the said pond, and those very sick and lean, and with every one a Frog sticking so fast on the head of the said *Carps*, that the Frog would not be got off without extreme force or killing: and the Gentleman that did affirm this to me, told me he saw it, and did declare his belief to be, (and I also believe the same) that he thought the other *Carps* that were so strangely lost, were so killed by frogs, and then devoured.

And

Chap. 9. The Compleat Angler. 169

And a person of honour now living in *Worcester shire** assur'd me he had seen a * *Mr. Fr. Ry.* necklace or collar of Tadpoles hang like a chaine or necklace of beads about a *Pikes* neck, and to kill him; whether it were for meat or malice, must be to me a question.

But I am fallen into this Discourse by accident, of which I might say more, but it has proved longer than I intended, and possibly may not to you be considerable; I shall therefore give you three or four more short observations of the *Carp*, and then fall upon some directions how you shall fish for him.

The age of *Carps* is by *Sir Francis Bacon* (in his History of Life and Death) observed to be but ten years; yet others think they live longer. *Gesner* saies a *Carp* has been known to live in the *Palatinate* above a hundred years: But most conclude, that (contrary to the *Pike* or *Luce*) all *Carps* are the better for age and bigness; the tongues of *Carps* are noted to be choice and costly meat, especially to them that buy them: but *Gesner* saies, *Carps* have no tongue like other Fish, but a piece of flesh-like-Fish in their mouth like to a tongue, and should be called a palate: But it is certain it is choicely good, and that the *Carp* is to be reckoned amongst those leather-mouthed fish, which I told you have their teeth in their throat, and for that reason he is very seldom lost by break-

N ing

ing his hold; if your hook be once stuck into his chaps.

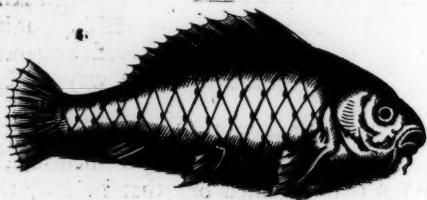
I told you that Sir *Francis Bacon* thinks that the *Carp* lives but ten years, but *Janus Dubravius* has writ a Book of Fish and Fish-ponds, in which he saies, That *Carps* begin to Spawn at the age of three years, and continue to do so till thirty: he saies also, That in the time of their breeding, which is in Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and so apted them also for generation; that then three or four Male-*Carps* will follow a Female, and that then she putting on a seeming coyneſs, they force her through weeds and flags, where she lets fall her Eggs or Spawn, which sticks fast to the weeds, and then they let fall their Melt upon it, and so it becomes in a short time to be a living Fish; and as I told you, it is thought the *Carp* does this several months in the year, and most believe that most fish breed after this manner, except the Eel: and it has been observed, that when the Spawner has weakned her self by doing that natural office, that two or three Melters have helped her from off the weeds, by bearing her up on both sides, and guarding her into the deep. And you may note, that though this may seem a curiosity not worth observing, yet others have judged it worth their time and costs, to make *Glass-hives*, and order them in such a manner as to see

Chap. 9. The Compleat Angler. 171

see how *Bees* have bred and made their *Honey-combs*, and how they have obeyed their King, and governed their Common-wealth. But it is thought that all *Carps* are not bred by generation, but that some breed other ways, as some *Pikes* do.

The Physicians make the *galls* and *stones* in the heads of *Carps* to be very medicinable; but 'tis not to be doubted but that in *Italy* they make great profit of the Spawn of *Carps*, by selling it to the *Jews*, who make it into red *Caviare*, the *Jews* not being by their Law admitted to eat of *Caviare* made of the *Sturgeon*, that being a Fish that wants scales, and (as may appear in *Levit. 11.*) by them reputed to be unclean.

Much more might be said out of him, and out of *Aristotle*, which *Dubravins* often quotes in his Discourse of Fishes; but it might rather perplex than satisfy you, and therefore I shall rather chuse to direct you how to catch, than spend more time in discoursing either of the nature or the breeding of this *CARP*,



or of any more circumstances concerning him ; but yet I shall remember you of what I told you before , that he is a very subtil Fish, and hard to be caught.

And my first direction is, that if you will Fish for a *Carp* , you must put on a very large measure of *patience* ; especially to fish for a *River Carp*: I have known a very good Fisher angle diligently four or six hours in a day , for three or four daies together for a *River Carp*, and not have a bite : and you are to note, that in some ponds it is as hard to catch a *Carp* as in a River ; that is to say, where they have store of feed, and the water is of a clayish colour : But you are to remember , that I have told you there is no rule without an exception, and therefore being possesst with that hope and patience which I wish to all Fishers , especially to the *Carp-Angler*, I shall tell you with what
bait

Chap. 9. The Compleat Angler. 173


bait to fish for him. But first you are to know, that it must be either early or late ; and let me tell you, that in hot weather (for he will seldom bite in cold) you cannot be too early or too late at it. And some have been so curious as to say, the 10. of *April* is a fatal day for Carps.

The Carp bites either at worms or at paste, and of worms I think the blewish Marsh or Meadow worm is best ; but possibly another worm not too big may do as well, and so may a green Gentle: And as for pastes, there are almost as many sorts as there are Medicines for the Toothach, but doubtless sweet pastes are best; I mean, pastes made with honey or with sugar: which, that you may the better beguile this crafty Fish, should be thrown into the Pond or place in which you fish for him some hours or longer before you undertake your tryal of skill with the Angle-rod: and doubtless if it be thrown into the water a day or two before, at several times and in small pellets, you are the likelier when you fish for the Carp to obtain your desired sport ; or in a large Pond to draw them to any certain place, that they may the better and with more hope be fished for, you are to throw into it in some certain place, either Grains or Blood mixt with Cow dung, or with Bran ; or any Garbage, as Chickens guts or the like, and then some of your small sweet pellets with which you purpose to

angle: and these small pellets being a few of them also thrown in as you are Angling will be the better.

And your paste must be thus made: Take the flesh of a Rabbet or Cat cut small, and Bean-flowre, and if that may not be easily got, get other flowre, and then mix these together, and put to them either Sugar, or Honey, which I think better, and then beat these together in a Mortar, or sometimes work them in your hands (your hands being very clean) and then make it into a Ball, or two, or three, as you like best for your use; but you must work or pound it so long in the Mortar, as to make it so tough as to hang upon your hook without washing from it, yet not too hard; or that you may the better keep it on your hook, you may knead with your paste a little (and not much) white or yellowish wool.

And if you would have this paste keep all the year for any other Fish, then mix with it *Virgin wax* and *clarified honey*, and work them together with your hands before the Fire, then make these into balls, and they will keep all the year.

And if you fish for a Carp with Gentles, then put upon your hook a small piece of Scarlet about this bigness , it being foked in, or anointed with *Oyl of Peter*, called by some *Oyl of the Rock*, and if your Gentles be put two
or

Chap. 9. The Compleat Angler. 175

or three dayes before into a box or horn anointed with honey, and so put upon your hook as to preserve them to be living, you are as like to kill this crafty fish this way as any other. But still as you are fishing chaw a little white or brown bread in your mouth, and cast it into the pond about the place where your Flote swims. Other baits there be, but these with diligence, and patient watchfulness, will do it better than any that I have ever practised, or heard of: And yet I shall tell you, that the crumbs of white bread and honey made into a paste is a good bait for a *Carp*, and you know it is more easily made. And having said thus much of the *Carp*, my next discourse shall be of the *Bream*, which shall not prove so tedious, and therefore I desire the continuance of your attention.

But first I will tell you how to make this *Carp* that is so curious to be caught, so curious a dith of meat, as shall make him worth all your labour and patience; and though it is not without some trouble and charges, yet it will recompence both.

Take a Carp (alive if possible) scour him, and rub him clean with water and salt, but scale him not, then open him, and put him with his bloud and his liver (which you must save when you open him) into a small pot or kettle; then take sweet Marjoram, Time and Parsley, of each half

a handful, a sprig of Rosemary, and another of Savoury, bind them into two or three small bundles, and put them to your Carp, with four or five whole Onions, twenty pickled Oysters, and three Anchovies. Then pour upon your Carp as much Claret wine as will only cover him; and season your Claret well with salt, Cloves and Mace; and the rinds of Oranges and Lemons, that done, cover your pot and set it on a quick-fire, till it be sufficiently boiled; then take out the Carp and lay it with the broth into the dish, and pour upon it a quarter of a pound of the best fresh butter melted and beaten with half a dozen Spoonfuls of the broth, the yolks of two or three eggs, and some of the herbs shred; garnish your dish with Lemons and so serve it up, and much good do you.

Dr. T.

CHAP.

C H A P. X.

*Observations of the Bream, and directions
to catch him.*

P*isc.* The *Bream* being at a full growth is a large and stately Fish: he will breed both in Rivers and Ponds: but loves best to live in ponds, and where, if he likes the water and Air, he will grow not only to be very large, but as far as a Hog: he is by *Gesner* taken to be more pleasant or sweet than wholesome; this Fish is long in growing, but breeds exceedingly in a water that pleases him; yea, in many Ponds so fast, as to over-store them, and starve the other Fish.

He is very broad with a forked tail, and his scales set in excellent order, he hath large eyes and a narrow sucking mouth; he hath two sets of teeth, and a lozenge like bone, a bone to help his grinding. The *Melter* is observed to have two large Melts, and the Female two large bags of eggs or spawn.

Gesner reports, that in *Poland* a certain, and a great number of large Breams were put into a Pond, which in the next following winter were frozen up into one intire ice, and not one drop

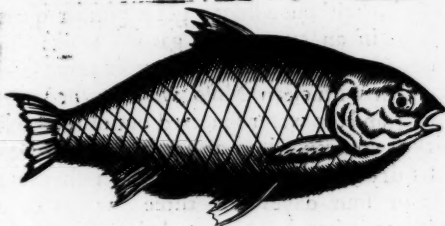
drop of water remaining, nor one of these fish to be found, though they were diligently searcht for; and yet the next Spring when the ice was thawed, and the weather warm, and fresh water got into the pond, he affirms they all appeared again. This *Gesner* affirms, and I quote my Author, because it seems almost as incredible as the *Resurrection* to an *Atheist*. But it may win something in point of believing it, to him that considers the breeding or renovation of the Silk-worm and of many insects. And that is considerable which Sir *Francis Bacon* observes in his History of Life and Death (*fol.20.*) that there be some herbs that die and spring every year, and some endure longer.

But though some do not, yet the *French* esteem this Fish highly, and to that end have this Proverb, *He that hath Breams in his pond is able to bid his friend welcome*. And it is noted, that the best part of a Bream is his belly and head.

Some say, that *Breams* and *Roaches* will mix their eggs, and melt together, and so there is in many places a Bastard breed of *Breams*, that never come to be either large or good, but very numerous.

The Baits good to catch this *BREAM*

are



are many. 1. Pafte made of brown bread and honny, gentles, or the brood of wasps that be young, (and then not unlike Gentles) and should be hardned in an oven, or dried on a tile before the fire to make them tough; or there is at the root of docks, or flags, or rushes in watry places, a worm not unlike a Maggot, at which Tench will bite freely. Or he will bite at a Grashopper with his legs nipt off in *June* and *July*, or at several flies under water, which may be found on flags that grow near to the water side. I doubt not but that there be many other baits that are good, but I will turn them all into this most excellent one, either for a *Carp* or *Bream*, in any River or Mere: it was given to me by a most honest and excellent Angler, and hoping you will prove both, I will impart it to you.

1. Let

180 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

1. Let your bait be as big a *red worm* as you can find, without a knot, get a pint or quart of them in an evening in garden walks, or Chalky Commons after a *showre* of rain; and put them with clean Moss well washed and picked, and the water squeezed out of the Moss as dry as you can, into an earthen pot or pipkin set dry, and change the Moss fresh every three or four dayes for three weeks or a month together, then your bait will be at the best, for it will be clear and lively.

2. Having thus prepared your baits, get your tackling ready and fitted for this sport. Take three long Angling Rods, and as many and more silk, or silk and hair lines, and as many large Swan or Goose-quil floats. Then take a piece of Lead made after this manner, and fasten them to the low-ends of your Lines. Then fasten your link-hook also to the lead, and let there be about a foot or ten inches between the lead and the hook; but be sure the lead be heavy enough to sink the float or quil a little under the water, and not the quil to bear up the Lead, for the lead must lie on the ground. Note, that your link next the hook may be smaller than the rest of your line, if you dare adventure for fear of taking the *Pike* or *Pearch*, who will assuredly visit your hooks, till they be taken out (as I will shew you afterwards)

before



Chap. 10. The Compleat Angler. 181

before either *Carp* or *Bream* will come near to bite. Note also, that when the worm is well baited, it will crawl up and down, as far as the Lead will give leave, which much enticeth the Fish to bite without suspicion.

3. Having thus prepared your baits, and fitted your tackling, repair to the River, where you have seen them to swim in skuls or shoals in the Summer time in a hot afternoon, about three or four of the clock, and watch their going forth of their deep holes and returning (which you may well discern) for they return about four of the clock most of them seeking food at the bottom, yet one or two will lie on the top of the water, rolling and tumbling themselves whilst the rest are under him at the bottom, and so you shall perceive him to keep Sentinel; then mark where he plays most, and stays longest, (which commonly is in the broadest and deepest place of the River) and there, or near thereabouts, at a clear bottom, and a convenient landing place, take one of your Angles ready fitted as aforesaid, and sound the bottom, which should be about eight or ten foot deep (two yards from the bank is the best.) Then consider with your self, whether that water will rise or fall by the next morning by reason of any Water-mills near, and according to your discretion take the depth of the place, where you mean after to cast your ground-bait, and

to

182 *The Compleat Angler. Part. I.*

to fish, to half an inch ; that the Lead lying on or near the ground-bait, the top of the float may only appear upright half an inch above the water.

Thus you having found and fitted for the place and depth thereof, then go home and prepare your ground-bait, which is next to the fruit of your labours, to be regarded.

The Ground-Bait.

You shall take a peck, or a peck and a half (according to the greatness of the stream, and deepness of the water, where you mean to Angle) of sweet gross-ground barley-malt, and boil it in a kettle (one or two warms is enough) then strain it through a Bag into a tub (the liquor whereof hath often done my Horse much good) and when the bag and malt is near cold, take it down to the water-side about eight or nine of the clock in the evening, and not before; cast in two parts of your ground-bait, squeezed hard between both your hands, it will sink presently to the bottom, and be sure it may rest in the very place where you mean to Angle; if the stream run hard or move a little, cast your malt in handfuls a little the higher, upwards the stream. You may between your hands close the Malt so fast in handfuls, that the water will hardly part it with the fall. Your

Chap. 10. The Compleat Angler. 183

Your ground thus baited, and tackling fitted, leave your bag with the rest of your tackling and ground-bait near the sporting-place all night, and in the morning about three or four of the clock visit the water-side (but not too near) for they have a cunning Watch-man, and are watchful themselves too.

Then gently take one of your three rods, and bait your hook, casting it over your ground-bait, and gently and secretly draw it to you till the Lead rests about the middle of the ground-bait.

Then take a second Rod and cast in about a yard above, and your third a yard below the first Rod, and stay the Rods in the ground, but go your self so far from the water-side, that you perceive nothing but the top of the floats, which you must watch most diligently; then when you have a bite, you shall perceive the top of your float to sink suddenly into the water; yet nevertheless be not too hasty to run to your Rods, until you see that the Line goes clear away, then creep to the water-side, and give as much Line as possibly you can: if it be a good *Carp* or *Bream*, they will go to the farther side of the River, then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a bent a little while; but if you both pull together you are sure to lose your Game, for either your line or hook, or hold will break; and after you have overcome them, they will make
noble

noble sport, and are very shie to be landed. The *Carp* is far stronger and more mettlesom than the *Bream*.

Much more is to be observed in this kind of Fish and Fishing, but it is far fitter for experience and discourse than paper. Only thus much is necessary for you to know, and, to be mindful and careful of; That if the *Pike* or *Pearch* do breed in that River, they will be sure to bite first, and must first be taken. And for the most part they are very large, and will repair to your ground-bait, not that they will eat of it; but will feed and sport themselves amongst the young Fry, that gather about and hover over the Bait.

The way to discern the *Pike* and to take him, if you mistrust your *Bream*-hook (for I have taken a *Pike* a yard long several times at my *Bream*-hooks, and sometimes he hath had the luck to share my line.) May be thus.

Take a small *Bleak*, or *Roach*, or *Gudgion*, and bait it, and set it alive among your Rods two foot deep from the Cork, with a little red worm on the point of the hook, then take a few crums of White-bread, or some of the ground-bait, and sprinkle it gently amongst your Rods. If Mr. *Pike* be there; then the little Fish will skip out of the water at his appearance but the live-set Bait is sure to be taken.

Thus

Chap. 10. The Compleat Angler. 185

Thus continue your sport from four in the morning till eight, and if it be a gloomy, windy day, they will bite all day long. But this is too long to stand to your rods at one place, and it will spoil your evening sport that day, which is this.

About four of the clock in the Afternoon repair to your baited place, and as soon as you come to the water side, cast in one half of the rest of your ground-bait, and stand off: then whilst the Fish are gathering together (for there they will most certainly come for their supper) you may take a pipe of Tobacco; and then in with your three rods as in the morning: You will find excellent sport that evening till eight of the clock; then cast in the residue of your ground-bait, and next morning by four of the clock visit them again for four hours, which is the best sport of all; and after that let them rest till you and your friends have a mind to more sport.

From *St. James Tide* until *Bartholomew Tide* is the best, when they have had all the Summers food, they are the fattest.

Observe lastly, That after three or four days fishing together, your Game will be very shie and wary; and you shall hardly get above a bite or two at a baiting; then your only way is to desist from your sport about two or three days; and in the mean time (on the place you
late

late baited, and again intend to bait) you shall take a turf of green, but short grass, as big or bigger than a round Trencher ; to the top of this turf, on the green side, you shall with a Needle and green thred fasten one by one as many little red worms as will near cover all the turf : Then take a round board or Trencher, make a hole in the middle thereof, and through the turf placed on the board or Trencher, with a string or cord as long as is fitting, tied to a pole, let it down to the bottom of the water for the Fish to feed upon without disturbance about two or three days ; and after that you have drawn it away, you may fall to, and enjoy your former recreation. B. A.

C H A P. XI.

*Observations of the Tench, and advice how
to Angle for him.*

PISC. The *Tench*, the Physician of Fishes, is observed to love Ponds better than Rivers, and to love pits better than either ; yet *Cambden* observes there is a River in *Dorsetshire* that abounds with *Tenches*, but doubtless they

they retire to the most deep and quiet places in it.

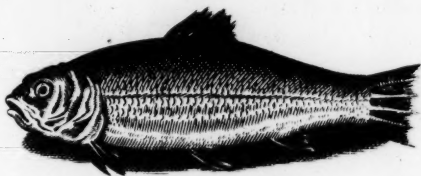
This fish hath very large Fins, very small and smooth Scales, a red circle about his Eyes, which are big and of a gold colour, and from either Angle of his mouth there hangs down a little Barb; in every *Tenches* head there are two little stones, which forraign Physicians make great use of, but he is not commended for wholsom meat, though there be very much use made of them, for outward applications. *Rondelitus* says. That at his being at Rome, he saw a great cure done by applying a Tench to the feet of a very sick man. This he says was done after an unusual manner by certain Jews. And it is observed that many of those people have many secrets, yet unknown to Christians; secrets that have never yet been written, but have been since the days of their *Solomon* (who knew the nature of all things, even from the Cedar to the Shrub) delivered by tradition from the Father to the Son, and so from generation to generation without writing, or (unless it were casually) without the least communicating them to any other Nation or Tribe: for to do that they account a prophanation. And yet it is thought that they, or some Spirit worse than they, first told us, that Lice swallowed alive were a certain cure for the Yellow-Jaundice. This, and many other medicines were discover'd by them or

by revelation, for, doubtless we attain'd them not by study.

* Well, this fish, besides his eating, is very useful both dead and alive for the good of mankind. But, I will meddle no more with that, my honest humble Art teaches no such boldness; there are too many foolish medlers in Physick and Divinity, that think themselves fit to meddle with hidden secrets, and so bring destruction to their followers. But I'll not meddle with them any farther than to wish them wiser; and shall tell you next (for, I hope, I may be so bold) that the *Tench* is the Physician of fishes, for the *Pike* especially, and that the *Pike*, being either sick or hurt, is cured by the touch of the *Tench*. And it is observed, that the Tyrant *Pike* will not be a Wolf to his Physician, but forbears to devour him though he be never so hungry.

This fish that carries a natural Balsome in him to cure both himself and others, loves yet to feed in very foul water, and amongst weeds. And yet I am sure he eats pleasantly, and doubtless, you will think so too, if you tast him. And I shall therefore proceed to give you some few, and but a few directions how to catch this *Tench*.

of



of which I have given you these observations.

He will bite at a Paste made of brown bread and honey, or at a marsh worm, or a Lob-worm; he inclines very much to any paste with which Tar is mixt, and he will bite also at a smaller worm, with his head nipp'd off, and a Cod-worm put on the hook before that worm; and I doubt not but that he will also in the three hot months (for in the nine colder he stirs not much) bite at a Flag-worm, or at a green Gentle, but can positively say no more of the *Tench*, he being a Fish that I have not often Angled for; but I wish my honest Scholar may, and be ever fortunate when he fishes.

O 3 CHAP.

C H A P. XII.

*Observations of the Pearch, and directions
how to fish for him.*

PISC. The *Pearch* is a very good, and a very bold biting fish; He is one of the Fishes of prey, that like the *Pike* and *Trout*, carries his teeth in his mouth: which is very large, and he dare venture to kill and devour several other kinds of fish: he has a hook't or hog back, which is armed with sharp and stiff bristles, and all his skin armed or covered over with thick, dry, hard scales, and hath (which few other Fish have) two Fins on his back: He is so bold, that he will invade one of his own kind, which the *Pike* will not do so willingly, and, you may therefore easily believe him to be a bold biter.

The *Pearch* is of great esteem in *Italy* saith *Aldrovandus*, and especially the least are there esteemed a dainty dish. And *Gesner* prefers the *Pearch* and *Pike* above the *Trout*, or any fresh-water-Fish: he says the *Germans* have this Proverb, *More wholesome than a Pearch of Rhine*: and he says the *River-Pearch* is so wholesome, that Physicians allow him to be eaten by wound-

Chap. 12. **The Compleat Angler.** 191

wounded men or by men in Feavers, or by Women in Child-bed,

He spawns but once a year, and is by Physicians held very nutritive: yet by many to be hard of digestion: They abound more in the River *Poe* and in *England* (says *Rondelinius*) than other parts, and have in their brain a stone, which is in forraign parts sold by Apothecaries, being there noted to be very medicinable against the stone in the reins: These be a part of the commendations which some Philosophical brains have bestowed upon the fresh-water *Pearch*: yet they commend the *Sea-Pearch*, which is known by having but one fin on his back (of which they say, we *English* see but a few) to be a much better fish.

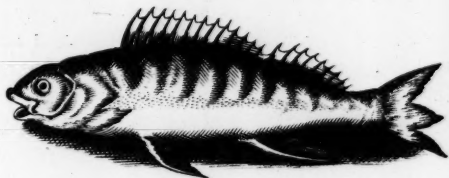
The *Pearch* grows slowly, yet will grow, as I have been credibly informed, to be almost two foot long; for an honest informer told me, such a one was not long since taken by Sir *Abraham Williams*, a Gentleman of worth, and a Brother of the Angle (that yet lives, and I wish he may:) this was a deep bodied Fish: and doubtless durst have devoured a *Pike* of half his own length: for I have told you, he is a bold Fish, such a one as but for extreme hunger, the *Pike* will not devour: for to affright the *Pike* and save himself, the *Pearch* will set up his fins, much like as a *Turkie-Cock* will sometimes set up his tail.

But, my Scholar, the *Pearch* is not only valiant to defend himself, but he is (as I said) a bold biting fish, yet he will not bite at all seasons of the year; he is very abstemious in Winter, yet will bite then in the midst of the day if it be warm: and note that all Fish bite best about the midst of a warm day in Winter, and he hath been observed by some, not usually to bite till the *Mulberry-tree* buds; that is to say, till extreme frosts be past the Spring; for when the *Mulberry-tree* blossoms, many Gardners observe their forward fruit to be past the danger of Frosts, and some have made the like observation of the *Pearches* biting.

But bite the *Pearch* will, and that very boldly: and as one has wittily observed, if there be twenty or forty in a hole, they may be at one standing all catch'd one after another; they being, as he says, like the wicked of the world, not afraid though their fellows and companions perish in their sight. And you may observe, that they are not like the solitary *Pike*, but love to accompany one another, and march together in troops.

And the baits for this bold Fish

are



are not many ; I mean, he will bite as well at some, or at any of these three, as at any, or all others whatsoever : a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a little *Frog* (of which you may find many in hay-time) and of *worms*, the Dunghil-worm called a *Brandling* I take to be best, being well scowred in Moss or Fennel ; or he will bite at a worm that lies under a cow-turd with a blewish head. And if you rove for a *Pearch* with a *Minnow*, then it is best to be alive, you sticking your hook through his back-fin ; or a *Minnow* with the hook in his upper lip, and letting him swim up and down about mid-water, or a little lower, and you still keeping him to about that depth, by a Cork, which ought not to be a very little one : and the like way you are to Fish for the *Pearch*, with a small frog, your hook being fastned through the skin of his leg, towards the upper part of it : And lastly, I will give you
but

but this advice, that you give the *Pearch* time enough when he bites, for there was scarce ever any Angler that has given him too much. And now I think best to rest my self, for I have almost spent my spirits with talking so long.

Venat. Nay, good Master, one fish more, for you see it rains still, and you know our Angles are like money put to usury; they may thrive though we sit still and do nothing but talk and enjoy one another. Come, come the other fish, good Master.

Pisc. But Scholar, have you nothing to mix with this discourse, which now grows both tedious and tiresome? shall I have nothing from you that seem to have both a good memory, and a chearful Spirit?

* *Ven.* Yes, Master, I will speak you a Copy of Verses that were made by Doctor *Donne*, and made to shew the world that he could make soft and smooth Verses when he thought smoothness worth his labour; and I love them the better, because they allude to Rivers, and fish and fishing. They be these:

*Come live with me, and be my Love,
And we will some new pleasures prove,
Of golden sands, and Chrystal brooks,
With silken lines, and silver books.*

There

Chap. 12. *The Compleat Angler.* 195

*There will the River whispering run,
Warm'd by thy eyes more than the Sun;
And there the enamel'd fish will stay,
Begging themselves they may betray.*

*When thou wilt swim in that live bath,
Each fish, which every channel bath,
Most amorously to thee will swim,
Gladder to catch thee, than thou him.*

*If thou, to be so seen, bee'st loath
By Sun or Moon, thou darknest both,
And if mine eyes have leave to see,
I need not their light, having thee.*

*Let others freeze with Angling reeds,
And cut their legs with shels and weeds,
Or treacherously poor fish beset,
With strangling snares, or windy net.*

*Let coarse bold hands, from slimy nest,
The bedded fish in banks outwrest,
Let curious Traytors sleeve silk flies,
To'witch poor wandring fishes eyes.*

*For thee, thou need'st no such deceit,
For thou thy self art thine own bait:
That fish that is not catcht thereby,
Is wiser far, alas, than I.*

Pisc.

Pisc. Well remembred, honest Scholar, I thank you for these choice Verses, which I have heard formerly, but had quite forgot, till they were recovered by your happy memory. Well, being I have now rested my self a little, I will make you some requital, by telling you some observations of the *Eel*, for it rains still, and because (as you say) our *Angles* are as many put to Use that thrives when we play, therefore we'l sit still and enjoy our selves a little longer under this *boney-suckle-bedg*.

CHAP. XIII.

Observations of the Eel, and other fish that want scales, and how to fish for them.

Pisc. It is agreed by most men, that the *Eel* is a most daintie fish; the Romans have esteemed her the *Helenæ* of their feasts, and some *The Queen of palat pleasure*. But most men differ about their breeding: some say they breed by generation as other fish do, and others, that they breed (as some worms do) of mud, as Rats and Mice, and many other living creatures are bred in *Egypt*, by the
Suns

Chap. 12. *The Compleat Angler.* 197

Suns heat when it shines upon the overflowing of the River *Nilus* : or out of the putrefaction of the earth , and divers other wayes. Those that deny them to breed by generation as other fish do ; ask : if any man ever saw an *Eel* to have a Spawn or Melt ? and they are answered , that they may be as certain of their breeding as if they had seen Spawn : for they say , that they are certain that *Eels* have all parts fit for generation , like other fish , but so small as not to be easily discerned , by reason of their fatness , but that discerned they may be , and that the He and the She *Eel* may be distinguished by their fins. And *Rondelinius* saies, he has seen *Eels* cling together like *Dew-worms*.

And others say , that *Eels* growing old breed other *Eels* out of the corruption of their own age , which Sir *Francis Bacon* sayes , exceeds not ten years. And others say , that as *Pearls* are made of glutinous dew-drops , which are condensed by the Suns heat in those Countries , so *Eels* are bred of a particular dew falling in the months of *May* or *June* on the banks of some particular Ponds or Rivers (apted by nature for that end) which in a few dayes are by the Suns heat turned into *Eels* , and some of the Ancients have called the *Eels* that are thus bred , *The Off-spring of Jove*. I have seen in the beginning of *July* , in a River
not

not far from *Canterbury*, some parts of it covered over with young *Eels*, about the thickness of a straw; and these *Eels* did lie on the top of that water, as thick as motes are said to be in the Sun: and I have heard the like of other Rivers, as namely in *Severn*, (where they are called *Telvers*) and in a pond or mere near unto *Stafford-shire*, where about a set time in Summer, such small *Eels* abound so much, that many of the poorer sort of people, that inhabit near to it take such *Eels* out of this Mere, with sieves or sheets, and make a kind of Eel-cake of them, and eat it like as Bread. And *Gesner* quotes venerable *Bede* to say, that in *England* there is an Island called *Ely*, by reason of the innumerable number of *Eels* that breed in it. But that *Eels* may be bred as some worms, and some kind of *Bees* and *Wasps* are, either of dew, or out of the corruption of the earth, seems to be made probable by the *Bar-nacles* and young *Goslings* bred by the Sun's heat, and the rotten planks of an old Ship, and hatched of trees; both which are related for truths by *Dubartas* and *Lobel*, and also by our learned *Cambden*, and laborious *Gerard* in his *Herbal*.

It is said by *Rondelitus*, that those *Eels* that are bred in Rivers that relate to, or be nearer to the Sea, never return to the fresh waters (as the *Salmon* does always desire to do) when they

Chap. 12. The Compleat Angler. 199

they have once tasted the salt water ; and I do the more easily believe this, because I am certain that powdered Beef is a most excellent bait to catch an *Eel* : and though Sir *Francis Bacon* will allow the *Eels* life to be but ten years ; yet he in his History of Life and Death, mentions a *Lamprey* belonging to the *Roman* Emperour to be made tame, and so kept for almost threescore years : and that such useful and pleasant observations were made of this *Lamprey*, that *Crassus* the Orator (who kept her) lamented her Death. And we read (in Doctor *Hackwel*) that *Hortensius* was seen to weep at the death of a *Lamprey* that he had kept long, and loved exceedingly.

It is granted by all, or most men, that *Eels*, for about six months (that is to say, the six cold months of the year) stir not up and down, neither in the Rivers, nor in the Pools in which they usually are, but get into the soft earth or mud, and there many of them together bed themselves, and live without feeding upon any thing (as I have told you some *Swallows* have been observed to do in hollow trees for those six cold months:) and this the *Eel* and *Swallow* do, as not being able to endure winter weather : For *Gesner* quotes *Albertus*, to say, that in the year 1125. (that years winter being more cold than usually) *Eels* did by natures instinct get out of the water into a stack of hay in a Meadow

Meadow upon drie ground, and there bedded themselves, but yet at last a frost kill'd them. And our *Cambden* relates, that in *Lancashire* Fishes were dig'd out of the earth with Spades, where no water was near to the place. I shall say little more of the Eel, but that, as it is observed he is impatient of cold; so it hath been observed, that in warm weather an *Eel* has been known to live five days out of the water.

And lastly, let me tell you that some curious searchers into the natures of Fish, observe that there be several sorts or kinds of *Eels*, as the *silver Eel*, and green or *greenish Eel* (with which the River of *Thames* abounds, and those are called *Grigs*;) and a *blackish Eel*, whose head is more flat and bigger than ordinary *Eels*; and also an *Eel* whose Fins are reddish, and but seldom taken in this Nation, (and yet taken sometimes:) These several kinds of *Eels* are (say some) diversly bred, as namely, out of the corruption of the earth, and some by dew, and other ways, (as I have said to you;) and yet it is affirmed by some for a certain, that the *silver Eel* is bred by generation, but not by Spawning as other Fish do, but that her brood come alive from her, being then little live *Eels* no bigger nor longer than a pin; and I have had too many testimonies of this to doubt the truth of it my self, and if I thought it needful I might prove it, but I think it is needless.

And

And this Eel of which I have said so much to you, may be caught with divers kinds of Baits: as namely with powdered Beef, with a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, with a *Minnow*, or gut of a *Hen*, *Chicken* or the guts of any Fish, or with almost any thing, for he is a greedy Fish; but the Eel may be caught especially with a little, a very little *Lamprey* which some call a *Pride*, and may in the hot months be found many of them in the River *Thames*, and in many mud-heaps in other Rivers, yea, almost as usually as one finds worms in a dunghill.

Next note, that the Eel seldom stirs in the day, but then hides himself, and therefore he is usually caught by night with one of these baits of which I have spoken, and may be then caught by laying hooks, which you are to fasten to the bank or twigs of a tree; or by throwing a string cross the stream with many hooks at it, and those baited with the aforesaid Baits, and a clod, or plummet, or stone, thrown into the River with this line, that so you may in the morning find it near to some fixt place, and then take it up with a Drag-hook or otherwise: but these things are indeed too common to be spoken of, and an hours fishing with any Angler will teach you better, both for these and many other common things in the practical part of *Angling*, than a weeks discourse. I shall therefore conclude this direction for taking the *Eel*, by tel-

P

ling

ling you, that in a warm day in Summer I have taken many a good Eel by *snigling* and have been much pleased with that sport.

And because you that are but a young Angler know not what *snigling* is, I will now teach it to you. You remember I told you that Eels do not usually stir in the day time, for then they hide themselves under some covert, or under boards or planks about Flood-gates, or Weires, or Mills, or in holes in the River banks; so that you observing your time in a warm day, when the water is lowest, may take a strong small hook tied to a strong line, or to a string about a yard long, and then into one of these holes, or between any boards about a Mill, or under any great stone or plank, or any place where you think an Eel may hide or shelter her self, you may with the help of a short stick put in your bait, but leasurely, and as far as you may conveniently: and it is scarce to be doubted, but that if there be an Eel within the sight of it, the Eel will bite instantly, and as certainly gorge it: and you need not doubt to have him if you pull him not out of the hole too quickly, but pull him out by degrees, for he lying folded double in his hole, will with the help of his tail break all, unless you give him time to be wearied with pulling, and so get him out by degrees, not pulling too hard.

And

And to commute for your patient hearing this long Direction I shall next tell you how to make this *EEL*



a most excellent dish of meat :

First, wash him in water and salt, then pull off his skin below his vent or navel, and not much further : having done that, take out his guts as clean as you can, but wash him not : then give him three or four scotches with a knife, and then put into his belly and those scotches, sweet herbs, an Anchovy, and a little Nutmeg grated or cut very small, and your herbs and Anchovis must also be cut very small, and mixt with good butter and salt: having done this, then pull his skin over him all but his head, which you are to cut off, to the end you may tie his skin about that part where his head grew, and it must be so tyed as to keep all his moisture within his skin: and having done this, tie him with Tape or Pack-

thred to a spit, and rost him leasurely, and baste him with water and salt till his skin breaks, and then with Butter : and having roasted him enough, let what was put into his belly, and what he drips be his sawce.

S.F.

When I go to dress an Eel thus, I wish he were as long and big, as that which was caught in *Peterborough River* in the year 1667. which was a yard and three quarters long. If you will not believe me ? then go and see at one of the *Coffee-houses* in *King-street* in *Westminster*.

But now let me tell you, that though the Eel thus dressed be not only excellent good, but more harmless than any other way, yet it is certain, that Physicians account the Eel dangerous meat ; I will advise you therefore, as *Solomon* says of Honey, *Prov. 25. Hast thou found it, eat no more than is sufficient, lest thou surfeit, for it is not good to eat much boney.* And let me add this that the uncharitable *Italian* bids us, *Give Eels, and no wine to our Enemies.*

And I will beg a little more of your attention to tell you that *Aldrovandus* and divers Physicians commend the Eel very much for medicine though not for meat. But let me tell you one observation ; That the Eel is never out of season, as *Trouts* and most other fish are set time, at least most Eels are not.

I

Chap. 13. The Compleat Angler. 205

I might here speak of many other Fish whose shape and nature are much like the Eel, and frequent both the *Sea* and fresh Rivers; as namely the *Lamprel*, the *Lamprey* and the *Lamperue*: as also of the mighty *Conger*, taken often in *Severn*, about *Glocester*; and might also tell in what high esteem many of them are for the curiosity of their taste; but these are not so proper to be talk'd of by me, because they make us Anglers no sport, therefore I will let them alone as the Jews do, to whom they are forbidden by their Law.

And Scholar, there is also a Flounder, a Sea-fish, which will wander very far into fresh Rivers, and there lose himself, and dwell and thrive to a hands breadth, and almost twice so long, a fish without scales, and most excellent meat, and a fish that affords much sport to the Angler, with any small worm, but especially a little blewish worm, gotten out of Marsh ground or Meadows, which should be well scowred, but this though it be most excellent meat, yet it wants scales, and is as I told you therefore an abomination to the Jews.

But Scholar, there is a fish that they in *Lancashire* boast very much of, called a *Char*, taken there, (and I think there only) in a Mere called *Winander Mere*; a Mere, says *Cambden*, that is the largest in this Nation, being ten miles in length, and some say as smooth in the bottom as

if it were paved with polisht marble: this fish never exceeds fifteen or sixteen inches in length; and 'tis spotted like a *Trout*, and has scarce a bone but on the back: but this, though I do not know whether it make the Angler sport, yet I would have you take notice of it, because it is a rarity, and of so high esteem with persons of great note.

Nor would I have you ignorant of a rare fish called a *Guiniad*, of which I shall tell you what *Cambden*, and others speak. The River *Dee* (which runs by *Chester*) springs in *Merionethshire*, and as it runs toward *Chester* it runs through *Pemle-Mere*, which is a large water: And it is observed, that though the River *Dee* abounds with *Salmon*, and *Pemle-Mere* with the *Guiniad*, yet there is never any *Salmon* caught in the *Mere*, nor a *Guiniad* in the River. And now my next observation shall be of the *Earbel*.

C H A P. XIV:

*Observations of the Barbel, and directions
how to fish for him.*

PISC. The *Barbel* is so called (says *Gesner*) by reason of his Barb or Wattels at his mouth, which are under his nose or chaps. He is one of those leather-mouthed Fishes that I told you of, that does very seldom break his hold if he be once hook'd: but he is so strong, that he will often break both rod or line if he proves to be a big one.

But the *Barbel*, though he be of a fine shape, and looks big, yet he is not accounted the best fish to eat, neither for his wholsomness nor his taste: But the Male is reputed much better than the Female, whose Spawn is very hurtful, as I will presently declare to you.

They flock together like sheep, and are at the worst in *April*, about which time they Spawn, but quickly grow to be in season. He is able to live in the strongest swifts of the Water, and in Summer they love the shallowest and sharpest streams; and love to lurk under weeds, and to feed on gravel against a rising ground, and will root and dig in the sands with his nose like a hog, and there nests himself: yet sometimes

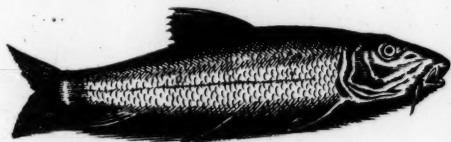
he retires to deep and swift Bridges, or Flood-gates, or Weires, where he will nest himself amongst piles, or in hollow places, and take such hold of moss or weeds, that be the water never so swift, it is not able to force him from the place that he contends for. This is his constant custom in Summer, when he and most living creatures sport themselves in the Sun, but at the approach of Winter, then he forsakes the swift streams and shallow waters, and by degrees retires to those parts of the River that are quiet and deeper; in which places (and I think about that time) he Spawns, and as I have formerly told you, with the help of the Melter, hides his Spawn or eggs in holes, which they both dig in the gravel, and then they mutually labour to cover it with the same sand, to prevent it from being devoured by other fish.

There be such store of this fish in the River *Danubie*, that *Rondelinius* says, they may in some places of it, and in some months of the year, be taken by those that dwell near to the River, with their hands, eight or ten load at a time; he says, they begin to be good in *May*, and that they cease to be so in *August*, but it is found to be otherwise in this Nation: but thus far we agree with him, that the Spawn of a *Barbel*, if it be not poison as he says, yet that it is dangerous meat, and especially in the month of *May*; which is so certain, that *Gesner* and *Gasius* declare

Chap. 14. The Compleat Angler. 209

clare, it had an ill effect upon them even to the endangering of their lives.

This fish is of a fine cast and handsome shape, with small scales, which are plac'd after a most exact and curious manner,



and, as I told you, may be rather said not to be ill, than to be good meat; the *Chub* and he have (I think) both lost part of their credit by ill cookery, they being reputed the worst or courtest of fresh-water-fish: but the *Barbel* affords an *Angler* choice sport, being a lusty and a cunning Fish: so lusty and cunning as to endanger the breaking of the Anglers line, by running his head forcibly towards any covert, or hole, or bank: and then striking at the line, to break it off with his tail (as is observed by *Plutarch*, in his Book *de industria animalium*) and also so cunning to nibble and suck off your worm close to the hook, and yet avoid the letting

ting the hook come into his mouth.

The *Barbel* is also curious for his baits, that is to say, that they be clean and sweet ; that is to say, to have your worms well scowred, and not kept in sowre and musty moss, for he is a curious feeder ; but at a well-scowred Lob-worm, he will bite as boldly as at any bait, and specially, if the night or two before you fish for him, you shall bait the places where you intend to fish for him with big worms cut into pieces : and note, that none did ever over-bait the place, nor fish too early or too late for a *Barbel*. And the *Barbel* will bite also at Gentles, which (not being too much scowred, but green) are a choice bait for him ; and so is cheese, which is not to be too hard, but kept a day or two in a wet linnen cloth to make it tough : with this you may also bait the water a day or two before you fish for the *Barbel*, and be much the likelier to catch store : and if the cheese were laid in clarified honey a short time before (as namely, an hour or two) you were still the likelier to catch Fish : some have directed to cut the cheese into thin pieces, and toast it, and then tie it on the hook with fine silk : and some advise to fish for the *Barbel* with Sheeps tallow and soft cheese beaten or work'd into a Paste, and that it is choicely good in *August*, and I believe it : but doubtless the Lob-worm well scowred, and the Gentle not too much scowred,

Chap. 14. The Compleat Angler. 211

red, and cheefe ordered as I have directed, are baits enough, and I think will serve in any month; though I shall commend any Angler that tries conclusions, and is industrious to improve the Art. And now, my honest Scholar, the long shower, and my tedious discourse are both ended together: and I shall give you but this Observation, that when you fish for a *Barbel*, your Rod and Line be both long, and of good strength, for (as I told you) you will find him a heavy and a dogged fish to be dealt withall, yet he seldom or never breaks his hold if he be once stucken. And if you would know more of fishing for the *Umber* or *Barbel*, get into favour with Doctor *Sheldon*, whose skill is above others; and of that the Poor that dwell about him have a comfortable experience.

And now lets go and see what interest the *Trouts* will pay us for letting our *Angle-rods* lie so long, and so quietly in the water for their use. Come, Scholar, which will you take up?

Ven. Which you think fit, Master.

Pisc. Why, you shall take up that; for I am certain by viewing the Line, it has a Fish at it. Look you, Scholar: well done. Come now, take up the other too; well, now you may tell my brother *Peter* at night, that you have caught a leash of *Trouts* this day. And now lets move toward our lodging, and drink a draught of *Red-Cows Milk*, as we go, and give pretty
Maudlin

Mandlin and her honest mother a brace of *Trouts* for their supper.

Venat. Master, I like your motion very well and I think it is now about milking time, and yonder they be at it.

Pisc. God speed you, good woman, I thank you both for our Songs last night; I and my companion have had such fortune a fishing this day, that we resolve to give you and *Mandlin* a brace of *Trouts* for supper, and we will now tast a draught of your *Red-Cows milk*.

Milkw. Marry, and that you shall with all my heart, and I will be still your debtor when you come this way: if you will but speak the word, I will make you a good *Sillabub*, of new Verjuice, and then you may sit down in a *bay-cock* and eat it, and *Mandlin* shall sit by and sing you the good old Song of the *Hunting in Chevy Chase*, or some other good Ballad, for she hath good store of them; *Mandlin*, my honest *Mandlin* hath a notable memory, and she thinks nothing too good for you, because you be such honest men.

Venat. We thank you, and intend once in a month to call upon you again, and give you a little warning, and so good night: good night *Mandlin*. And now, good Master, lets lose no time; but tell me somewhat more of Fishing, and if you please, first something of Fishing for a *Gudgion*.

Pisc. I will, honest Scholar.

CHAP.

C H A P. XV.

Observations of the Gudgion, the Ruffe and the Bleak, and how to fish for them.

THE *Gudgion* is reputed a Fish of excellent tast, and to be very wholsom: he is of a fine shape, of a silver colour, and beautified with black spots both on his body and tail. He breeds two or three times in the year, and always in Summer. He is commended for a Fish of excellent nourishment: the *Germans* call him *Groundling*, by reason of his feeding on the ground: and he there feasts himself in sharp streams, and on the gravel, He and the *Barbel* both feed so, and do not hunt for flies at any time, as most other Fishes do: he is an excellent fish to enter a young Angler, being easie to be taken with a small red worm, on or very near to the ground. He is one of those leather-mouthed fish that has his teeth in his throat, and will hardly be lost off from the hook if he be once stucken: they be usually scattered up and down every River in the shallows, in the heat of Summer: but in *Autumn*, when the weeds begin to grow sower or rot, and the weather colder, then they gather together, and get into the deeper parts
of

of the water: and are to be Fished for there, with your hook always touching the ground, if you Fish for him with a flote, or with a cork: But many will Fish for the *Gudgion* by hand, with a running line upon the ground, without a cork, as a *Trout* is fished for, and it is an excellent way, if you have a gentle rod and as gentle a hand.

There is also another Fish called a *Pope*, and by some a *Ruffe*, a Fish that is not known to be in some Rivers, he is much like the *Pearch* for his shape, and taken to be better than the *Pearch*, but will not grow to be bigger than a *Gudgion*; he is an excellent Fish, no Fish that swims is of a pleasanter tast, and he is also excellent to enter a young *Angler*, for he is a greedy biter, and they will usually lie abundance of them together in one reserved place where the water is deep, and runs quietly; and an easie *Angler*, if he has found where they lie, may catch forty or fifty, or sometimes twice so many at a standing.

You must Fish for him with a small red-worm, and if you bait the ground with earth, it is excellent.

There is also a *Bleak*, or fresh-water-Sprat, a Fish that is ever in motion, and therefore called by some the *River-Swallow*; for just as you shall observe the *Swallow* to be most evenings in Summer, ever in motion, making short and quick

Chap. 15. The Compleat Angler. 215

quick turns when he flies to catch Flies in the air (by which he lives) so does the *Bleak* at the top of the water. *Ausonius* would have him called *Bleak* from his whitish colour: his back is of a pleasant sad or Sea-water-green, his belly white and shining as the Mountain-snow: and doubtless though he have the fortune (which vertue has in poor people) to be neglected, yet the *Bleak* ought to be much valued, though we want *Allamot* salt, and the skill that the *Italians* have to turn them into Anchovis. This fish may be caught with a *Pater-noster* line, that is, six or eight very small hooks tyed along the line one half a foot above the other: I have seen five caught thus at one time, and the bait has been Gentles, than which none is better.

Or this fish may be caught with a fine small artificial flie, which is to be of a very sad, brown colour, and very small, and the hook answerable. There is no better sport than whipping for *Bleaks* in a boat, or on a bank in the swift water in a Summers evening, with a Hazle top about five or six foot long, and a line twice the length of the Rod, I have heard Sir Henry Wotton say, that there be many that in *Italy* will catch *Swallows* so, or especially *Martins* (this *Bird-angler* standing on the top of a Steeple to do it, and with a line twice so long as I have spoken of:) And let me tell you, Scholar, that both *Martins* and *Bleaks* be most excellent meat.

And

And let me tell you, that I have known a *Herr* that did constantly frequent one place, caught with a hook baited with a big Minnow or a small *Gudgion*. The line and hook must be strong, and tied to some loose staff so big as she cannot flie away with it, a line not exceeding two Yards.

C H A P. XVI.

Is of nothing; or, that which is nothing worth.

MY purpose was to give you some directions concerning *Roach* and *Dace*, and some other inferiour Fish, which make the Angler excellent sport, for you know there is more pleasure in Hunting the *Hare* than in eating her : but I will forbear at this time to say any more, because you see yonder come our brother *Peter* and honest *Coridon* : but I will promise you, that as you and I fish and walk to morrow towards *London*, if I have now forgotten any thing that I can then remember, I will not keep it from you.

Well met, Gentlemen, this is lucky that we meet so just together at this very door. Come Hostess,

Chap. 15. **The Compleat Angler.** 217

Hostess, where are you? is Supper ready? come, first give us drink, and be as quick as you can, for I believe we are all very hungry. Well brother *Peter* and *Coridon*, to you both; come drink, and then tell me *what luck of fish*: we two have caught but ten Trouts, of which my Scholar caught three; look here's eight, and a brace we gave away: we have had a most pleasant day for fishing and talking, and are returned home both weary and hungry, and now meat and rest vwill be pleasant.

Pet. and *Coridon* and I have not had an unpleasant day, and yet I have caught but five Trouts: for indeed we went to a good honest Ale-house, and there we plaid at Shovel-board half the day; all the time that it rained we were there, and as merry as they that fished, and I am glad we are now with a dry house over our heads, for hark how it rains and blows. Come Hostess, give us more Ale, and our supper with vwhat haste you may; and vwhen vve have sup'd let us have your Song, *Piscator*, and the Catch that your Scholar promised us, or else *Coridon* will be dogged.

Pisc. Nay, I vwill not be vvorse than my vvord, you shall not vvant my Song, and I hope I shall be perfect in it.

Venat. And I hope the like for my Catch, vvhich I have ready too, and therefore lets go merrily to supper, and then have a gentle touch

Q

at

218 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

at singing and drinking: but the last vvith moderation.

Cor. Come, now for your Song, for we have fed heartily. Come Hostels, lay a few more sticks on the fire, and novv sing vvhen you vvill.

Fisc. Well then, here's to you *Coridon*; and now for my Song.

*Ob the gallant Fishers life,
It is the best of any,
Tis full of pleasure, void of strife,
And 'tis belov'd of many:*

*Other joys
are but toys,
only ibin
lawful is,
for our skill
breeds no ill,
but content and pleasure.*

*In a morning up we rise,
Ere Aurora's peeping,
Drink a cup to wash our eyes,
Leave the sluggish sleepings:*

*Then we go
to and fro,
with our knacks
at our backs,
to such streams
as the Thames,*

if we have the leasure.

When

*When we please to walk abroad
For our recreation,
In the fields is our abode,
Full of delectation.*

*Where in a brook
with a hook,
or a Lake,
fish we take,
there we sit,
for a bit,
till we fish entangle.*

*We have Gentles in a horn,
We have paste and worms too,
We can watch both night and morn,
Suffer rain and storms too :*

*None do here
use to swear,
oaths do fray
fish away,
we sit still,
and watch our quill ;
Fishers must not wrangle.*

*If the Suns excessive heat
Make our bodies swelter,
To an Olier hedge we get
For a friendly shelter,
Where in a dike
Pearch or Pike.*

Roach or Dace.
we do chase,
 Bleak or Gudgion
without grudging,
we are still contented.

Or we sometimes pass an hour
Under a green Willow,
That defends us from a showre,
Making earth our pillow,
Where we may
think and pray,
before death
stops our breath:
other joys
are but toys,
and to be lamented,

Jo. Chalkhill.

Venat. Well sung, Master, this days fortune and pleasure, and this nights company and song, do all make me more and more in love with *Augling*. Gentlemen, my Master left me alone for an hour this day, and I verily believe he retired himself from talking with me, that he might be so perfect in this song; was it not Master?

Pisc. Yes indeed, for it is many years since I learn'd it, and having forgotten a part of it, I was forced to patch it up by the help of mine own Invention, who am not excellent at Poetry,

trie, as my part of the song may testifie: But of that I will say no more, lest you should think I mean by discommending it to beg your commendations of it. And therefore without replications lets hear your Catch, Scholar, which I hope will be a good one, for you are both Musical, and have a good fancie to boot.

Venat. Marry and that you shall, and as freely as I would have my honest Master tell me some more secrets of fish and Fishing as we walk and fish towards *London* to morrow. But Master, first let me tell you, that, that very hour which you were absent from me, I sate down under a *Willow-tree* by the water side, and considered what you had told me of the Owner of that pleasant Meadow in which you then left me; that he had a plentiful estate, and not a heart to think so; that he had at this time many Law-suits depending, and that they both damp'd his mirth, and took up so much of his time and thoughts, that he himself had not leisure to take the sweet content that I (who pretended no title to them,) took in his fields, for I could there sit quietly, and looking on the water, see some Fishes sport themselves in the silver streams, others, leaping at Flies of several shapes and colours; looking on the Hills, I could behold them spotted with Woods and Groves; looking down the Meadows, could see here a Boy gathering *Lillies* and *Lady-smocks*, and there

a Girl cropping *Culverkeyes* and *Cow-slips*, all to make Garlands suitable to this present Month of *May*: these and many other Field-flowers, so perfumed the Air, that I thought that very Meadow like that Field in *Sicily* (of which *Di-dorus* speaks) where the perfumes arising from the place, make all Dogs that hunt in it, to fall off, and to lose their hottest sent. I say, as I thus sat joying in my own happy condition, and pitying this poor rich man, that own'd this and many other pleasant Groves and Meadows about me, I did thankfully remember what my Saviour said, that the *meek possess the Earth*; or rather, they enjoy what the other possess and enjoy not, for Anglers and meek quiet-spirited-men, are free from those high, those restless thoughts which corrode the sweets of life; and they, and they only can say as the Poet has happily express'd it.

*Hail blest estate of lowliness!
 Happy enjoyments of such minds,
 As rich in self-contentedness,
 Can, like the reeds in roughest winds
 By yielding make that blow but small
 At which proud Oaks and Cedars fall.*

There came also into my mind at that time, certain Verses in praise of a mean estate, and an humble mind, they were written by *Phineas Fletcher*:

Chap. 15. **The Compleat Angler.** 223

Fletcher : an excellent Divine, and an excellent Angler, and the Author of excellent piscatory Eclogues, in which you shall see the picture of this good mans mind, and I wish mine to be like it.

*No empty hopes, no Courty fears him fright,
No begging wants, his middle fortune bite,
But sweet content exiles, both misery and spite.*

*His certain life, that never can deceive him,
Is full of thousand sweets, and rich content;
The smooth-leav'd beeches in the field receive him,
With coolest shade, till noon-tides heat be spent :
His life, is neither tost in boisterous Seas,
Or the vexatious world, or lost in slothful ease;
(please.)*

Pleas'd & full blest he livse, when he his God can

*His bed, more safe than soft, yields quiet sleeps,
While by his side his faithful Sponse hath place,
His little son, into his bosom creeps,
The lively picture of his fathers face.
His humble house, or poor state ne're torment him,
Lesse he could like, if lesse his God had lent him (him,
And when he dies, green turfs do for a tomb content*

Gentlemen, these were a part of the thoughts that then possesst me, and I there made a conversion of a piece of an old Catch, and added more

224 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

to it, fitting them to be sung by us Anglers: come Master, you can sing well, you must sing a part of it as it is in this paper.

*Mans life, is but vain: for, 'tis subject to pain
And sorrow, and short as a bubble;
'Tis a Hodg-poch of business, and mony, and care,
And care, and mony and trouble. (fair:
But we'l take no care, when the weather proves
Nor will we vex now tho it rain;
We'l banish all sorrow, and sing till to morrow,
And Angle, and Angle again.*

The

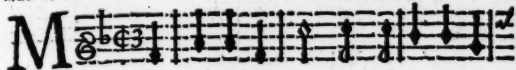
The ANGLERS Song.

225

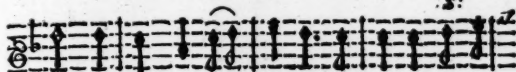
CANTUS.

a 2. Ver.

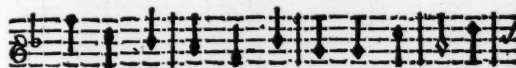
Set by Mr. Henry Lawes.



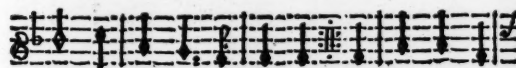
An's life is but vain; for 'tis subject to



pain, and sorrow, and short as a bubble; 'tis a



hodge podge of business and money, and care, and



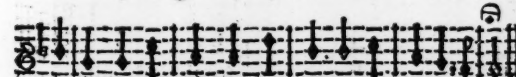
care, and money and trouble. But we'll take no



care when the weather proves fair, nor will we



vex now, though it rain; we'll banish all sorrow



and sing till to morrow, and Angle and angle again.

The ANGLERS Song.

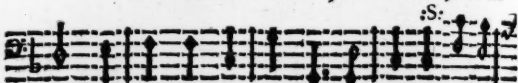
BASSUS.

2. Voc.

Set by Mr. Henry Lawes.



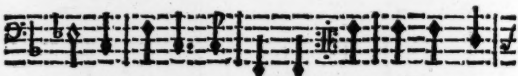
An's life is but vain; for 'tis subject to



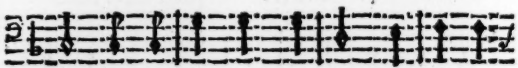
pain and sorrow, and short as a bubble; 'tis a



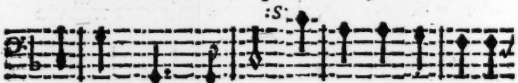
hodge podge of business and money, and care, and



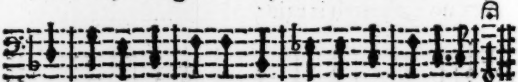
care, and money and trouble. But we'll take no



care when the weather proves fair, nor will we



vex now, though it rain; we'll banish all sorrow



and sing 'till to morrow, and Angle and angle again.

Chap. 15. *The Compleat Angler.* 227

Pet. I marry Sir, this is Musick indeed, this has cheer'd my heart, and made me to remember six Verses in praise of Musick, which I will speak to you instantly,

*Musick, miraculous Rhetorick, that speak'st sense
Without a tongue, excelling eloquence;
With what ease might thy errors be excus'd
Wert thou as truly lov'd as th'art abus'd?
But though dull souls neglect, & some reprove thee,
I cannot hate thee, 'cause the Angels love thee.*

Ven. And the repetition of these last Verses of musick have call'd to my memory what *Mr. Ed. Waller* (a Lover of the Angle) says of Love and Musick.

*Whilst I listen to thy voice
(Choris) I feel my heart decay:
That powerful voice,
Calls my fleeting Soul away;
Oh! suppress that magick sound
Which destroys without a wound.*

*Peace Cloris, peace, or singing die,
That together you and I
To Heaven may go:
For all we know
Of what the blessed do above
Is, that they sing, and that they love.*

Pisc.

Pisc. Well remembred brother *Peter*, these Verses came seasonably, and we thank you heartily. Come, we will all joyn together, my Host and all, and sing my Scholars Catch over again, and then each man drink the tother cup and to bed, and thank God we have a dry house over our heads.

Pisc. Well now, good night to every body.

Pet. And so say I.

Ven. And so say I.

Cor. Good night to you all, and I thank you.

Pisc. Good morrow brother *Peter*, and the like to you honest *Coridon*: come, my Hostess says there is seven shillings to pay, let's each man drink a pot for his mornings draught, and lay down his two shillings, that so my Hostess may not have occasion to repent her self of being so diligent, and using us so kindly.

Pet. The motion is liked by every body, and so Hostess, here's your money; we Anglers are all beholding to you, it will not be long ere I'll see you again. And now brother *Piscator* I wish you and my brother your Scholar a fair day, and good fortune. Come *Coridon*, this is our way,

CHAP. XVI.

*Of Roach and Dace, & how to fish for them.
And of Caddis.*

V*En.* Good Master, as we go now towards London, be still so courteous as to give me more instructions, for I have several boxes in my memory, in which I will keep them all very safe, there shall not one of them be lost.

Pisc. Well Scholar, that I will, and I will hide nothing from you that I can remember, and can think may help you forward towards a perfection in this Art; and because we have so much time, and I have said so little of *Roach* and *Dace*, I will give you some directions concerning them.

Some say the *Roach* is so called, from *Rutilus*, which they say, signifies red fins: He is a Fish of no great reputation for his dainty taste, and his Spawn is accounted much better than any other part of him. And you may take notice, that as the *Carp* is accounted the *Water-Fox*, for his cunning; so the *Roach* is accounted the *Water-sheep* for his simplicity or foolishness. It is noted that the *Roach* and *Dace* recover strength, and grow in season in a fortnight after Spawning,

ning, the *Barbel* and *Chub* in a month, the *Trout* in four months, and the *Salmon* in the like time, if he gets into the Sea, and after into fresh water.

Roaches be accounted much better in the River than in a Pond, though ponds usually breed the biggest. But there is a kind of bastard small *Roach* that breeds in ponds with a very forked tail, and of a very small size, which some say is bred by the *Bream* and right *Roach*, and some Ponds are stored with these beyond beliefs; and knowing-men that know their difference call them *Ruds*; they differ from the true *Roach* as much as a *Herring* from a *Pilchard*, and these bastard breed of *Roach* are now scattered in many Rivers, but I think not in *Tbames*, which I believe affords the largest and fattest in this Nation, especially below *London-bridg*: the *Roach* is a leather-mouth'd Fish, and has a kind of saw-like teeth in his throat. And lastly let me tell you, the *Roach* makes an Angler excellent sport, especially the great *Roaches* about *London*, where I think there be the best *Roach-Anglers*, and I think the best *Trout-Anglers* be in *Derby-shire*, for the waters there are clear to an extremity.

Next, let me tell you, you shall fish for this *Roach* in Winter with Paste or Gentles, in *April* with worms or Caddis; in the very hot months with little white snails, or with flies under-water,

Chap. 16. The Compleat Angler. 231

ter, for he seldom takes them at the top, though the Dace will. In many of the hot months, Roaches may also be caught thus : Take a *May-flie* or *Ant-flie*, sink him with a little lead to the bottom near to the Piles or Posts of a Bridge, or near to any posts of a *Weire*, I mean any deep place where Roaches lie quietly, and then pull your flie up very leisurely, and usually a Roach will follow your bait to the very top of the water and gaze on it there, and run at it and take it lest the flie should flie away from him.

I have seen this done at *Windsor* and *Henly-Bridge*, and great store of *Roach* taken; and sometimes a *Dace* or *Chub* ; and in *August* you may fish for them with a Paste made only of the crumbs of Bread, which should be of pure fine *Manchet* ; and that paste must be so tempered betwixt your hands till it be both soft and tough too ; a very little water, and time and labour, and clean hands will make it a most excellent paste : But when you fish with it, you must have a small hook, a quick eye, and a nimble hand, or the bait is lost and the fish too; (if one may lose that which he never had) with this paste, you may, as I said, take both the *Roach* and the *Dace* or *Dare*, for they be much of a kind, in matter of feeding, cunning, goodness, and usually in size. And therefore take this general direction for some other baits which may concern you to take notice of. They will bite

232 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

bite almost at any flie, but especially at *Antflies*, concerning which, take this direction, for it is very good.

Take the blackish *Ant-flie* out of the Mole-hill or Ant-hill, in which place you shall find them in the month of *June*, or if that be too early in the year, then doubtless you may find them in *July*, *August*, and most of *September*, gather them alive with both their wings, and then put them into a Glas that will hold a quart or a pottle; but first put into the Glas a handful or more of the moist earth, out of which you gather them, and as much of the roots of the grass of the said hillock, and then put in the flies gently, that they lose not their wings, lay a clod of earth over it, and then so many as are put into the glass without bruising, will live there a month or more, and be always in a readiness for you to fish with; but if you would have them keep longer, then get any great earthen pot, or barrel of three or four gallons (which is better) then wash your barrel with water and honey; and having put into it a quantity of earth and grass roots, then put in your flies, and cover it, and they will live a quarter of a year; these in any stream and clear water, are a deadly bait for *Roach* or *Dace*, or for a *Chub*; and your rule is, to fish not less than a handful from the bottom.

I shall next tell you a winter bait for a *Roach*,

Chap. 17. The Content Angler. 233

a *Dace* or *Chub*, and it is choicely good. About *All-hallantide* (and so till Frost comes) when you see men ploughing up heath ground, or sandy ground, or green swards, then follow the plough, and you shall find a white worm as big as two *Maggots*, and it hath a red head, (you may observe in what ground most are, for there the Crows will be very watchful and follow the Plough very close) it is all soft, and full of whitish guts; a worm that is in *Norfolk*, and some other Counties called a *Grub*, and is bred of the Spawn or Eggs of a Beetle, which she leaves in holes that she digs in the ground under Cow or Horse dung, and there rests all Winter, and in *March* or *April* comes to be first a red, and then a black Beetle: gather a thousand or two of these, and put them with a peck or two of their own earth into some tub or firkin, and cover and keep them so warm, that the frost or cold air, or winds kill them not; these you may keep all winter, and kill fish with them at any time: and if you put some of them into a little earth and honey a day before you use them, you will find them an excellent bait for *Bream*, *Carp*, or indeed for almost any fish.

And after this manner you may also keep Gentles all winter, which are a good bait then, and much the better for being lively and tough: or you may breed and keep Gentles thus: Take a piece of Beasts liver, and with a cross stick;
R hang

hang it in some corner over a pot or barrel half full of dry clay, and as the Gentles grow big, they will fall into the barrel and scowre themselves, and be always ready for use whensoever you incline to fish; and these Gentles may be thus created till after *Michaelmas*. But if you desire to keep Gentles to fish with all the year, then get a dead Cat or a Kite and let it be fly-blown, and when the Gentles begin to be alive and to stir, then bury it and them in soft, moist earth, but as free from frost as you can, and these you may dig up at any time when you intend to use them, these will last till *March*, and about that time turn to be Flies.

But if you be nice to foul your Fingers, (which good Anglers seldom are) then take this Bait: Get a handful of well-made Malt, and put it into a dish of water, and then wash and rub it betwixt your hands till you make it clean, and as free from husks as you can; then put that water from it, and put a small quantity of fresh water to it, and set it in something that is fit for that purpose over the Fire, where it is not to boil apace, but leisurely and very softly, until it become somewhat soft, which you may try by feeling it betwixt your Finger and Thumb, and when it is soft, then put your water from it, and then take a sharp Knife, and turning the sprout end of the Corn upward, with the point of your Knife take the
back

back part of the husk off from it, and yet leaving a kind of inward husk on the Corn, or else it is marr'd, and then cut off that sprouted end (I mean a little of it) that the white may appear, and so pull off the husk on the cloven side (as I directed you) and then cutting off a very little of the other end, that so your hook may enter; and if your hook be small and good, you will find this to be a very choice Bait either for Winter or Summer, you sometimes casting a little of it into the place where your float swims.

And to take the *Roach* and *Dace*, a good Bait is the young brood of Wasps or Bees, if you dip their heads in blood; especially good for *Bream*, if they be baked or hardned in their husks in an Oven, after the bread is taken out of it; or hardned on a Fire-shovel; and so also is the thick blood of *Sheep*, being half dried on a Trencher, that so you may cut it into such pieces as may best fit the size of your hook, and a little salt keeps it from growing black, and makes it not the worse but better: This is taken to be a choice Bait if rightly ordered.

There be several Oils of a strong smell that I have been told of, and to be excellent to tempt Fish to bite, of which I could say much, but I remember I once carried a small Bottle from Sir *George Hastings* to Sir *Henry Wotton*, (they were both chymical men) as a great Pre-

sent; it was sent, and receiv'd, and us'd with great confidence; and yet upon enquiry I found it did not answer the expectation of Sir *Henry*, which with the help of this and other circumstances, makes me have little belief in such things as many men talk of: not but that I think Fishes both smell and hear (as I have express'd in my former discourse) but there is a mysterious Knack, which (though it be much easier than the Philosophers Stone, yet) is not attainable by common capacities, or else lies locked up in the brain or breast of some chymical man, that like the *Rosi-crucians* will not yet reveal it. But let me nevertheless tell you, that *Campfire* put with moss into your worm-bag with your worms, makes them (if many Anglers be not very much mistaken) a tempting bait, and the Angler more fortunate. But I stepped by chance into this discourse of Oiles and Fishes smelling, and though there might be more said, both of it and of Baits for *Roach* and *Dace*, and other float Fish, yet I will forbear it at this time, and tell you in the next place how you are to prepare your Tackling: concerning which I will for sport sake give you an old Rhime out of an old Fish-book, which will prove a part and but a part of what you are to provide.

My

*My Rod and my Line, my Float and my Lead,
My Hook & my Plummet, my whetstone and knife,
My Basket, my Baits both living and dead,
My Net and my Meat, for that is the chief:
Then I must have Thred, & Hairs green and small,
With mine Angling purse, and so you have all.*

But you must have all these Tackling, and twice so many more, with which if you mean to be a Fisher, you must store

your self; and to that purpose I will go with you either to Mr. Margrave who dwells amongst the Book-sellers in St. Pauls Church-Yard, or to

I have heard, that the tackling hath been prized at fifty pounds in the Inventory of an Angler.

M. John Stubbs near to the Swan in Golding-lane; they be both honest men, and will fit an Angler with what Tackling he lacks.

Venat. Then, good Master, let it be at ——— for he is nearest to my dwelling, and I pray let's meet there the ninth of May next, about two of the clock, and I'll want nothing that a Fisher should be furnished with.

Pisc. Well, and I'll not fail you God willing at the time and place appointed.

Venat. I thank you, good Master, and I will not fail you: and, good Master, tell me what Baits more you remember, for it will not now be long ere we shall be at Tottenham-high-Cross, and when we come thither I will make you

some requital of your pains, by repeating as choice a copy of Verses, as any we have heard since we met together; and that is a proud word for we have heard very good ones.

Pisc. Well, Scholar, and I shall be then right glad to hear them; and I will as we walk tell you whatsoever comes in my mind, that I think may be worth your hearing. You may make another choice Bait thus, Take a handful or two of the best and biggest *Wheat* you can get, boil it in a little milk (like as *Fruity* is boiled) boil it so till it be soft, and then fry it very leasurely with Honey and a little beaten Saffron dissolved in milk, and you will find this a choice Bait, and good I think for any Fish, especially for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, or *Grayling*: I know not but that it may be as good for a *River-carp*, and especially if the ground be a little baited with it.

And you may also note, that the spawn of most Fish is a very tempting bait, being a little hardned on a warm Tile, and cut into fit peices. Nay, Mulberries and those Black-berries, which grow upon Briers, be good baits for *Chubs* or *Carps*, with these many have been taken in Ponds, and in some Rivers where such Trees have grown near the water and the fruit customarily dropt into it, and there be a hundred other baits more than can be well nam'd, which, by constant baiting the water will

will become a tempting bait for any Fish in it.

You are also to know, that there be divers kinds of *Caddis*, or *Cafe-worms*, that are to be found in this Nation in several distinct Counties, and in several little Brooks that relate to bigger Rivers; as namely, one *Cadis* called a *Piper*, whose husk or case is a piece of reed about an inch long or longer, and as big about as the compass of a two pence, these worms being kept three or four days in a woollen bag with sand at the bottom of it, and the bag wet once a day, will in three or four days turn to be yellow, and these be a choice bait for the *Chub* or *Chavender*, or indeed for any great Fish, for it is a large Bait.

There is also a lesser *Cadis-worm*, called a *Cock-spur*, being in fashion like the spur of a Cock, sharp at one end, and the case or house in vvhich this dwells is made of small husks, and gravel, and slime, most curiously made of these, even so as to be vvondred at, but not to be made by man no more than a *King-fishers* nest can, vvhich is made of little Fishes bones, and have such a Geometrical inter-weaving and connexion, as the like is not to be done by the art of man: This kind of *Cadis* is a choice bait for any float-Fish, it is much less than the *Piper-Cadis*, and to be so ordered, and these may be so preserved ten, fifteen, or twenty days, or it may be longer.

There is also another *Cadis*, called by some a *Straw-worm*, and by some a *Ruff-coat*, vvwhose house or case is made of little picces of bents, and rushes, and straws, and vvater-weeds, and I know not vvhat, vvwhich are so knit together vvith condensed slime, that they flick about her husk or case, not unlike the bristles of a *Hedg-hog*; these three *Cadis*'s are commonly taken in the beginning of Summer, and are good indeed to take any kind of fish vvith float or otherwise. I might tell you of many more, vvich as these do early, so those have their time also of turning to be flies later in Summer; but I might lose my self, and tire you by such a discourse, I shall therefore but remember you, that to know these, and their several kinds, and to vvhat flies every particular *Cadis* turns, and then how to use them first as they be *Cadis*, and after as they be *flies*, is an art, and an art that every one that professes to be an Angler has not leisure to search after, and if he had is not capable of learning.

I'll tell you, Scholar, several Countries have several kinds of *Caddis's*, that indeed differ as much as dogs do: That is to say, as much as a very *Cur* and a *Greyhound* do. These be usually bred in the very little rills or ditches that run into bigger Rivers, and I think a more proper bait for those very Rivers, than any other. I know not how or of vvhat this *Cadis* receives
life,

Chap. 17. The Compleat Angler. 241

life, or vvhat coloured flie, it turns to ; but doubtless, they are the death of many *Trouts*, and this is one killing way.

Take one (or more if need be) of these large yellow *Cadis*, pull off his head, and with it pull out his black gut, put the body (as little bruised as is possible) on a very little hook, armed on with a Red hair (which will shew like the *Cadis-head*) and a very little thin lead, so put upon the shank of the hook that it may sink presently ; throw this bait thus ordered (which will look very yellow) into any great still hole where a Trout is, and he will presently venture his life for it, 'tis not to be doubted if you be not espyed ; and that the bait first touch the water, before the line ; and this will do best in the deepest stillest water.

Next let me tell you, I have been much pleased to walk quietly by a Brook with a little stick in my hand, with which I might easily take these, and consider the curiosity of their composition ; and if you shall ever like to do so, then note, that your stick must be a little Hasel or Willow cleft, or have a nick at one end of it, by which means you may with ease take many of them in that nick out of the water, before you have any occasion to use them. These, my honest Scholar, are some observations told to you as they now come suddenly into my memory, of which you may make some use: but for the
practical

242 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

practical part, it is that, that makes an Angler : it is diligence, and observation, and practice, and an ambition to be the best in the Art that must do it. I will tell you, Scholar, I once heard one say, *I envy not him that eats better meat than I do, nor him that is richer, or that wears better clothes than I do. I envy no body but him, and him only, that catches more fish than I do.* And such a man is like to prove an Angler, and this noble emulation I wish to you and all young Anglers.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of the Minnow or Penk, of the Loach, and of the Bull-head, or Millers-thumb.

PISC. There be also three or four other little fish that I had almost forgot, that are all without scales, and may for excellency of meat be compared to any fish of greatest value, and largest size. They be usually full of eggs or spawn all the months of Summer ; for they breed often, as 'tis observed *mice* and many of the smaller four-footed Creatures of the earth do ; and as those, so these come quickly to their full

Chap. 18. The Compleat Angler. 143

full growth and perfection. And it is needful that they breed both often and numerously, for they be (besides other accidents of ruine) both a prey, and baits for other fish. And first, I shall tell you of the *Minnow* or *Penk*.

The *Minnow* hath, when he is in perfect season, and not sick (which is only presently after spawning) a kind of dappled or waved colour, like to a *Panther*, on his sides, inclining to a greenish and skie-colour, his belly being milk-white, and his back almost black or blackish. He is a sharp biter at a small worm, and in hot weather makes excellent sport for young Anglers, or boys, or women that love that Recreation, and in the spring they make of them excellent *Minnow-Tansies*; for being washed well in salt, and their heads and tails cut off, and their guts taken out, and not washed after, they prove excellent for that use, that is, being *fryed with yolks of eggs, the flowers of Cowslips, and of Primroses, and a little Tansie*, thus us'd they make a dainty dish of meat.

The *Loach* is, as I told you, a most dainty fish, he breeds and feeds in little and clear swift brooks or rills; and lives there upon the gravel, and in the sharpest streams: He grows not to be above a finger-long, and no thicker than is suitable to that length. This *LOACH*,

is

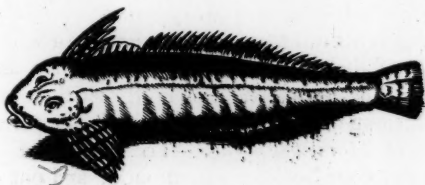


is not unlike the shape of the Eel: He has a beard or wattels like a *Barbel*. He has two fins at his sides, four at his belly and one at his tail; he is daped with many black or brown spots, his mouth is Barbel-like under his nose. This Fish is usually full of eggs or spawn, and is by *Gesner* and other learned Phylicians commended for great nourishment, and to be very grateful both to the palate and stomach of sick persons, he is to be fished for with a very small worm at the bottom, for he very seldom or never rises above the Gravel, on which I told you he usually gets his Living.

The *Millers-thumb* or *Bull-head*, is a Fish of no pleasing shape. He is by *Gesner* compared to the *Sea-toad-fish*, for his similitude and shape. It has a head big and flat, much greater than suitable to his Body; a mouth very wide and usually gaping. He is without teeth, but his lips are

Chap. 18. The Compleat Angler. 245

are very rough, much like to a Flie. He hath two Fins near to his gills, which be roundish or crested, two Fins also under the Belly, two on the back, one below the Vent, and the Fin of his tail is round. Nature hath painted the Body of this Fish with *whitish, blackish, brownish* spots. They be usually full of eggs or spawn all the Summer (I mean the Females) and those eggs swell their Vents almost into the form of a dug. They begin to spawn about *April*, and (as I told you) spawn several months in the Summer; and in the winter the Minnow, and Loach and Bull-head dwell in the mud as the Eel doth, or we know not where: no more than we know where the Cuckow and Swallow, and other half year birds (which first appear to us in *April*) spend their six cold winter melancholy months. This *Bull-head*



does

does usually dwell and hide himself in holes or amongst stones in clear water ; and in very hot daies will lie a long time very still, and sun himself , and will be easie to be seen upon any flat stone, or any gravel, at which time, he will suffer an Angler to put a hook baited with a small worm very near unto his very mouth, and he never refuses to bite, nor indeed to be caught with the worst of Anglers. *Matthiolarus* commends him much more for his taste and nourishment, than for his shape or beauty.

There is also a little Fish called a *Sticklebag*: a Fish without scales, but hath his body fenc'd with several prickles. I know not where he dwells in winter, nor what he is good for in summer, but only to make sport for boys and women-Anglers, and to feed other Fish that be Fish of prey, as Trouts in particular, who will bite at him as at a Penk, and better, if your hook be rightly baited with him, for he may be so baited, as his tail turning like the sail of a wind-mill will make him turn more quick than any *Penk* or *Minnow* can. For note, that the nimble turning of that or the *Minnow* is the perfection of *Minnow-Fishing*. To which end, if you put your hook into his mouth, and out at his tail, and then having first tied him with white thred a little above his tail, and placed him after such a manner on your hook as he is
like

Chap. 18. The Compleat Angler. 247

like to turn, then sow up his mouth to your line, and he is like to turn quick, and tempt any *Trout*: but if he do not turn quick, then turn his tail a little more or less towards the inner part; or towards the side of the hook, or put the *Minnow* or *Sticklebag* a little more crooked or more strait on your hook, until it will turn both true and fast; and then doubt not but to tempt any great *Trout* that lies in a swift stream. And the *Loach* that I told you of will do the like: no bait is more tempting, provided the *Loach* be not too big.

And now *Scholar*, with the help of this fine morning, and your patient attention, I have said all that my present memory will afford me concerning most of the several Fish that are usually fished for in fresh waters.

Venat. But Master, you have by your former civility made me hope that you will make good your promise, and say something of the several Rivers that be of most note in this Nation; and also of *Fish-ponds*, and the ordering of them, and do it I pray good Master, for I love any Discourse of Rivers, and Fish and fishing, the time spent in such discourse passes away very pleasantly.

CHAP.

C H A P. XIX.

*Of several Rivers, and some Observations
of Fish.*

P*Is.* Well Scholar, since the ways and weather do both favour us, and that we yet see not *Tottenbam-Croft*, you shall see my willingness to satistie your desire. And first, for the Rivers of this Nation, there be (as you may note out of Doctor *Heylins* Geography, and others) in number 325. but those of chiefest note he reckons and describes as followeth.

The chief is *Thamisis*, compounded of two Rivers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the later in *Cyrencester* in *Glocestershire* meet together about *Dorcester* in *Oxfordshire*, the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamisis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surry*, *Kent*, and *Essex*, and so weddeth himself to the *Ken-tish Medway* in the very jaws of the Ocean; this glorious River feeleth the violence and benefit of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a day, more than sixty miles: about whose banks are so many fair Towns, and Princely Palaces that a *German Poet* thus truly spake:

Tor

Tot Campos, &c.

*We saw so many Woods and Princely bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and stately Towers,
So many Gardens drest with curious care,
That Thames with royal Tyber may compare.*

2. The second River of note, is *Sabrina* or *Severn*: it hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon-Hill* in *Mont-gomery-shire*, and his end seven miles from *Bristol*, washing in the mean space the walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester*, and *Glocester*, and divers other places and palaces of note.

3. *Trent*, so called for thirty kind of Fishes that are found in it, or for that it receiveth thirty lesser Rivers, who having his fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Isle. This *Humber* is not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a spring head of his own, but it is rather the mouth or *Eustorium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together; namely, your *Dorwent*, and especially of *Ouse* and *Trent*; and (as the *Danow*, having received into its channel, the River *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibisnus*, and divers others) changeth his name into this of *Humberabus*, as the old Geographers call it.

S

4. Med-

4. *Medway*, a Kentish River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy.

5. *Tweed*, the north-east bound of *England*, on whose northern banks is seated the strong and impregnable Town of *Barwick*.

6. *Tine*, famous for *Newcastle*, and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These and the rest of principal note, are thus comprehended in one of *Mr. Draytons* Sonnets.

*The floods queen, Thames, for ships and swans is
And stately Severn for her shore is prais'd, (crown'd
The Chrystal Trent for fords and fish renown'd,
And Avons fame to Albions cliffs is rais'd,
Carlegion Chester vaunts her holy Dee,
York many wonders of her Ouse can tell,
The Peak her Dove, whose banks so fertile be,
And Kent will say her Medway doth excell.
Cotswool commends her Ilis to the Tame,
Our Northern borders boast of Tweeds fair flood,
Our Western parts extoll their Willies fame,
And the old Lea brags of the Danish blood.*

These Observations are out of learned *Dr. Heylin*, and my old deceased friend *Michael Drayton*; and because you say, you love such discourses as these of *rivers and fish and fishing*, I love you the better, and love the more to impart them to you: nevertheless, *Scholar*, if I should begin but to name the several sorts of
strange

Chap. 19. The Compleat Angler. 251

strange Fish that are usually taken in many of those Rivers that run into the Sea, I might beget wonder in you, or unbelief, or both; and yet I will venture to tell you a real truth concerning one lately dissected by Dr. *Wharton*, a man of great learning and experience, and of equal freedom to communicate it; one that loves me and my Art, one to whom I have been beholding for many of the choicest observations that I have imparted to you. This good man, that dares do any thing rather than tell an untruth, did (I say) tell me, he lately dissected one strange fish and he thus described it to me.

The Fish was almost a yard broad, and twice that length; his mouth wide enough to receive or take into it the head of a man, his stomach seven or eight inches broad: he is of a slow motion, and usually lyes or lurks close in the mud, and has a moveable string on his head about a span, or near unto a quarter of a yard long, by the moving of which (which is his natural bait) when he lyes close and unseen in the mud, he draws other smaller fish so close to him that he can suck them into his mouth, and so devours and digests them.

And, Scholar, do not wonder at this, for besides the credit of the Relator, you are to note, many of these, and Fishes which are of the

like and more unusual shapes, are very often taken on the mouths of our Sea-Rivers, and on the Sea-shore; and this will be no wonder to any that have travelled *Egypt*, where 'tis known the famous River *Nilus* does not only breed Fishes that yet want names, but by the overflowing of that River and the help of the Suns heat on the fat slime which that River leaves on the Banks (when it falls back into its natural channel) such strange fish and beasts are also bred, that no man can give a name to, as *Grotius* (in his *Sopham*) and others have observed.

But whither am I straid in this discourse? I will end it by telling you, that at the mouth of some of these Rivers of ours, Herrings are so plentiful, as namely, near to *Tarmouth* in *Norfolk*, and in the West-Country, Pilchers so very plentiful, as you will wonder to read what our learned *Cambden* relates of them in his *Britannia*, p. 178, 186.

Well, Scholar, I will stop here, and tell you what by reading and conference I have observed concerning Fish-ponds.

CHAP.

C H A P. XX.

Of fish-ponds, and how to order them.

DOCTOR *Lebault* the learned French man, in his large discourse of *Mason Rustique*, gives this direction for making of *Fish-ponds*, I shall refer you to him to read it at large, but I think I shall contract it, and yet make it as useful.

He adviseth, that when you have dreined the ground, and made the earth firm where the head of the Pond must be, that you must then in that place drive in two or three rows of Oak or Elme Piles, which should be scorcht in the fire, or half burnt before they be driven into the earth, (for being thus used it preserves them much longer from rotting) and having done so, lay Fagots or Bavins of smaller wood betwixt them, and then earth betwixt and above them, and then having first very well rammed them and the earth, use another pile in like manner as the first were: and note that the second pile is to be of or about the height that you intend to make your Sluce or Flood-gate, or the vent that you intend shall convey the overflowings of your Pond in any flood that shall endanger the breaking of the Pond dam.

S 3

Then

Then he advises that you plant Willows or Owlers about it, or both, and then cast in Bavins in some places not far from the side, and in the most sandy places, for Fish both to spawn upon, and to defend them and the young Frie from the many Fish, and also from Vermin that lie at watch to destroy them, especially the spawn of the *Carp* and *Tench*, when 'tis left to the mercy of ducks or Vermin.

He and *Dubravins* and all others advise, that you make choice of such a place for your Pond, that it may be refreshed with a little rill, or with rain water running or falling into it; by which Fish are more inclined both to breed, and are also refreshed and fed the better, and do prove to be of a much sweeter and more pleasant taste.

To which end it is observed; that such Pools as be large and have most gravel, and shallows where *fish* may sport themselves, do afford Fish of the purest taste. And note, that in all Pools it is best for fish to have some retiring place, as namely hollow banks, or shelves, or roots of trees to keep them from danger; and when they think fit from the extream heat of Summer; as also, from the extremity of cold in Winter. And note, that if many trees be growing about your Pond, the leaves thereof falling into the water, make it nauseous to the Fish, and the Fish to be so to the eater of it.

'Tis

'Tis noted that the *Tench* and *Eel* love mud, and the *Carp* loves gravelly ground, and in the hot months to feed on grass: You are to cleanse your Pond, if you intend either profit or pleasure, once every three or four Years, (especially some Ponds) and then let it lye dry six or twelve months, both to kill the water-weeds, as *Water-lillies*, *Candocks*, *Reate* and *Bull-rushes* that breed there; and also that as these die for want of water, so grass may grow in the Ponds bottom, which *Carps* will eat greedily in all the hot months if the Pond be clean. The letting your Pond dry and sowing Oats in the bottom is also good, for the fish feed the faster: and being sometime let dry, you may observe what kind of Fish either increases or thrives best in that water; for they differ much both in their breeding and feeding.

Lebault also advises, that if your Ponds be not very large and roomy, that you often feed your fish by throwing into them chippings of Bread, Curds, Grains, or the entrails of Chickens, or of any fowl or beast that you kill to feed your selves; for these afford Fish a great relief. He says that Frogs and Ducks do much harm, and devour both the Spawn and the young Fric of all Fish, especially of the *Carp*. And I have, besides experience, many testimonies of it, But *Lebault* allows Water-frogs to be good meat, especially in some Months, if

they be fat : but you are to note , that he is a *French-man*, and we *English* will hardly believe him, though we know frogs are usually eaten in his Country : however he advises to destroy them and King-fishers out of your ponds ; and he advises, not to suffer much shooting at wild fowl, for that (he says) affrightens, and harms, and destroys the Fish.

Note, that Carps and Tench thrive and breed best when no other fish is put with them into the same Pond ; for all other fish devour their spawn, or at least the greatest part of it. And note, that clods of grass thrown into any Pond feed any Carps in Summer : and that garden earth and parsley thrown into a Pond, recovers and refreshes the sick fish. And note, that when you store your pond , you are to put into it two or three Melters for one Spawner , if you put them into a breeding Pond : but if into a nurse-pond, or feeding pond, in which they will not breed, then no care is to be taken, whether there be most Male or Female Carps.

It is observed, that the best ponds to breed Carps are those that be stony or sandy, and are warm, and free from wind, and that are not deep, but have willow trees and grass on their sides, over which the water does sometimes flow : and note, that Carps do more usually breed in marle pits, or pits that have clean clay bottoms, or in new ponds, or ponds that lie dry

a

Chap. 21. The Compleat Angler. 257

a winter season, than in old ponds, that be full of mud and weeds.

Well Scholar, I have told you the substance of all that either *observation* or *discourse*, or a diligent *Survey* of *Dubravius* and *Lebault* hath told me, Not that they in their long discourses have not said more, but the most of the rest are so common observations, as if a man should tell a good Arithmetician, that twice two, is four. I will therefore put an end to this discourse, and we will here sit down and rest us.

C H A P. XXI.

Directions for making of a Line, and for the colouring of both Rod and Line.

P*isc.* Well, Scholar, I have held you too long about these *Cadis*, and smaller *fish*, and *rivers*, and *Fish-ponds*, and my spirits are almost spent, and so I doubt is your patience; but being we are now almost at *Tottenham*, where I first met you, and where we are to part, I will lose no time, but give you a little directions how to make and order your Lines, and to colour the hair of which you make your
Lines,

Lines, for that is very needful to be known of an Angler ; and also how to paint your Rod; especially your top , for a right grown top is a choice Commodity , and should be preserved from the water soaking into it, which makes it in wet weather to be heavy , and fish ill favouredly, and not true , and also it rots quickly for want of painting : and I think a good top is worth preserving, or I had not taken care to keep a top above twenty years.

But first for your line,

First, note, That you are to take care , that your hair be round and clear, and free from galls or scabs, or frets ; for a well-chosen, even clear, round hair, of a kind of glass-colour, will prove as strong as three uneven, scabby hairs, that are ill chosen, and full of galls or unevenness. You shall seldom find a black hair but it is round , but many white are flat and uneven , therefore if you get a lock of right , round, clear, glass-colour hair make much of it.

And for making your *Line*, observe this rule, First, let your hair be clean washt 'ere you go about to twist it : and then chuse not only the clearest hair for it, but hairs that be of an equal bigness, for such do usually stretch all together, and break altogether, which hairs of an unequal bigness never do, but break singly , and so deceive the Angler that trusts to them.

When

Chap. 25. The Compleat Angler. 259

When you have twisted your links, lay them in water for a quarter of an hour, at least, and then twist them over again before you tie them into a Line : for those that do not so, shall usually find their Line to have a hair or two shrink, and be shorter than the rest at the first fishing with it, which is so much of the strength of the Line lost for want of first watering it, and then re-twisting it ; and this is most visible in a seven-hair line, one of those which hath always a black hair in the middle.

And for dying of your hairs do it thus :

Take a pint of strong Ale, half a pound of foot, and a little quantity of the juice of *Walnut-tree* leaves, and an equal quantity of *Allom*, put these together into a pot, pan, or pipkin, and boil them half an hour, and having so done, let it cool, and being cold, put your hair into it, and there let it lie ; it will turn your hair to be a kind of water or glass colour, or greenish, and the longer you let it lie, the deeper coloured it will be ; you might be taught to make many other colours, but it is to little purpose ; for doubtless the water-colour, or glass-coloured hair is the most choice and most useful for an *Angler* ; but let it not be too green.

But

260 **The Compleat Angler. Part.I.**

But if you desire to colour hair greener; then do it thus: Take a quart of small Ale, half a pound of Allom, then put these into a pan or pipkin; and your hair into it with them, then put it upon a fire, and let it boil softly for half an hour, and then take out your hair, and let it dry, and having so done, then take a pottle of water, and put into it two handful of Mary-golds, and cover it with a tile (or what you think fit) and set it again on the Fire, where it is to boil again softly for half an hour, about which time the scum will turn yellow, then put into it half a pound of Copperas beaten small, and with it the hair that you intend to colour, then let the hair be boiled softly till half the liquor be wasted, and then let it cool three or four hours with your hair in it : and you are to observe, that the more Copperas you put into it, the greener it will be, but doubtless the pale green is best; But if you desire yellow hair, (which is only good when the weeds rot) then put in the more *Mary-golds*, and abate most of the Copperas, or leave it quite out, and take a little Verdigrease instead of it.

This for colouring your hair. And as for painting your Rod, which must be in Oil, you must first make a size with glue and water, boiled together, untill the glue be dissolved, and the size of a Lie-colour; then strike your size upon the wood with a Bristle, or a Brush, or Pencil,

Chap. 21. The Compleat Angler. 261

Penfil, whilst it is hot: that being quite dry, take white Lead, and a little red Lead, and a little cole-black, so much as altogether will make an ash-colour; grind these all together with Linseed Oil, let it be thick, and lay it thin upon the wood with a Brush or Penfil, this do for the ground of any colour to lie upon wood.

For a Green.

Take Pink and Verdigreece, and grind them together in Linseed Oil, as thin as you can well grind it, then lay it smoothly on with your Brush, and drive it thin; once doing for the most part will serve, if you lay it well; and if twice be sure your first colour be thoroughly dry, before you lay on a second.

Well Scholar; having now taught you to paint your Rod: and, we having still a mile to Tottenham High-Cross, I will, as we walk towards it, in the cool shade of this sweet Hony-suckle-Hedg, mention to you some of the thoughts and joys that have possess'd my Soul since we two met together. And, these thoughts shall be told you, that you also may joyn with me in thankfulness to the giver of every good and perfect gift for our happiness. And, that our present happiness may appear to be the greater, and we the more thankful for it: I will beg you to consider with me, how many do, even at this very time, lie under the
torment

262 **The Compleat Angler. Part. I.**

*torment of the Stone, the Gout, and Tooth-
 ache; and, this we are free from. And, every
 misery that I miss is a new mercy, and there-
 fore let us be thankful. There have been since
 we met, others, that have met disasters of bro-
 ken Limbs, some have been blasted, others Thun-
 der-strucken; and we have been freed from these,
 and all those many other miseries that threaten
 humane nature: let us therefore rejoice and be
 thankful. Nay, which is a far greater mercy,
 we are free from the unsupportable burthen of an
 accusing, tormenting Conscience: a misery that
 none can bear, and therefore let us praise him
 for his preventing grace; and say, every mis-
 ery that I miss, is a new mercy: Nay, let me
 tell you there be many that have forty times our
 Estates, that would give the greatest part of it
 to be healthful and chearful like us; who with
 the expence of a little money have eat, and
 drank, and laugh, and Angled, and sung,
 and slept securely; and rose next day, and cast
 away care, and sung, and laugh, and Angled
 again: which are blessings, rich men cannot
 purchase with all their money. Let me tell you
 Scholar: I have a rich Neighbour, that is al-
 ways so busie, that he has no leasure to laugh;
 the whole business of his life, is to get money,
 and more money, that he may still get more and
 more money; he is still drudging on; and says,
 that Solomon says, the diligent hand maketh
 rich:*

rich: and 'tis true indeed, but he considers not, that 'tis not in the power of riches to make a man happy: for, it was wisely said by a man of great observation, that there be as many miseries beyond riches, as on this side them: and yet God deliver us from pinching poverty; and grant, that having a competency, we may be content and thankful. Let not us repine, or so much as think the gifts of God unequally dealt, if we see another abound with riches, when as God knows, the cares that are the keys that keep those riches, hang often so heavily at the rich mans girdle, that they clog him with weary days and restless nights, even when others sleep quietly. We see but the outside of the rich mans happiness: few consider him to be like the Silk-worm, that when she seems to play, is at the very same time spinning her own bowels, and consuming her self. And this many rich men do; loading themselves with corroding cares, to keep what they have (probably) unconscionably got. Let us therefore be thankful for health and a competence; and above all, for a quiet Conscience.

Let me tell you, Scholar, that Diogenes walked on a day with his friend to see a Country Fair; where he saw, Ribbins, and Looking-glasses, and Nut-crackers, and Fiddles, and Hobbyhorses, and many other gim-cracks; and having observ'd them, and all the other finnimbruns that make a compleat Country Fair: He said to his friend,
Lord!

Lord! How many things are there in this world of which *Diogenes* hath no need? And truly, it is so, or might be so, with very many who vex, and toyl themselves, to get what they have no need of. Can any man charge God, that he hath not given him enough to make his life happy? no doubtless: for, nature is content with a little: and yet, you shall hardly meet with a man, that complains not of some want, though he indeed wants nothing but his will, it may be, nothing but his will of his poor Neighbour, for not worshipping, or not flattering him, and thus, when we might be happy and quiet, we create trouble to our selves. I have heard of of a man, that was angry with himself because he was no taller, and of a Woman, that broke her Looking-glass because it would not shew her face to be as young and handsom as her next Neighbours was. And, I knew another, to whom God had given health, and plenty, but, a Wife that nature had made peevish, and, her Husbonds riches had made Purse-proud, and must because she was rich (and for no other vertue) sit in the highest Pew in the Church: which being denied her; she engag'd her Husband into a contention for it, and at last, into a Law-suit with a dogged Neighbour, who was as rich as he, and, had a Wife as peevish and Purse-proud as the other: and this Law suit, begot higher oppositions, and actionable words, and more vexations, and Law-
suits;

Suits : for you must remember that both were rich, and must therefore have their wills. Well, this wilful Purse-proud Law-suit lasted during the life of the first Husband: after which his wife vext, and chid, and chid and vext, till she also chid and vext herself into her grave, and so the wealth of these poor rich people was curst into a punishment, because they wanted meek and thankful hearts; for those only can make us happy. I knew a man that had health and riches, and several houses all beautiful and ready furnished, and would often trouble himself and Family to be removing from one house to another; and being ask'd by a friend, why he remov'd so often from one house to another? replied, it was to find content in some one of them: but, his friend knowing his temper, told him, if he would find content in any of his houses? he must leave himself behind him; for, content will never dwell but in a meek and quiet soul. And this may appear if we read and consider what our Saviour says in St. Matthews Gospel: for he there says, — Blessed be the merciful for they shall obtain mercy. — Blessed be the pure in heart; for they shall see God. — Blessed be the poor in Spirit; for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven. And — blessed be the meek; for they shall possess the earth. — not that the meek shall not also obtain mercy, and see God, and be comforted, and at last come to the King-

T

dom

266 **The Compleat Angler, Part. I.**

dom of Heaven; but in the mean time he (and he only) possesses the earth as he goes toward that Kingdom of Heaven, by being humble and cheerful, and content with what his good God has allotted him: he has no turbulent, repining, vexatious thoughts that he deserves better: nor is vexed when he sees others possess of more honour or more riches than his wise God has allotted for his share; but he possesses what he has with a meek and contented quietness: such a quietness as makes his very dreams pleasing both to God and himself.

My honest Scholar, all this is told to incline you to thankfulness; and to incline you the more, let me tell you, that though the Prophet David was guilty of Murder and Adultery, and many other of the most deadly sins; yet he was said to be a man after Gods own heart, because he abounded more with thankfulness than any other that is mentioned in holy Scripture, as may appear in his book of Psalms; where there is such a Commixture of his confessing of his sins and unworthiness, and such thankfulness for Gods pardon and mercies, as did make him to be accounted even by God himself, to be a man after his own heart, and let us in that, labour to be as like him as we can; let not the blessings we receive daily from God, make us not to value, or not praise him because they be common; let not us forget to praise him for the innocent mirth and pleasure, we have met

Chap. 21. The Compleat Angler. 267

met with since we met together, what would a blind man give to see the pleasant Rivers and meadows and flowers and fountains, that we have met with since we met together? I have been told, that if a man that was born blind could obtain to have his sight for but only one hour, during his whole life, and should at the first opening of his eyes, fix his sight upon the Sun when it was in his full glory, either at the rising or setting of it; he would be so transported, and amazed, and so admire the glory of it, that he would not willingly turn his eyes from that first ravishing object, to behold all the other various beauties this world could present to him. And this, and many other like blessings we enjoy daily; and for most of them, because they be so common, most men forget to pay their praises but let not us, because it is a Sacrifice so pleasing to him that made that Sun, and us, and still protects us, and gives us flowers and show-ers and stomachs and meat and content and lea-sure to go a fishing.

Well Scholar, I have almost tir'd myself, and I fear more than almost tir'd you: but I now see Tottenham High-Cross, and our short walk thither shall put a period to my too long discourse, in which, my meaning was, and is, to plant that in your mind, with which I labour to possess my own Soul: that is; a meek and thankful heart. And, to that end, I have shew'd you,

T 2

that

that riches without them, do not make any man happy. But let me tell you, that riches with them remove many fears, and cares, and therefore my advice is, that you endeavour to be honestly rich; or, contentedly poor: but, be sure, that your riches be justly got, or you spoil all. For, it is well said by Caussin, he that loses his Conscience, has nothing left that is worth keeping. Therefore be sure you look to that. And, in the next place, look to your health: and if you have it praise God, and value it next to a good Conscience; for, health is the second blessing that we Mortals are capable of: a blessing, that money cannot buy, and therefore value it, and be thankful for it. As for money (which may be said to be the third blessing) neglect it not: but note, that there is no necessity of being rich: for I told you, there be as many miseries beyond riches as on this side them: and, if you have a competence, enjoy it with a meek, chearful, thankful heart. I will tell you Scholar, I have heard a grave Divine say, that God has two dwellings; one in Heaven; and, the other in a meek and thankful heart. Which Almighty God grant to me, and to my honest Scholar: and so, you are welcom to Tottenham High-Cross.

Venat. Well Master, I thank you for all your good directions, but, for none more than this last of thankfulness, which I hope I shall never forget. And pray let's now rest our selves

in

in this sweet shady Arbour, which nature herself has woven with her own fine fingers; 'tis such a contexture of *Woodbines*, *Sweetbrier*, *Jessamine*, and *Mirtle*; and so interwoven, as will secure us both from the Suns violent heat; and from the approaching shower, and being fate down I will requite a part of your courtesies with a bottle of *Sack*, *Milk*, *Oranges*, and *Sugar*; which all put together, make a drink like *Nectar*, indeed too good for any body but us *Anglers*: and so Master, here is a full glass to you of that liquor, and when you have pledged me, I will repeat the Verses which I promised you; it is a Copy printed amongst some of Sir *Henry Wottons*: and doubtless made either by him, or by a lover of Angling: Come Master, now drink a glass to me, and then I will pledge you, and fall to my repetition; it is a description of such *Country-Recreations* as I have enjoyed since I had the happiness to fall into your company.

Quivering fears, heart-tearing cares,

Anxious sighs, untimely tears,

Flye, flye to Courts,

Flye to fond worldlings sports

Where strain'd Sardonical smiles are glosing still,

And grief is forc'd to laugh against her will.

Where mirth's but mummery,

And sorrows only real be.

T 3

Fly

Fly from our Country-pastimes, fly,
 Sad troops of humane misery,
 Come serene looks,
 Clear as the chrystal Brooks.
 Or the pure azur'd heaven that smiles to see
 The rich attendance on our poverty;
 Peace and a secure mind,
 Which all men seek, we only find.

'Abused Mortals, did you know
 Where joy, hearts-ease and comforts grow?
 You'l'd scorn proud Towers,
 And seek them in these Bowers, (Shake,
 Where winds sometimes our woods perhaps may
 But blustering care could never tempest make,
 Nor murmurs ere come nigh us,
 Saving, of fountains that glide by us.

Here's no fantastick Mask nor Dance,
 But of our Kids that frisk and prance;
 Nor wars are seen,
 Unless upon the green
 Two harmless Lambs are butting one the other,
 Which done, both bleating run each to his Mother.
 And wounds are never found,
 Save what the plough-share gives the ground.

Here are no entrapping baits
 To hasten too, too hasty fates,

Unless

*Unless it be
The fond credulity
Of silly fish, which (worldling like) still look
Upon the bait, but never on the hook:
Nor envy, 'nless among
The birds for price of their sweet song.*

*Go, let the diving Negro seek
For Gems hid in some forlorn creek:
We all pearls scorn,
Save what the dewy morn
Congeals upon each little spire of grass,
Which careless shepherds beat down as they pass:
And gold ne're here appears,
Save what the yellow Ceres bears.*

*Blest silent groves, oh may you be
For ever mirths best nursery!
May pure contents
For ever pitch their tents (mountains,
Upon these downs, these meads, these rocks, these
And Peace still slumber by these purling fountains:
Which we may every year
Meet when we come a fishing here.*

Pisc. Trust me (Scholar) I thank you heartily for these Verses, they be choicely good, and doubtless made by a lover of Angling: Come, now, drink a glass to me, and I will requite you with another very good Copy: it is a Fare-

well to the vanities of the World, and some say written by Sir Harry Wotton, who I told you was an excellent Angler. But let them be writ by whom they will, he that writ them had a brave soul, and must needs be possest with happy thoughts at the time of their composition :

*Farewell ye gilded follies, pleasing troubles ;
 Farewell ye honour'd rags, ye glorious bubbles :
 Fame's but a hollow eccho, Gold, pure clay ;
 Honour the darling but of one short day.
 Beauty (th' eyes idol) but a damask'd skin ;
 State but a golden prison, to live in
 And torture free-born minds : embroydred Trains
 Meerly but pageants for proud swelling veins :
 And Blood Ally'd to Greatness is alone
 Inherited, not purchas'd, nor our own. (Birth
 Fame, Honour, Beauty, State, Train, Blood and
 Are but the fading Blossoms of the earth.*

*I would be great, but that the Sun doth still
 Level his rayes against the rising bill :
 I would be high, but see the proudest Oak
 Most subject to the rending Thunder-stroak :
 I would be rich, but see men (too unkind)
 Dig in the bowels of the richest mind :
 I would be wise, but that I often see
 The Fox suspected, whilst the As goes free :
 I would be fair, but see the fair and proud,
 (Like the bright Sun) oft setting in a cloud :*

Chap. 21. *The Compleat Angler.* 273

*I would be poor, but know the humble grass
Still trampled on by each unworthy Ass :
Rich hated : wise suspected : scorn'd if poor :
Great fear'd : fair tempted : high still envi'd more :
I have wish'd all ; but now I wish for neither ;
Great, high, rich, wise, nor fair ; poor Ile be ra-
(ther.*

*Would the world now adopt me for her heir ?
Would Beauties Queen entitle me the Fair ?
Fame speak me Fortunes Minion ? could I vie
Angels with India, with a speaking eye (dumb
Command bare heads, bow'd knees, strike Justice
As well as blind and lame, or give a tongue
To stones by Epitaphs : be call'd great Master
In the loose Rhimes of every Poetaster ?*

*Could I be more than any man that lives,
Great, fair, rich, wise all in Superlatives :
Yet I more freely would these gifts resign,
Then ever fortune would have made them mine,
And hold one minute of this holy leaseure.
Beyond the riches of this empty pleasure.*

*Welcome pure thoughts, welcome ye silent Groves,
These guests, these courts my soul most dearly loves :
Now the wing'd people of the skie shall sing
My chearful Anthems to the glad som Spring :
A Pray'r-Book now, shall be my looking-glass,
In which I will adore sweet Vertue's face.
Here dwell no hateful looks, no Palace cares,
No broken Vows dwell here, nor pale-fac'd Fears :
Then*

*Then here I'll sit, and sigh my hot loves folly,
 And learn't affect an holy melancholy,
 And if Contentment be a stranger then,
 I'll ne're look for it, but in heaven agen.*

Venat. Well Master ! these Verses be worthy to keep a room in every mans memory. I thank you for them ; and I thank you for your many instructions, which (God willing) I will not forget : and as *St. Austin* in his Confessions (*book 4. chap. 3.*) commemorates the kindness of his friend *Verecundus*, for lending him and his companion a *Country-house*, because there they rested and enjoyed themselves free from the troubles of the world ; so, having had the like advantage, both by your conversation, and the Art you have taught me, I ought ever to do the like : for indeed, your company and discourse have been so useful and pleasant, that I may truly say, *I have only lived since I enjoyed them, and turned Angler, and not before.* Nevertheless, here I must part with you, here in this now sad place where I was so happy as first to meet you : But I shall long for the ninth of *May*, for then I hope again to enjoy your beloved company at the appointed time and place. And now I wish for some *somniferous potion*, that might force me to sleep away the intermitted time, which will pass away with me as tediously, as it does with men in sorrow ; nevertheless I will make it as short as I can by my
hopes

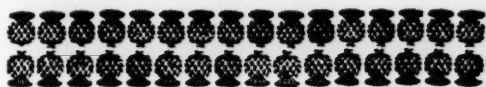
Chap. 21. The Compleat Angler. 275

hopes and wishes. And my good Master, I will not forget the doctrine which you told me *Socrates* taught his Scholars, *That they should not think to be honoured so much for being Philosophers, as to honour Philosophy by their vertuous lives.* You advised me to the like concerning *Angling*, and I will endeavour to do so, and to live like those many *worthy men*, of which you made mention in the former part of your discourse. This is my firm resolution; and as a pious man advised his friend, *That to beget Mortification he should frequent Churches; and view Monuments, and Charnel-houses, and then and there consider, how many dead bones time had pil'd up at the gates of death.* So when I would beget content, and increase confidence in the *Power, and Wisdom, and Providence* of Almighty God, I will walk the *Meadows* by some gliding stream, and there contemplate the *Lillies* that take no care, and those very many other various little living *creatures*, that are not only created but fed (mans knows not how) by the goodness of the God of *Nature*, and therefore trust in him. This is my purpose: and so, *Let every thing that hath breath praise the Lord.* And let the blessing of *St. Peters* Master be with mine.

Pisc. And upon all that are lovers of *Vertue*; and dare trust in his *providence*, and be *quiet*, and go a *Angling*.

Study to be quiet, 1 Thes. 4. 11.

FINIS.



A SHORT
DISCOURSE

By way of

POST-SCRIPT,

Touching the

LAWES
OF
ANGLING.

My good Friend,



Cannot but tender my particular
thanks to you, for that you have
been pleased by these Editions of
your Complete Angler, freely to
dispende your dear-bought Ex-
periences to all the lovers of that
Art, and have thereby so excellently vindicated
the Legality thereof, as to deserve approbation,
that

The Lawes of Angling.

that if I should go about to say more in that behalf, it indeed were to light a Candle to the Sun: But since all pleasures (though never so innocent in themselves) lose that stamp, when they are either pursued with inordinate affections, or to the prejudice of another; therefore as to the former, every man ought to endeavour, though a serious consideration of the vanity of worldly contentments, to moderate his affections thereunto, whereby they may be made of excellent use, as some poisons allayed are in Physick: And as to the latter, we are to have recourse to the known Lawes, ignorance whereof excuseth no man, and therefore by their directions so to square our actions, that we hurt no man, but keep close to that golden Rule, To do to all men, as we would our selves be done unto.

Now concerning the Art of Angling, we may conclude, Sir, that as you have proved it to be of great Antiquity, so I find it favoured by the Lawes of this Kingdom; for where provision is made by our Statutes primo Elizab. cap. 17. against taking Fish by Nets that be not of such and such a size there set down, yet, those Lawmakers had so much respect to Anglers, as to except them; and leave them at liberty to catch as big as they could, and as little as they would catch. And yet though this Apostolical Recreation be
simple

The Lawes of Angling.

Simply in it self lawfull, yet no man can go upon another mans ground to fish, without his license, but that he is a Trespasser; but if a man have license to enter into a Close or Ground for such a space of time, there, though he practise Angling all that time, he is not a Trespasser, because his fishing is no abuse of his license: but this is to be understood of running Streams, and not of Ponds or Standing Pools; for in case of a Pond or Standing Pool, the Owner thereof hath a property in the fish, and they are so far said to be his, that he may have Trespass for the fish against any one that shall take them without his license, though it be upon a Common, or adjoining to the Kings High-way, or adjoining to another mans ground, who gives license: But in case of a River, where one or more have libera piscaria, only it is otherwise, for there the fishes are said to be *feræ naturæ*, and the taking of them with an Angle is not Trespass for that no man is said to have a property in them till he have caught them: and then it is a Trespass for any to take them from him: but this is not to be understood of fishes confined to a mans own ground by gates or otherwise, so that they cannot pass away, but may be taken out or put in at pleasure, for in that case the party hath a property in them, as in the case of a Standing Pool.

But

276 The Law of Angling. Part. I.

But where any one hath separalis piscaria, as in Child and Greenhills Case in Tr. 15. Car. 1. Trin. 15. Car. 1. in the Kings Bench, there it seemeth that the fish may be said to be his, because no man else may take them whilst they are within his severall fishing: therefore what is meant by a severall fishing is necessary to be considered: and though the difference between a Free-fishing, and a severall fishing be often treated of in the antient books of the Law, and some Opinions will have the difference to be great, and others small or nothing at all; yet the certainest definition of a severall fishing is, where one hath the Royalty, and oweth the ground on each side of the water which agreeth with

Mich. 17. E. 4. 6. Sir William Calthrops Case,
& where an Action was brought
Pasc. 18. E. 4. 4. by him against another for
fishing in his severall fishing,
etc. to which the Defendant pleaded, That the place wherein the Trespass was supposed to be done, contained ten Perches of Land in length, and twenty Perches in breadth, which was his own Free hold at the time when the Trespass was supposed to be done, and that he fished there as was lawful for him to do, and this was adjudged a good Plea by the whole Court, and upon argument in that very Case it was agreed, that no man could have

The Lawes of Angling.

have a federal fishing but in his own soil; and that free fishing may be in the soil of another man, which was all agreed unto by Littleton our famous English Lawyer. So that from all this may be drawn this short conclusion, That if the Angler take care that he offend not with his feet, there is no great danger of his hands.

But there are some covetous rigid persons, whose souls hold no sympathy with those of the innocent Anglers, having either got to be Lords of Royalties, or owners of Lands adjoining to Rivers, and these do, by some apted clownish nature and education for the purpose, insult and domineer over the innocent Angler, beating him, breaking his Rod, or at least taking it from him, and sometimes imprisoning his person as if he were a Felon. Whereas a true-bred Gentleman scorns those spider-like attempts, and will rather refresh a civil Stranger at his Table, than warn him from coming on his ground upon so innocent an occasion. It would therefore be considered how far such furious disorders are warranted by the Law and what the Angler may (in case of such violence) do in defence of himself: If I come upon another mans ground without his license, or the license of the Law, I am a Trespasser, for which the owner may have an Action of Trespass against me, and if I con-

U

tinue

The Laws of Angling.

tinue there after warning, to depart by the
 owner, or his servant thereunto authoris'd,
 the owner, or his servant by his command,
 may put me off by force, but not beat me, but
 in case of resistance by me, for then I (by re-
 sisting) make the assault; but if he beat me,
 I not resisting, in that case, he makes the as-
 sault, and I may beat him in defence of my
 self, and to free my self from his violence: and
 in case I shall leave my Rod behind in his
 ground, he may take it damage feasant, but
 he can neither take it from my person by
 force, nor break it, but he is a Trespasser to
 me: Which seems clear by the case of Reynell
 Mich. 7. Car. 1. and Champernoon, where Rey-
 nell brought an Action of Tres-
 pass against Champernoon for taking and cut-
 ting his Nets, the Defendant justified for
 that he was seised in fee of a several fishing,
 and that the Plaintiff with others endeavou-
 red to row upon his water, and with the Nets
 to catch his fish, and that for the safe-guard
 of his fishing he took and cut the Nets and
 Dars; to which plea the Plaintiff demurred;
 and there it was adjudged by the whole
 Court, that he could not by such colour cut
 the Nets and Dars; and judgment was there-
 upon given for the Plaintiff.

Doubtless our Fore-fathers well conside-
 red, that man to man was a wolf, and there-
 fore

The Lawes of Angling.

foze made good Lawes to keep us from debouring one another, and amongst the rest a very good Statute was made in the thye and fortyeth year of Queen Elizabeth, whereby it is provided, that in personal Actions in the Courts at Westminster, (being not for Land or Battery) when it shall appear to the Judges, (and be so by them signified) that the debt or damages to be recovered amount not to the sum of forty Shillings or above, the said Judges shall award to the Plaintiff no more costs than damages, but less at their discretion.

And now with my acknowledgment of the advantage I have had both by your friendship and your book; I wish nothing may ever be that looks like an alteration in the first; nor any thing in the last, unless, by reason of the useful pleasure of it, you had called it The Arcadia of Angling; for it deserves that Title, and I would deserve the continuance of your Friendship.

THE CONTENTS.

Chapter I.

- A** Conference betwixt an Angler, a Faulkner,
and a Hunter, each commending his Re-
creation. pag. 1.
Chap. 2. Observations of the Otter and Chub. p. 50.
Chap. 3. How to fish for, and to dress the Cha-
vender or Chub. 61.
Chap. 4. Observations of the nature and breeding
of the Trout, and how to fish for him. And the
Milk-maids song. p. 68.
Chap. 5. More directions how to fish for, and how
to make the Trout an artificial minnow and flye:
and some merriment. p. 85.
Chap. 6. Observations of the Umber or Grayling,
and directions how to fish for them. p. 137.
Chap. 7. Observations of the Salmon, with di-
rections how to fish for him. p. 140.
Chap. 8. Observations of the Luce or Pike, with
directions how to fish for him. p. 149.
Chap. 9. Observations of the Carp, with directions
how to fish for him. p. 165.
Chap.

The Contents.

- Chap. 10. *Observations of the Bream, and directions how to fish for him.* 177.
- Chap. 11. *Observations of the Tench, and advice how to angle for him.* p. 186.
- Chap. 12. *Observations of the Pearck, and directions how to fish for him.* 190.
- Chap. 13. *Observations of the Eel, and other fish that want scales, and how to fish for them.* p. 196
- Chap. 14. *Observations of the Barbel, and directions how to fish for him.* p. 207.
- Chap. 15. *Observations of the Gudgion, the Ruff, and the Bleak, and how to fish for them.* p. 213.
- Chap. 16. *Is of nothing.* p. 216.
- Chap. 17. *Of Roach and Dace, and how to fish for them. And of Cadis.* p. 229.
- Chap. 18. *Of the Minnow or Penk, of the Loach, and of the Bull-head or Millers-thumb.* p. 242.
- Chap. 19. *Of several Rivers, and some observations of fish.* p. 248.
- Chap. 20. *Of Fish-ponds, and how to order them.* p. 253.
- Chap. 21. *Directions for making of a Line, and for the colouring of both Red and Line.* p. 257.

FINIS.

April 5.
1676.

Licensed,

Roger L'Estrange.

T H E
COMPLEAT ANGLER.

Being Instructions how to angle for a
TROUT or GRAYLING in a clear
Stream.

PART. II.



*Qui mihi non credit, faciat licet ipse periculum:
Et fuerit scriptis aequior ille meis.*

L O N D O N,
Printed for Richard Marriott, and Henry Brome
in St. Paul's Church-yard, MDCLXXVI.

signs of





T O
My most Worthy
FATHER and FRIEND,
Mr. IZAAK WALTON
The Elder.

S I R,



*Being you were pleased some
years past, to grant me
your free leave to do what
I have here attempted; and
observing you never retract any promise
when made in favour even of your mea-*

A 3 nest

The Epistle Dedicatory.

nest friends ; I accordingly expect to see these following particular Directions for the taking of a Trout, to wait upon your better and more general Rules for all sorts of Angling : And, though mine be neither so perfect, so well digested, nor indeed so handsomely coucht as they might have been, in so long a time as since your leave was granted ; yet, I dare affirm them to be generally true. And they had appeared too in something a neater dress, but that I was surpriz'd with the suddain news of a suddain new Edition of your Compleat Angler ; so that, having but a little more than ten days time to turn me in, and rub up my memory (for in truth I have not in all this long time, though
I

The Epistle Dedicatory.

I have often thought on't, and almost as often resolv'd to go presently about it) I was forc't upon the instant to scribble what I here present you : which I have also endeavour'd to accommodate to your own Method. And, if mine be clear enough for the honest Brothers of the Angle readily to understand; (which is the only thing I aim at) then I have my end; and shall need to make no further Apology; a writing of this kind, not requiring (if I were Master of any such thing) any Eloquence to set it off, or recommend it; so that if you, in your better Judgment, or kindness rather, can allow it passable for a thing of this nature; You will then do me honour if the Cypher fixt and carv'd in the front
of

The Epistle Dedicatory.

of my little fishing-house may be here explained: And, to permit me to attend you in publick, who in private, have ever been, am, and ever resolve to be

Sir,

Your most affectionate

Son and Servant

*Berisford 10th.
of March 167 $\frac{1}{2}$.*

Charles Cotton.



THE
COMPLEAT ANGLER;
OR,
The Contemplative Man's
Recreation.

PART. II.

CHAP. I.

Piscator Junior & Viator.

PISCAT. You are happily overtaken Sir ; may a man be so bold as to enquire how far you travel this way ?

Viator. Yes sure Sir very freely ; though it be a question I cannot very well resolve you ; as not knowing my self how far it is to *Ashborn*, where I intend to night to take up my Inn.

Piscat. Why then Sir, seeing I perceive you

B

to

2 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

to be a Stranger in these parts ; I shall take upon me to inform you, that from the Town you last came through, call'd *Brelsford*, it is five miles, and you are not yet above half a mile on this side.

Viat. So much ! I was told it was but ten miles from *Derby*, and methinks I have rode almost so far already.

Piscat. O Sir, find no fault with large measure of good Land, which *Derby-shire* abounds in, as much as most Counties of *England*.

Viat. It may be so, and good Land I confess affords a pleasant prospect : but by your good leave Sir, large measure of foul way is not altogether so acceptable.

Piscat. True Sir, but the foul way serves to justify the fertility of the soyl ; according to the Proverb : *There is good Land, where there is foul way* ; and is of good use to inform you of the Riches of the Country you are come into, and of its continual Travel, and Traffick to the Country Town you came from ; which is also very observable by the fulness of its Road, and the loaden Horses you meet every where upon the way.

Viat. well Sir, I will be content to think as well of your Country, as you would desire, and I shall have a great deal of reason both to think, and to speak very well of you, If I may obtain the happiness of your company to the fore-

Chap. 1. The Compleat Angler. 3

forementioned place, provided your affairs lead you that way, and that they will permit you to slack your pace out of complacency to a Traveller utterly a Stranger in these parts, and who am still to wander further out of my own knowledg.

Piscat. Sir, you invite me to my own advantage, and I am ready to attend you: my way lying through that Town; but my business, that is, my home, some miles beyond it: however I shall have time enough to lodg you in your Quarters, and afterwards to perform my own Journey. In the mean time may I be so bold as to enquire the end of your Journey.

Viat. 'Tis into *Lancashire* Sir, and about some business of concern to a near Relation of mine: for I assure you, I do not use to take so long Journeys, as from *Essex* upon the single account of pleasure.

Piscat. From thence Sir! I do not then wonder you should appear dissatisfied with the length of the Miles, and the foulness of the way: though I am sorry you should begin to quarrel with them so soon; for, believe me Sir, you will find the Miles much longer, and the way much worse before you come to your Journeys end.

Viat. Why truly Sir for that, I am prepar'd to expect the worst; but methinks the way is

4 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

mended since I had the good fortune to fall into your good company.

Piscat. You are not oblig'd to my company for that: but because you are already past the worst, and the greatest part of your way to your Lodging.

Viat. I am very glad to hear it, both for the ease of my self, and my Horse; but especially because I may then expect a freer enjoyment of your conversation; though the shortness of the way will, I fear, make me lose it the sooner.

Piscat. That Sir is not worth your care; and I am sure you deserve much better, for being content with so ill company: but we have already talkt away two Miles of your Journey; for from the Brook before us, that runs at the foot of this Sandy Hill, you have but three Miles to *Ashborn*.

Viat. I meet every where in this Country with these little Brooks, and they look as if they were full of Fish; have they not Trouts in them?

Piscat. That is a question, which is to be excus'd in a Stranger as you are; otherwise, give me leave to tell you, it would seem a kind of affront to our Country, to make a doubt of what we pretend to be famous for, next, if not before, our Malt, Wool, Lead, and Cole; for you are to understand, that we think we have

as

Chap. 1. The Compleat Angler. 5

as many fine Rivers, Rivulets, and Brooks, as any Country whatever, and they are all full of Trouts, and some of them the best (it is said) by many degrees in *England*.

Viat. I was first Sir in love with you, and now shall be so enamour'd of your Country by this account you give me of it, as to wish myself a *Derby-shire* Man, or at least that I might live in it: for you must know I am a pretender to the Angle, and doubtless a Trout affords the most pleasure to the Angler, of any sort of Fish whatever; and the best Trouts, must needs make the best sport: But this Brook, and some others I have met with upon this way, are too full of Wood for that recreation.

Piscat. This Sir! why this, and several others like it, which you have pass, and some that you are like to pass, have scarce any name amongst us: but we can shew you as fine Rivers, and as clear from wood, or any other encumbrance to hinder an Angler, as any you ever saw; and for clear, beautiful streams, *Hants*hire itself, by Mr. *Izaak Walton's* good leave, can shew none such; nor I think and Country in *Europe*.

Viat. You go far Sir in the praise of your Country Rivers, and I perceive have read Mr *Walton's Compleat Angler* by your naming of *Hants*hire, and I pray what is your opinion of that Book?

B 3

Pisca.

6 The Compleat Angler. Part. II.

Piscat. My Opinion of Mr. *Walton's* Book is the same with every Man's, that understands any thing of the Art of Angling, that it is an excellent good one, and that the forementioned Gentleman understands as much of Fish, and Fishing as any Man living: but I must tell you further, that I have the happiness to know his person, and to be intimately acquainted with him, and in him to know the worthiest Man, and to enjoy the best, and the truest Friend any Man ever had: nay, I shall yet acquaint you further, that he gives me leave to call him Father, and I hope is not yet ashamed to own me for his adopted Son.

Viat. In earnest Sir I am ravish'd to meet with a friend of Mr. *Izaak Walton's*, and one that does him so much right in so good and true a Character; for I must boast to you, that I have the good fortune to know him too, and came acquainted with him much after the same manner I do with you; that he was my Master who first taught me to love Angling, and then to become an Angler; and to be plain with you, I am the very Man decipher'd in his Book under the name of *Venator*, for I was wholly addicted to the Chace; till he taught me as good, a more quiet, innocent, and less dangerous diversion.

Piscat. Sir, I think my self happy in your acquaintance, and before we part shall entreat
leave

leave to embrace you; you have said enough to recommend you to my best opinion; for my Father *Walton* will be seen twice in no Man's company he does not like, and likes none but such as he believes to be very honest men, which is one of the best Arguments, or at least of the best Testimonies I have, that I either am, or that he thinks me one of those, seeing I have not yet found him weary of me.

Viat. You speak like a true Friend, and in doing so render your self worthy of his friendship. May I be so bold as to ask your name?

Piscat. Yes surely Sir, and if you please a much nicer question, my name is — and I intend to stay long enough in your company, if I find you do not dislike mine, to ask yours too. In the mean time, because we are now almost at *Ashborn*, I shall freely, and bluntly tell you, that I am a Brother of the Angle too, and peradventure can give you some instructions how to Angle for a Trout in a clear River, that my Father *Walton* himself will not disapprove, though he did either purposely omit, or did not remember them, when you, and he sat discoursing under the *Sycamore* Tree. And being you have already told me whether your Journey is intended, and that I am better acquainted with the Country than you are; I will heartily, and earnestly entreat, you will not think of staying at this Town: but go on with

me six Miles further to my House, where you shall be extreemly welcom; it is directly in your way, we have day enough to perform our Journey, & as you like your entertainment, you may there repose your self a day or two; or as many more as your occasions will permit, to recompence the trouble of so much a longer Journey.

Viat. Sir, you surprize me with so friendly an invitation upon so short acquaintance: but how advantagious soever it would be to me, and that my hast perhaps is not so great, but it might dispense with such a divertisement as I promise my self in your Company; yet I cannot in modesty accept your offer, & must therefore beg your pardon: I could otherwise, I confess be glad to wait upon you, if upon no other account but to talk of Mr. I. Walton, and to receive those instructions you say you are able to give me for the deceiving a Trout; in which art I will not deny, but that I have an ambition to be one of the greatest deceivers; though I cannot forbear freely to tell you, that I think it hard to say much more, than has been read to me upon that subject.

Piscat. well Sir, I grant that too; but you must know that the variety of Rivers, require different ways of Angling: however you shall have the best Rules I am able to give, and I will tell you nothing I have not made my self as certain of, as any Man can be in thirty years experience

Chap. 1. The Compleat Angler. 9

experience (for so long I have been a dabler in that art) and that if you please to stay a few days, you shall not in a very great measure see made good to you. But of that hereafter, and now, Sir, if I am not mistaken I have half overcome you; and that I may wholly conquer that modesty of yours, I will take upon me to be so familiar as to say, you must accept my invitation, which that you may the more easily be perswaded to do, I will tell you that my House stands upon the margin of one of the finest Rivers for Trouts, and grayling in *England*; that I have lately built a little Fishing House upon it, dedicated to Anglers, over the door of which you will see the two first Letters of my Father *Walton's* name and mine twitted in *Cypher*; * *as in the Title page.* that you shall lye in the same Bed he has sometimes been contented with, and have such Country entertainment, as my Friends sometimes accept, and be as welcome too, as the best Friend of them all.

Viat. No doubt Sir, but my Master *Walton* found good reason to be satisfied with his entertainment in your House; for you who are so friendly to a meer Stranger who deserves so little, must needs be exceedingly kind and free to him who deserves so much.

Piscat. Believe me, no! and such as are intimately acquainted with that Gentleman, know him

him to be a Man, who will not endure to be treated like a Stranger. So that his acceptance of my poor entertainments, has ever been a pure effect of his own humility, and good nature, and nothing else. But Sir, we are now going down the Spittle Hill into the Town, and therefore let me importune you suddainly to resolve, and most earnestly not to deny me.

Viat. In truth Sir, I am so overcome by your Bounty, that I find I cannot, but must render my self wholly to be dispos'd by you.

Piscat. Why that's heartily, and kindly spoken, and I as heartily thank you; and being you have abandon'd your self to my conduct, we will only call and drink a glass on Horseback at the *Talbot*, and away.

Viat. I attend you, but what pretty River is this, that runs under this Stone-Bridg? has it a name?

Piscat. Yes, 'Tis call'd *Henmore*, and has in it both Trout, and Grayling; but you will meet with one or two better anon. And so soon as we are past through the Town, I will endeavour by such discourse as best likes you to pass away the time, till you come to your ill Quarters.

Viat. we can talk of nothing with which I shall be more delighted than of Rivers and Angling.

Piscat. Let those be the Subjects then, but
we

Chap. 1. The Compleat Angler. 11

we are now come to the *Talbot*, what will you drink Sir, Ale, or Wine.

Viat. Nay, I am for the Country liquor, *Derby-shire* Ale, if you please; for a Man should not methinks come from *London* to drink Wine in the Peak.

Piscat. You are in the right; and yet let me tell you, you may drink worse *French-wine* in many Taverns in *London*, than they have sometimes at this House. What hoe! bring us a Flaggon of your best Ale, and now Sir my service to you, a good health to the honest Gentleman you know of, and you are welcome into the Peak.

Viat. I thank you Sir, and present you my service again, and to all the honest Brothers of the Angle.

Piscat. I'll pledg you Sir, so, there's for your Ale, and farewell. Come Sir, let us be going; for the sun grows low, and I would have you look about you as you ride; for you will see an odd Country, and sights, that will seem strange to you.

CHAP.

C H A P. II.

PISCAT. So Sir, now we are got to the top of the Hill out of Town, look about you, and tell me how you like the Country,

Viat. Bless me! what Mountains are here! are we not in *Wales*?

Piscat. No, but in almost as Mountainous a Country, and yet these Hills though high, bleak, and craggy, breed and feed good Beef, and Mutton above ground, and afford good store of Lead within.

Viat. They had need of all those commodities to make amends for the ill Land-schape: But I hope our way does not lye over any of these; for I dread a *precipice*.

Piscat. Believe me but it does, and down one especially, that will appear a little terrible to a Stranger; though the way is passable enough, and so passable, that we who are Natives of these Mountains, and acquainted with them, disdain to alight.

Viat. I hope though that a Forraigner is privileged to use his own discretion, and that I may have the liberty to entrust my neck to the fidelity of my own feet, rather than to those of my Horse; for I have no more at home.

Pisca.

Piscat. 'Twere hard else. But in the mean time I think 'twere best while this way is pretty even, to mend our pace, that we may be past that Hill I speak of, to the end your apprehension may not be doubled for want of light to discern the easiness of the descent.

Viat. I am willing to put forward as fast as my Beast will give me leave; though I fear nothing in your Company. But what pretty River is this we are going into?

Piscat. Why this Sir is called *Bently Brook*, and is full of very good Trout, and Grayling; but so encumbred with wood in many places, as is troublefom to an Angler.

Viat. Here are the prettiest Rivers, and the most of them in this Country that ever I saw; do you know how many you have in the Country?

Piscat. I know them all, and they were not hard to reckon, were it worth the trouble; but the most considerable of them I will presently name you. And to begin where we now are (for you must know we are now upon the very skirts of *Derby-shire*) we have first the River *Dove*, that we shall come to by and by, which divides the two Counties of *Derby*, and *Stafford* for many Miles together, and is so call'd from the swiftness of its current, and that swiftness occasion'd by the declivity of its course, and by being so straitned in that course
betwixt

betwixt the Rocks ; by which, and those very high ones, it is hereabout for four, or five Miles confin'd into a very narrow stream. A River that from a contemptible Fountain (which I can cover with my Hat) by the confluence of other Rivers, Rivulers, Brooks, and Rills, is swell'd, (before it fall into *Trent* a little below *Egginton*, (where it loses the name,) to such a breadth, and depth, as to be in most places navigable, were not the passage frequently interrupted with Fords, and Wires, and has as fertile Bancks, as any River in *England*, none excepted. And this River from its head for a Mile or two is a black water (as all the rest of the *Derby-shire* Rivers of note, originally are, for they all spring from the Mosses) but is in a few Miles travel so clarified by the addition of several clear, and very great springs (bigger than it self) which gush out of the Lime-stone Rocks, that before it comes to my House, which is but six, or seven Miles from its source, you will find it one of the purest Chry-stalline streams you have seen.

Viat. does *Trent* spring in these parts ?

Piscat. Yes in these parts ; not in this County, but somewhere towards the upper end of *Stafford-shire*, I think not far from a place call'd *Trentbam*, and thence runs down not far from *Stafford* to *Wolfsy* Bridg, and washing the skirts and purlews of the Forrest of *Needwood* runs
down

Chap. 2. The Compleat Angler. 15

down to *Burton* in the same County; thence it comes into this where we now are, and running by *Swarkston*, and *Dunnington*, receives *Derwent* at *Wildon*, and so to *Nottingham*, thence to *Newark*, and by *Gainsborough*, to *Kingston upon Hull*, where it takes the name of *Humber*, and thence falls into the Sea: but that the Map will best inform you.

Viat. Know you whence this River *Trent* derives its name?

Piscat. No indeed, and yet I have heard it often discours'd upon, when some have given its denomination from the forenamed *Trentham*; though that seems rather a derivative from it; others have said 'tis so call'd from thirty Rivers that fall into it, and there lose their names, which cannot be neither, because it carries that name from its very Fountain, before any other Rivers fall into it; others derive it from thirty several sorts of Fish that breed there, and that is the most likely derivation: But be it how it will, it is doubtless one of the finest Rivers in the World, and the most abounding with excellent Salmon, and all sorts of delicate Fish.

Viat. Pardon me Sir for tempting you into this digression, and then proceed to your other Rivers; for I am mightily delighted with this discourse.

Piscat. It was no interruption, but a very
sea-

seasonable question; for *Trent* is not only one of our *Derby-shire* Rivers, but the chief of them, and into which all the rest pay the Tribute of their names; which I had perhaps forgot to insist upon, being got to the other end of the County, had you not awoke my memory. But I will now proceed, and the next River of note (for I will take them as they lye Eastward from us) is the River *Wye*; I say of note, for we have two lesser betwixt us and it, namely *Lathkin*, and *Bradford*, of which *Lathkin* is by many degrees the purest, and most transparent stream, that I ever yet saw either at home or abroad, and breeds 'tis said, the reddest, and the best Trouts in *England*; but neither of these are to be reputed Rivers, being no better than great Springs. The River *Wye* then has its source near unto *Buxtons*, a Town some ten Miles from hence, famous for a warm Bath, and which you are to ride through in your way to *Manchester*, a black water too at the Fountain; but by the same reason with *Dove*, becomes very soon a most delicate clear River, and breeds admirable Trout, and Grayling, reputed by those, who, by living upon its Banks are partial to it, the best of any, and this, running down by *Ashford*, *Bakewell*, and *Haddon*; at a Town a little lower call'd *Rowley* falls into *Derwent*; and there loses its name. The next in order is *Derwent* a black water too, and that not only
from

from its Fountain, but quite through its progress, not having these Chrystal springs to wash and cleanse it, which the two forementioned have; but abounds with Trout and Grayling (such as they are) towards its source; and with *Salmon* below; and this River from the upper and utmost part of this County, where it springs, taking its course by *Chatsworth*, *Darby*, *Matlock*, *Derby*, *Burrow Ash*, and *Amberston*, falls into *Trent* at a place call'd *Wildon*, and there loses its name. The East side of this County of *Derby* is bounded by little inconsiderable Rivers, as *Amber*, *Enoway*, and the like, scarce worth naming, but Trouty too, and further we are not to enquire. But Sir I have carried you, as a Man may say by water, till we are now come to the descent of the formidable Hill I told you of, at the foot of which runs the River *Dave*, which I cannot but love above all the rest, and therefore prepare your self to be a little frightened.

Viat. Sir, I see you would fortifie me, that I should not shame my self: but I dare follow where you please to lead me; and I see no danger yet; for the descent methinks is thus far green, even, and easy.

Pise. You will like it worse presently when you come to the brow of the Hill, and now we are there, what think you?

Viat. What do I think? why I think
C it

18 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

it the strangest place that ever sure Men, and Horses went down, and that (if there be any safety at all) the safest way is to alight.

Pisc. I think so too for you, who are mounted upon a Beast not acquainted with these slippery stoness and though I frequently ride down, I will alight too to bear you company, and to lead you the way, and if you please my Man shall lead your Horse.

Viat. Marry Sir, and thank you too, for I am afraid I shall have enough to do to look to my self; and with my Horse in my hand should be in a double fear, both of breaking my neck, and my Horse's falling on me, for it is as steep as a penthouse.

Pisc. To look down from hence it appears so, I confess, but the path winds and turns, and will not be found so troublesome.

Viat. Would I were well down though! Hoist thee! there's one fair scape! these stones are so slippery I cannot stand! yet again! I think I were best lay my heeles in my neck, and tumble down.

Pisc. If you think your heeles will defend your neck, that is the way to be soon at the bottom; but give me your hand at this broad stone, and then the worst is past.

Viat. I thank you Sir, I am now past it, I can go my self. What's here the sign of a Bridg? Do you use to Travel with wheel-barrows in this Country?

Pisc.

Chap. 2. *The Compleat Angler.* 19

Pisc. Not that I ever saw Sir, why do you ask that question?

Viat. Because this Bridg certainly was made for nothing else; why a mouse can hardly go over it: 'Tis not two fingers broad.

Pisc. You are pleasant, and I am glad to see you so: but I have rid over the Bridg many a dark night.

Viat. Why according to the *French* proverb, and 'tis a good one among a great many of worse sense and sound that language abounds in, *Ce que Dieu garde, est bien gardé.* They, whom God takes care of are in safe protection: but, let me tell you, I would not ride over it for a thousand pounds, nor fall off it for two; and yet I think I dare venture on foot, though if you were not by to laugh at me: I should do it on all four.

Pisc. Well Sir, your mirth becomes you, and I am glad to see you safe over, and now you are welcome into *Stafford-shire.*

Viat. How *Stafford-shire*! what do I there trow! there is not a word of *Stafford-shire* in all my direction.

Pisc. You see you are betray'd into it; but it shall be in order to something that will make amends; and 'tis but an ill Mile or two out of your way.

Viat. I believe all things Sir, and doubt nothing. Is this your beloved River *Dove*. 'Tis

20 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

clear, and swift indeed, but a very little one.

Pisc. You see it here at the worst; we shall come to it anon again after two Miles riding, and so near as to lye upon the very Banks.

Viat. Would we were there once; but I hope we have no more of these Alpes to pass over.

Pisc. No, no Sir, only this ascent before you, which you see is not very uneasy, and then you will no more quarrel with your way.

Viat. Well, if ever I come to *London* (of which many a Man there, if he were in my place would make a question;) I will sit down and write my Travels, and like *Tom Coriate* print them at my own charge. Pray what do you call this Hill we come down?

Pisc. We call it *Hanson Toot*.

Viat. Why farewell *Hanson Toot*, I'll no more on thee; I'll go twenty Miles about first: Puh. I sweat, that my shirt sticks to my back.

Pisc. Come Sir, now we are up the Hill, and now how do you?

Viat. Why very well I humbly thank you Sir, and warm enough I assure you. What have we here, a Church! As I'me an honest Man a very pretty Church! Have you Churches in this Country Sir?

Pisc.

Chap.2. The Compleat Angler. 21.

Pisc. You see we have: but had you seen none, why should you make that doubt Sir?

Viat. Why, if you will not be angry, I'll tell you, I thought my self a Stage, or two beyond *Christendom*.

Pisc. Come, come, wee'l reconcile you to our Country before we part with you; if shewing you good sport with Angling will do't.

Viat. My respect to you, and that together may do much Sir; otherwise, to be plain with you, I do not find my self much inclin'd that way.

Pisc. Well Sir, your raillery upon our Mountains has brought us almost home; and look you where the same River of *Dove* has again met us to bid you welcome, and to invite you to a dish of Trouts to morrow.

Viat. Is this the same we saw at the foot of *Penmen-Maure*? It is much a finer River here.

Pisc. It will appear yet much finer to morrow. But look you Sir here appears the House, that is now like to be your Inn, for want of a better.

Viat. It appears on a suddain, but not before 'twas lookt for, it stands prettily, and here's wwood about it too, but so young, as appears to be of your ovvn planting.

Pisc. It is so, vvill it please you to alight Sir; and novv permit me after all your pains and dangers to take you in my arms, and to assure you, that you are infinitely vvelcome.

Viat. I thank you Sir, and am glad with all my heart I am here, for, in down right truth, I am exceeding weary.

Pisc. You will sleep so much the better ; you shall presently have a light supper, and to bed. Come, Sirs, lay the Cloth, and bring what you have presently, and let the Gentleman's Bed be made ready in the mean time in my Father *Waltons* Chamber ; and now Sir here is my service to you, and once more welcome.

Viat. I marry Sir this glaſs of good Sack has refresht me, and I'le make as bold with your meat ; for the Trot has got me a good stomach.

Pisc. Come Sir fall to then, you see my little supper is always ready when I come home, and I'le make no Stranger of you.

Viat. That your Meal is so soon ready is a sign your Servants know your certain hours, Sir; I confess I did not expect it so soon ; but now 'tis here, you shall see I will make my self no Stranger.

Pisc. Much good do your heart, and I thank you for that friendly word : and now Sir my service to you in a Cup of *More-Lands* Ale:
for

Chap. 2. **The Compleat Angler.** 23

for you are now in the *More-Lands*, but within a spit, and a stride of the peak; fill my Friend his Glasse.

Viat. Believe me you have good Ale in the *More-Lands*; far better than that at *Ashborn*.

Pisc. That it may soon be: for *Ashborn* has (which is a kind of a Riddle) always in it the best Mault, and the worst Ale in *England*. Come take away, and bring us some pipes, and a bottle of Ale, and go to your own Suppers. Are you for this diet Sir?

Viat. Yes Sir, I am for one pipe of Tobacco; and I perceive yours is very good by the smell.

Pisc. The best I can get in *London* I assure you: But Sir, now you have thus far comply'd with my designs, as to take a troublesome Journey into an ill Country, only to satisfy me; how long may I hope to enjoy you?

Viat. Why truly Sir, as long as I conveniently can; and longer I think you would not have me.

Pisc. Not to your inconvenience by any means Sir, but I see you are weary, and therefore I will presently wait on you to your Chamber, where take Counsel of your pillow, and to morrow resolve me. Here take the lights, and pray follow them, Sir; Here you are like to lye, and now I have shew'd you

24 **The Compleat Angler. Part.II.**

your Lodging, I beseech you command any thing you want, and so I wish you good rest.

Viat. Good night Sir.

C H A P. III.

PISC. Good morrow Sir, what up and drest so early?

Viat. Yes Sir, I have been drest this half hour; for I rested so well, and have so great a mind either to take, or to see a Trout taken in your fine River, that I could no longer lye a bed.

Pisc. I am glad to see you so brisk this morning, and so eager of sport; though I must tell you, this day proves so calm, and the Sun rises so bright, as promises no great success to the Angler: but however we'll try, and one way or other we shall sure do something. What will you have to your breakfast, or what will you drink this Morning.

Viat. For Breakfast I never eat any, and for Drink am very indifferent; but if you please to call for a Glass of Ale, I'me for you; and let it be quickly if you please: for I long to see the little Fishing-house you spoke of, and to be at my Lesson.

Pisc.

Chap. 3. The Compleat Angler. 25

Pisc. Well *Sir*, You see the Ale is come without Calling ; for though I do not know yours, my people know my diet, which is always one Glas so soon as I am drest , and no more till Dinner , and so my Servants have served you.

Viat. My thanks, and now if you please let us look out this fine morning.

Pisc. With all my heart, Boy take the Key of my Fishing-house, and carry down those two Angle-Rods in the Hall window thither, with my Fish-pannier, Pouch, and landing Net, and stay you there till we come. Come *Sir* we'll walk after , where by the way I expect you should raise all the exceptions against our Country you can.

Viat. Nay *Sir*, do not think me so ill natur'd, nor so uncivil, I only made a little bold with it last night to divert you, and was only in jeast.

You were then in as good earnest as I am now with you : but had you been really angry at it, I could not blame you : For, to say the truth, it is not very taking at first sight : But look you, *Sir*, now you are abroad, does not the Sun shine as bright here as in *Essex*, *Middlesex*, or *Kent*, or any of your Southern Countries ?

Viat. 'Tis a delicate Morning indeed, and I now think this a marvellous pretty place.

Pisc.

26 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

Pisc. Whether you think so or no, you cannot oblige me more than to say so; and those of my friends who know my humour, and are so kind as to comply with it, usually flatter me that way. But look you *Sir*, now you are at the brink of the Hill, how do you like my River, the Vale it winds through like a Snake, and the scituation of my little Fishing-house?

Viat. Trust me 'tis all very fine, and the house seems at this distance a neat building.

Pisc. Good enough for that purpose; and here is a bowling Green too, close by it, so though I am my self no very good bowler, I am not totally devoted to my own pleasure; but that I have also some regard to other men's. And now *Sir* you are come to the door, pray walk in, and there we will sit, and talk as long as you please.

Viat. Stay, what's here over the door? *Pisc.*
** There is under this Motto, the Cifer mentioned in the Title Page and some part of the Fishing-house has been describ'd; but, the pleasantness of the River, Mountains, and Meadows about it, cannot; unless Sir Philip Sidney, or Mr. Cotton's Father were again alive to do it.*
*catoribus sacrum. * Why then I perceive I have some Title here, for I am one of them, though one of the worst, and here below it is the Cifer too you spoke of, and 'tis prettily contriv'd. Has my Master Walton ever been here to see it; for it seems new built?*

Pisc.

Chap. 3. The Compleat Angler. 27

Pisc. Yes he saw it cut in the stone before it was set up; but never in the posture it now stands: for the house was but building when he was last here, and not rais'd so high as the Arch of the dore, and I am afraid he will not see it yet; for he has lately writ me word he doubts his coming down this Summer, which I do assure you was the worst news he could possibly have sent me.

Viat. Men must sometimes mind their affairs to make more room for their pleasures; and 'tis odds he is as much displeas'd with the business, that keeps him from you, as you are that he comes not. But I am the most pleas'd with this little house of any thing I ever saw: It stands in a kind of *Peninsula* too, with a delicate clear River about it. I dare hardly go in, lest I should not like it so well within as without; but by your leave, I'll try. Why, this is better and better, fine lights, finely wainscoted, and all exceeding neat, with a Marble Table and all in the middle!

Pisc. Enough, Sir, enough, I have laid open to you the part where I can worst defend myself, and now you attaque me there. Come Boy set two Chairs, and whilst I am taking a Pipe of Tobacco, which is alwaies my Breakfast, we will, if you please, talk of some other Subject.

Viat.

28 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

Viat. None fitter then *Sir* for the time and place, than those Instructions you promis'd.

Pisc. I begin to doubt, by something I discover in you, whether I am able to instruct you, or no; though, if you are really a stranger to our clear *Northern Rivers* I still think I can; and therefore, since it is yet too early in the morning at this time of the year, to day being but the Seventh of *March*, to cast a Flie upon the water, if you will direct me what kind of Fishing for a Trout I shall read you a Lecture on, I am willing and ready to obey you.

Viat. Why *Sir*, if you will so far oblige me, and that it may not be too troublesome to you, I would entreat you would run through the whole body of it; and I will not conceal from you, that I am so far in love with you, your courtesie, and pretty Moreland Seat, as to resolve to stay with you long enough by Intervals (for I will not oppress you) to hear all you can say upon that Subject.

Pisc. You cannot oblige me more than by such a promise, and therefore without more Ceremony I will begin to tell you; that my Father *Walton* having read to you before, it would look like a presumption in me, and peradventure would do so in any other man, to pretend to give Lessons for angling after him, who I do really believe understands as much of it, at least as any man in *England*, did I not pre-
acquaint

Chap. 3. The Compleat Angler. 29

acquaint you, that I am not tempted to it by any vain opinion of my self, that I am able to give you better directions; but having from my Childhood pursued the recreation of angling in very clear Rivers (truly I think by much (some of them at least) the clearest in this Kingdom) and the manner of Angling here with us by reason of that exceeding clearness, being something different from the method commonly us'd in others, which by being not near so bright, admit of stronger tackle, and allow a nearer approach to the stream; I may peradventure give you some Instructions, that may be of use even in your own Rivers, and shall bring you acquainted with more Flies, and shew you how to make them, and with what dubbing too, than he has taken notice of in his *Compleat Angler*.

I beseech you Sir do, and if you will lend me your Steel, I will light a Pipe the while, for that is commonly my Breakfast in a morning too.

CHAP.

C H A P. IV.

PISC. Why then Sir, to begin methodically, as a Master in any Art should do (and I will not deny, but that I think my self a Master in this) I shall divide Angling for Trout or Grayling into these three ways,

*At the Top,
At the bottom, and
In the Middle.*

Which three ways, though they are all of them (as I shall hereafter endeavour to make it appear) in some sort common to both those kinds of Fish; yet are they not so generally and absolutely so, but that they will necessarily require a distinction, which in due place I will also give you.

*That which we call Angling at the top, is
with a Flie;
At the bottom with a ground-bait.
In the middle with a Minnow, or Ground-
bait.*

Angling

Chap. 4. The Compleat Angler. 31

Angling at the Top is of two sorts,

With a quick Flie:

or,

With an artificial Flie.

That we call Angling at the bottom is also of two sorts,

By hand:

or,

With a Cork, or Float.

That we call Angling in the middle is also of two sorts.

With a Minnow for a Trout:

or,

With a Ground-bait for a Grayling.

Of all which several sorts of Angling, I will, if you can have the patience to hear me, give you the best account I can.

Viat. The trouble will be yours, and mine the pleasure and the obligation: I beseech you therefore to proceed.

Pisc. Why then first of Flie-Fishing.

CHAP.

C H A P. V.

Of Flie-Fishing.

PISC. Flie-Fishing or Fishing at the top, is, as I said before, of two sorts,

With a natural and living Flie :

or,

With an artificial and made Flie.

First then of the natural Flie ; of which we generally use but two sorts , and those but in the two months of *May* and *June* only, namely the *Green Drake*, and the *Stone-Flie*; though I have made use of a third that way, called the *Chamblet-Flie* with very good success for *Grayling*, but never saw it angled with by any other after this manner, my Master only excepted, who did many years ago, and was one of the best Anglers, that ever I knew.

These are to be angled with, with a short Line, not much more than half the length of your Rod, if the air be still; or with a longer very near, or all out as long as your Rod, if you have any wind to carry it from you, and this way of Fishing we call *Daping*, *Dabbing* or *Dibbling*, wherein you are always to have your
Line

Chap 5. The Compleat Angler. 33

Line flying before you up or down the River as the wind serves, and to angle as near as you can to the bank of the same side whereon you stand, though where you see a Fish rise near you, you may guide your quick Flie over him, whether in the middle, or on the contrary side, and if you are pretty well out of sight, either by kneeling, or the Interposition of a bank, or bush, you may almost be sure to raise, and take him too, if it be presently done; the Fish will otherwise peradventure be remov'd to some other place, if it be in the still deeps, where he is always in motion, and roving up and down to look for prey, though in a stream, you may alwaies almost, especially if there be a good stone near, find him in the same place. Your Line ought in this Case to be three good hairs next the hook, both by reason you are in this kind of angling, to expect the biggest Fish, and also that wanting length to give him Line after he is struck, you must be forc't to tugg for't; to which I will also add, that not an Inch of your Line being to be suffered to touch the water in dibbling; it may be allow'd to be the stronger. I should now give you a Description of those Flies, their shape and colour, and then give you an account of their breeding, and withal shew you how to keep and use them; but shall defer that to their proper place and season.

D

Viat.

34. The Compleat Angler. Part. II.

Viat. In earnest, Sir, you discourse very rationally of this affair, and I am glad to find myself mistaken in you; for in plain truth I did not expect so much from you.

Pisc. Nay Sir, I can tell you a great deal more than this, and will conceal nothing from you. But I must now come to the second way of angling at the top, which is with an artificial Flie, which also I will shew you how to make before I have done, but first shall acquaint you, that with this you are to angle with a Line longer by a yard and a half, or sometimes two yards than your Rod, and with both this, and the other in a still day in the streams, in a breeze, that curls the water in the still deeps, where (excepting in *May* and *June*, that the best Trouts will lye in shallow streams to watch for prey, and even then too) you are like to hit the best Fish.

For the length of your Rod you are always to be govern'd by the breadth of the River you shall chuse to angle at; and for a Trout River, one of five or six yards long is commonly enough, and longer (though never so neatly and artificially made) it ought not to be, if you intend to Fish at ease, and if otherwise, where lies the sport?

Of these, the best that ever I saw are made in *York-shire*, which are all of one piece; that is to say, of several, six, eight, ten or twelve

twelve pieces, some neatly piec't, and ty'd together with fine thred below, and Silk above, as to make it taper, like a switch; and to ply with a true bent to your hand; and these are too light, being made of Fir wood, for two or three lengths, nearest to the hand, and of other wood nearer to the top, that a Man might very easily manage the longest of them that ever I saw, with one hand; and these when you have given over Angling for a season, being taken to pieces, and laid up in some dry place, may afterwards be set together again in their former postures, and will be as strait, sound, and good as the first hour they were made, and being laid in Oyl and colour according to your Master *Waltons* direction, will last many years.

The length of your line, to a Man that knows how to handle his Rod, and to cast it, is no manner of encumbrance, excepting in woody places, and in landing of a Fish, which every one that can afford to Angle for pleasure, has some body to do for him, and the length of line is a mighty advantage to the fishing at distance; and to fish *fine, and far off* is the first and principal Rule for Trout Angling.

Your Line in this case should never be less, nor ever exceed two hairs next to the hook, for one (though some I know will pretend to more Art, than their fellows) is indeed too

36 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

few, the least accident, with the finest hand being sufficient to break it : but he that cannot kill a Trout of twenty inches long with two, in a River clear of wood and weeds , as this and some others of ours are, deserves not the name of an Angler.

Now to have your whole line as it ought to be, two of the first lengths, nearest the hook, should be of two hairs a piece, the next three lengths above them of three, the next three above them of four, and so of five, and six, and seven, to the very top : by which means your Rod and tackle will in a manner be taper from your very hand to your hook ; your line will fall much better and straiter, and cast your Flie to any certain place to which the hand and eye shall direct it, with less weight and violence, that would otherwise circle the water, and fright away the fish.

In casting your line, do it always before you, and so that your flie may first fall upon the water, and as little of your line with it as is possible, though if the vvind be stiff, you will then of necessity be compell'd to drown a good part of your line to keep your flie in the water: and in casting your flie, you must aim at the further, or nearer Bank, as the wind serves your turn, which also vvill be with, and against you on the same side several times in an hour, as the River vvinds in its course, and
you

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 37

you will be forc't to Angle up and down by turns accordingly ; but are to endeavour, as much as you can, to have the wind evermore on your back, and always be sure to stand as far off the Bank as your length will give you leave when you throw to the contrary side, though when the wind will not permit you so to do, and that you are constrain'd to Angle on the same side whereon you stand, you must then stand on the very brink of the River, and cast your Flie at the utmost length of your Rod and Line, up or down the River as the gale serves.

It only remains, touching your Line, to enquire whether your two hairs next to the hook, are better twisted, or open ; and for that , I should declare that I think the open way the better, because it makes less shew in the water, but that I have found an inconvenience, or two, or three, that have made me almost weary of that way ; of which one is, that without dispute they are not so strong twisted, as open ; another, that they are not easily to be fastned of so exact an equal length in the arming, that the one will not cause the other to bagge, by which means a Man has but one hair, upon the matter, to trust to ; and the last is, that these loose flying hairs are not only more apt to catch upon every twig , or bent they meet with ; but moreover the

D 3 hook,

38 The Compleat Angler. Part. II.

hook, in falling upon the water, will very often rebound, and fly back betwixt the hairs, and there stick (which in a rough water especially, is not presently to be discern'd by the Angler) so as the point of the hook shall stand revers't, by which means your Flie swims backward, makes a much greater circle in the water, and till taken home to you, and set right, will never raise any Fish, or if it should, I am sure, but by a very extraordinary chance, can hit none.

Having done with both these ways of fishing at the top; the length of your Rod, and Line and all: I am next to teach you how to make a Flie; and afterwards of what dubbing you are to make the several Flies I shall hereafter name to you.

In making a Flie then (which is not a Hackle or Palmer Flie for of those, and their several kinds we shall have occasion to speak every Month in the Year) you are first to hold your hook fast betwixt the fore finger and thumb of your left hand, with the back of the shanck upwards, and the point towards your fingers end; then take a strong small silk of the colour of the Flie you intend to make, wax it well with wax of the same colour too (to which end you are always (by the way) to have wax of all colours about you) and draw it betwixt your finger and thumb, to the head
of

of the shanck, and then whip it twice or thrice about the bare hook, which, you must know, is done, both to prevent slipping, and also that the shanck of the hook may not cut the hairs of your Towght, which sometimes it will otherwise do) which being done, take your Line, and draw it likewise betwixt your finger and thumb, holding the Hook so fast, as only to suffer it to pass by, untill you have the knot of your Towght almost to the middle of the shanck of your hook, on the inside of it, then whip your silk twice or thrice about both hook and Line, as hard as the strength of the silk will permit, which being done, strip the feather for the wings proportionable to the bigness of your Flie, placing that side downwards, which grew uppermost before, upon the back of the hook, leaving so much only as to serve for the length of the wing of the point of the plume, lying revers't from the end of the shanck upwards, then whip your silk twice, or thrice about the root end of the feather, hook, and towght, which being done clip off the root end of the feather close by the arming, and then whip the silk fast and firm about the hook, and towght untill you come to the bend of the hook: but not further (as you do at *London*; and so make a very unhandfom, and, in plain *English*, a very unnatural and shapeless Flie) which being done, cut

away the end of your tought, and fasten it, and then take your dubbing which is to make the body of your Flie, as much as you think convenient, and holding it lightly, with your hook, betwixt the finger, and thumb of your left hand, take your silk with the right, and twisting it betwixt the finger and thumb of that hand, the dubbing will spin it self about the silk, which when it has done, whip it about the arm'd hook backward, till you come to the setting on of the wings; and then take the feather for the wings, and divide it equally into two parts, and turn them back towards the bend of the Hook, the one on the one side, and the other on the other of the shanck, holding them fast in that posture betwixt the fore finger, and thumb of your left hand, which done, warp them so down, as to stand, and slope towards the bend of the hook, and having warpt up to the end of the shanck, hold the Flie fast betwixt the finger and thumb of your left hand, and then take the silk betwixt the finger, and thumb of your right hand, and where the warping ends, pinch or nip it with your thumb nail against your finger, and strip away the remainder of your dubbing from the silk, and then with the bare silk whip it once or twice about, make the wings to stand in due order, fasten, and cut it off; after which with the point of a needle raise up the dubbing
gently

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 41

gently from the warp, twitch off the superfluous hairs of your dubbing, leave the wings of an equal length (your Flie will never else swim true) and the work is done. And this vway of making a Flie (vvhich is certainly the best of all other) vvas taught me by a Kinsman of mine, one Captain *Henry Jackson*, a near neighbour, an admirable Flie Angler, by many degrees the best Flie maker, that ever I yet met with. And now that I have told you how a Flie is to be made, you shall presently see me make one, vvith vvvhich you may peradventure take a Trout this morning, notwithstanding the unlikeliness of the day ; for it is now nine of the Clock, and Fish vvill begin to rise, if they vvill rise to day ; I will vvalk along by you, and look on, and after dinner I vvill proceed in my lecture of Flie-Fishing.

Viat. I confess I long to be at the River, and yet I could sit here all day to hear you : but some of the one, and some of the other will do well : and I have a mighty ambition to take a Trout in your River *Dove*.

Pisc. I vvarrant you shall : I would not for more, than I will speak of but you should, seeing I have so extoll'd my River to you : nay I vvill keep you here a Month, but you shall have one good day of sport before you go.

Viat. You vvill find me I doubt too tractable

ble that vway ; for in good earnest, if business vwould give me leave, and that if it vvere fit, I could find in my heart to stay with you for ever.

Pisc. I thank you *Sir*, for that kind expressi-
on, and now let me look out my things to make
this flie.

C H A P. VI.

P*ISC.* Boy, come give me my dubbing bagg
here presently ; and now *Sir*, since I find
you so honest a man , I will make no scruple
to lay open my Treasure before you.

Viat. Did every any one see the like! What
a heap of Trumpery is here ! certainly never
an Angler in *Europe* has his shop half so well
furnisht, as you have.

Pisc. You perhaps may think now, that I
rake together this Trumpery, as you call it,
for shew only, to the end that such as see it
(which are not many I assure you) may think
me a great Master in the Art of angling : but
let me tell you here are some colours (as con-
temptible as they seem here) that are very hard
to be got, and scarce any one of them, which
if

Chap. 6. The Compleat Angler. 43

if it should be lost, I should not miss, and be concern'd about the loss of it too, once in the year ; but look you, Sir, amongst all these I will chuse out these two colours only, of which this is Bears-hair, this darker no great matter what ; but I am sure I have kill'd a great deal of Fish with it ; and with one or both of these you shall take Trout or Grayling this very day, notwithstanding all disadvantages, or my Art shall fail me.

Viat. You promise comfortably, and I have a great deal of reason to believe every thing you say ; but I wish the Flie were made, that we were at it.

Pisc. That will not be long in doing : and pray observe then. You see first how I hold my hook, and thus I begin. Look you here are my first two or three whips about the bare hook, thus I joyn hook and line, thus I put on my wings, thus I twirle and lap on my dubbing, thus I work it up towards the head, thus I part my wings, thus I nip my superfluous dubbing from my Silk, thus fasten, thus trim and adjust my Flie, and there's a Flie made, and now how do you like it ?

Viat. In earnest, admirably well, and it perfectly resembles a Flie ; but we about London make the bodies of our Flies both much bigger and longer, so long as even almost to the very beard of the Hook.

Pisc.

44 The Compleat Angler. Part. II.

Pisc. I know it very well, and had one of those Flies given me by an honest Gentleman, who came with my Father *Walton* to give me a Visit, which (to tell you the truth) I hung in my parlour Window to laugh at : but *Sir*, you know the Proverb, *They who go to Rome, must do as they at Rome do*; and believe me you must here make your Flies after this fashion, or you will take no Fish. Come I will look you out a Line, and you shall put it on, and try it. There *Sir*, now I think you are fitted, and now beyond the farther end of the walk you shall begin, I see at that bend of the water above, the air crisps the water a little, knit your Line first here, and then go up thither, and see what you can do.

Viat. Did you see that *Sir* ?

Pisc. Yes, I saw the Fish, and he saw you too, which made him turn short, you must fish further off, if you intend to have any sport here, this is no *New-River* let me tell you. That was a good Trout believe me, did you touch him ?

Viat. No, I would I had, we would not have parted so. Look you there was another ; this is an excellent Fly.

Pisc. That Fly I am sure would kill Fish, if the day were right ; but they only chew at it I see, and will not take it. Come *Sir*, let us return back to the Fishing-house ; this still wa-
ter

ter I see will not do our business to day ; you shall now, if you please, make a Flie your self, and try what you can do in the streams with that, and I know a Trout taken with a Flie of your own making will please you better than twenty with one of mine. Give me that Bag again, *Sirrah* ; look you *Sir*, there is a hook, tought, silk, and a feather for the wings, be doing with those, and I will look you out a Dubbing, that I think will do.

Viat. This is a very little hook.

Pisc. That may serve to inform you, that it is for a very little Flie , and you must make your wings accordingly ; for as the case stands it must be a little Flie, and a very little one too, that must do your business. Well said ! believe me you shift your fingers very handsomely ; I doubt I have taken upon me to teach my Master. So here's your dubbing now.

Viat. This dubbing is very black.

Pisc. It appears so in hand ; but step to the doors and hold it up betwixt your eye and the Sun, and it will appear a shining red ; let me tell you never a man in *England* can discern the true colour of a dubbing any way but that, and therefore chuse always to make your Flies on such a bright Sun-shine day as this, which also you may the better do, because it is worth nothing to fish in, here put it on, and be sure to make the body of your Flie as slender as you can.

46 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

can. Very good ! Upon my word you have made a marvellous handsom Flie.

Viat. I am very glad to hear it ; 'tis the first that ever I made of this kind in my life.

Pisc. Away, away ! You are a Doctor at it ! but I will not commend you too much, lest I make you proud. Come put it on, and you shall now go downward to some streams betwixt the rocks below the little foot bridg you see there, and try your Fortune. Take heed of slipping into the water as you follow me under this rock : So now you are over , and now throw in.

Viat. This is a fine stream indeed : There's one ! I have him !

Pisc. And a precious catch you have of him ; pull him out ! I see you have a tender hand : This is a diminutive Gentleman, e'en throw him in again, and let him grow till he be more worthy your anger.

Viat. Pardon me, *Sir*, all's Fish that comes to'th' hook with me now. Another !

Pisc. And of the same standing.

Viat. I see I shall have good sport now : Another ! and a Grayling. Why you have Fish here at will.

Pisc. Come, come, cross the Bridge, and go down the other side lower, where you will find finer streams, and better sport I hope than
this

Chap. 6. The Compleat Angler. 47

this. Look you *Sir*, here is a fine stream now, you have length enough, stand a little further off, let me entreat you, and do but Fish this stream like an Artist, and peradventure a good Fish may fall to your share. How now! what is all gone?

Viat. No, I but touch't him; but that was a Fish worth taking.

Pisc. Why now let me tell you, you lost that Fish by your own fault, and through your own eagerness and haste; for you are never to offer to strike a good Fish, if he do not strike himself, till first you see him turn his head after he has taken your Flie, and then you can never strain your tackle in the striking, if you strike with any manner of moderation. Come throw in one again, and fish me this stream by inches; for I assure you here are very good Fish, both Trout and Grayling, lie here; and at that great stone on the other side, 'tis ten to one a good Trout gives you the meeting.

Viat. I have him now, but he is gone down towards the bottom, I cannot see what he is; yet he should be a good Fish by his weight; but he makes no great stir.

Pisc. Why then, by what you say, I dare venture to assure you, 'tis a Grayling, who is one of the deadeast hearted Fishes in the world, and the bigger he is the more easily taken. Look you, now you see him plain; I told you what
he

48 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

he was, bring hither that landing net, Boy, and now *Sir*, he is your own; and believe me a good one, sixteen Inches long I warrant him, I have taken none such this year.

Viat. I never saw a Grayling before look so black.

Pisc. Did you not? Why then let me tell you, that you never saw one before in right season: for then a Grayling is very black about his head, gills, and down his back, and has his Belly of a dark grey, dappled with black spots, as you see this is, and I am apt to conclude, that from thence he derives his name of *Umber*. Though I must tell you this Fish is past his prime, and begins to decline, and was in better season at Christmas than he is now. But move on, for it grows towards dinner-time, and there is a very great and fine stream below, under that Rock, that fills the deepest pool in all the River, where you are almost sure of a good Fish.

Viat. Let him come, I'll try a fall with him; but I had thought, that the Grayling had been always in season with the Trout, and had come in, and gone out with him.

Oh no! assure your self a Grayling is a winter-fish: but such a one as would deceive any but such as know him very well indeed; for his flesh, even in his worst season, is so firm, and will so easily calver, that in plain truth he
is

Chap 6. The Compleat Angler. 49

is very good meat at all times; but in his perfect season (which, by the way, none but an overgrown Grayling will ever be) I think him so good a fish, as to be little inferiour to the best Trout that ever I tasted in my life.

Viat. Here's another skip-jack, and I have rais'd five or six more at least whilst you were speaking: Well, go thy way little *Dove!* thou art the finest River, that ever I saw, and the fullest of fish. Indeed, *Sir*, I like it so well, that I am afraid you will be troubled with me once a year, so long as we two live.

Pisc. I am afraid I shall not *Sir*; but were you once here a *May* or a *June*, if good sport would tempt you, I should then expect you would sometimes see me; for you would then say it were a fine River indeed, if you had once seen the sport at the height.

Viat. Which I will do, if I live, and that you please to give me leave, there was one, and there another.

Pisc. And all this in a strange River, and with a Flie of your own making! vvhy vvhat a dangerous man are you!

Viat. I, *Sir*, but vvho taught me? and as *Dametas* says by his man *Dorus*, so you may say by me,

If my man such praises have,
What then have I, that taught the Knave?

E

But

But vvhhat have we got here? A Rock springing up in the middle of the River! this is one of the oddest sights, that ever I saw.

Pisc. Why, Sir, from that Pike †, that you see standing up there distant

† 'Tis a Rock, in the fashion of a Spire-Steeple; and, almost as big. It stands in the midst of the River Dove; and not far from Mr. Cotton's house, below which place this delicate River takes a swift Carere betwixt

many mighty Rocks, much higher and bigger than St Pauls Church, before 'twas burnt. And this Dove being oppos'd by one of the highest of them, has at last, forc't itself away through it; and after a miles concealment, appears again with more glory and beauty than before that opposition; running through the most pleasant Valleys and most fruitful Meadows, that this Nation can justly boast of.

Viat. Has young Master Izaak Walton been here too?

Pisc. Yes marry has he Sir, and that again, and again too, and in France since, and at Rome, and at Venice, and I can't tell vvhether: but I intend to ask him a great many hard questions

Chap.6. The Compleat Angler. 51

sions so soon as I can see him, which vvill be, God vvilling, next Month. In the mean time, Sir, to come to this fine stream at the head of this great Pool, you must venture over these slippery cobling stones; believe me, Sir, there you vvere nimble or else you had been down; but now you are got over, look to your self; for on my vvord if a Fish rise here, he is like to be such a one, as will endanger your tackle: How novv!

Viat. I think you have such command here over the Fishes, that you can raise them by your vvord, as they say Conjurers can do Spirits, and afterward make them do vvhat you bid them: for here's a Trout has taken my Flie, I had rather have lost a Crown. What luck's this! He vv as a lovely Fish, and turn'd up a side like a Salmon.

Pisc. O Sir, this is a War vvhere you sometimes win, and must sometimes expect to loose. Never concern your self for the loss of your Flie; for ten to one I teach you to make a better. Who's that calls?

Serv. Sir, Will it please you to come to dinner?

Pisc. We come. You hear Sir we are call'd, and now take your choice, whether you vvill climb this steep Hill before you, from the top of vvhich you vvill go directly into the House, or back again over these stepping stones, and about by the Bridg.

E 2

Viat.

Viat. Nay, sure the nearest vway is best ; at least my stomach tells me so ; and I am now so well acquainted with your Rocks, that I fear them not.

Pisc. Come then, follow me, and so soon as we have din'd ; we will down again to the little House ; where I will begin at the place I left off about Flie-Fishing, and read you another Lecture ; for I have a great deal more to say upon that Subject.

Viat. The more the better ; I could never have met with a more obliging Master, my first excepted ; nor such sport can all the Rivers about *London* ever afford, as is to be found in this pretty River.

Pisc. You deserve to have better, both because I see you are willing to take pains, and for liking this little so well ; and better I hope to shew you before we part.

C H A P. VII.

VIAT. Come Sir, having now well din'd, and being again set in your little House ; I will now challenge your promise, and entreat you to proceed in your instruction for Flie-fishing, which, that you may be the better encourag'd to do, I will assure you, that I have not lost, I think, one syllable of what you have told me ; but very well retain all your directions both for the Rod, Line, and making a Flie, and now desire an account of the Flies themselves.

Pisc. Why Sir, I am ready to give it you, and shall have the whole afternoon to do it in, if no body come in to interrupt us ; for you must know (besides the unfitness of the day) that the afternoons so early in *March* signifie very little to Angling with a Flie, though with a Minnow, or a Worm something might (I confesse) be done.

To begin then where I left off, my Father *Walton* tells us but of 12 Artificial flies only, to Angle with at the top, and gives their names; of which some are common with us here ; and I think I guess at most of them by his description, and I believe they all breed, and are taken in our Rivers, though we do not make

54 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

them either of the same Dubbing, or fashion. And it may be in the Rivers about *London*, which I presume he has most frequented, and where 'tis likely he has done most execution, there is not much notice taken of many more: but we are acquainted with several others here (though perhaps I may reckon some of his by other names too) but if I do, I shall make you amends by an addition to his Catalogue. And although the forenamed great Master in the Art of Angling (for so in truth he is) tells you that no man should in honesty catch a Trout till the middle of *March*, yet I hope he will give a Man leave sooner to take a Grayling, which, as I told you, is in the dead Months in his best season; and do assure you (which I remember by a very remarkable token) I did once take upon the sixt day of December one, and only one, of the biggest Graylings and the best in season, that ever I yet saw, or tasted; and do usually take Trouts too, and with a Flie, not only before the middle of this Month, but almost every year in *February*, unless it be a very ill spring indeed, and have sometimes in *January*, so early as New-years-tide, and in frost and snow taken Grayling in a warm sunshine day for an hour or two about Noon; and to fish for him with a Grub it is then the best time of all.

I shall therefore begin my Flie-fishing with
that

that Month (though I confefs very few begin so soon, and that such as are so fond of the sport as to embrace all opportunities, can rarely in that Month find a day fit for their purpose) and tell you, that upon my knowledg these Flies in a warm sun, for an hour or two in the day, are certainly taken.

January.

1. A red brown with wings of the Male of a Malard almost white: the dubbing of the tail of a black long coated Cur, such as they commonly make muffs of; for the hair on the tail of such a Dog dies, and turns to a red Brown, but the hair of a smoth coated Dog of the same colour will not do, because it will not dye, but retains its natural colour, and this flie is taken in a warm sun, this whole Month thorough.

2. There is also a very little bright Dun Gnat, as little as can possibly be made, so little as never to be sight with, with above one hair next the hook, and this is to be made of a mixt dubbing of Martins fur, and the white of a Hares scut; with a very white, and small wing; and 'tis no great matter how fine you fish, for nothing will rise in this Month but a Grayling, and of them I never at this season saw any taken with a Flie, of above a foot

E 4 long

36 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

long in my life : but of little ones about the bigness of a smelt in a warm day, and a glowing Sun, you may take enough with these two Fishes, and they are both taken the whole North through.

February.

1. Where the Red-brown of the last Month ends, another almost of the same colour begins with this, saving that the dubbing of this must be of something a blacker colour, and both of them warpt on with red silk ; the dubbing that should make this Flie, and that is the truest colour, is to be got of the black spot of a Hogs ear : not that a black spot in any part of the Hog will not afford the same colour ; but that the hair in that place is by many degrees softer, and more fit for the purpose : his wing must be as the other, and this kills all this Month, and is call'd the lesser Red-brown.

2. This Month also a plain Hackle, or palmer-Flie made with a rough black body, either of black Spaniels furr, or the whirl of an *E-stridge* feather, and the red Hackle of a Capon over all, will kill, and if the weather be right make very good sport.

3. Also a lesser Hackle with a black body also, silver twist over that, and a red feather over all, will fill your pannier if the Month be open,

open, and not bound up in Ice, and snow, with very good Fish; but in case of a frost and snow, you are to Angle only with the smallest Gnats, Browns and Duns you can make, and with those are only to expect Graylings no bigger, than sprats.

4. In this Month, upon a whirling round water, we have a great Hackle, the body black, and wrapped with a red feather of a Capon untrim'd; that is, the whole length of the Hackle staring out (for we sometimes barb the Hackle feather short all over; sometimes barb it only a little, and sometimes barb it close underneath, leaving the whole length of the feather on the top, or back of the Flie which makes it swim better, and as occasion serves kills very great Fish.

5. We make use also in this Month of another great Hackle the body black, and rib'd over with Gold twist, and a red feather over all, which also does great execution.

6. Also a great Dun, made with Dun Bears Hair, and the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard near unto his tail, which is absolutely the best Flie can be thrown upon a River this Month, and with which an Angler shall have admirable sport.

7. We have also this Month the great blew Dun, the dubbing of the bottom of Bears hair next to the roots, mixt with a little blew Camlet,

58 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

Camlet, the wings of the dark grey feather of a Mallard.

8. We have also this Month a Dark-Brown, the dubbing of the brown hair of the Flanck of a brended Cow, and the wings of the grey-Drakes feather.

And note, that these several Hackels, or Palmer Flies, are some for one Water, and one Skye, and some for another, and according to the change of those, we alter their size, and colour, and note also, that both in this, and all other Months of the Year, when you do not certainly know what Flie is taken; or cannot see any Fish to rise, you are then to put on a small Hackle, if the Water be clear, or a bigger if something dark, untill you have taken one, and then thrusting your finger thorough his Guils, to pull out his Gorge, which being open'd with your knife, you will then discover what Flie is taken, and may fit your self accordingly.

For the making of a Hackle, or Palmer Flie my Father *Walton* has already given you sufficient direction.

March.

For this Month you are to use all the same Hackels, and Flies with the other, but you are to make them less.

I. We

Chap. 7. The Compleat Angler. 59

1. We have besides for this Month a little Dun call'd a whirling Dun (though it is not the whirling Dun indeed, which is one of the best Flies we have) and for this the dubbing must be of the bottom fur of a Squirrels tail and the wing of the grey feather of a Drake.

2. Also a bright brown, the dubbing either of the brown of a Spaniel, or that of a Cows flank, with a Grayling.

3. Also a whitish Dun made of the roots of Camels hair, and the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

4. There is also for this Month a Flie, call'd the Thorn Tree Flie, the dubbing an absolute black mixt with eight or ten hairs of *Isabella* colour'd Mohair, the body as little as can be made, and the wings of a bright Malards feather, an admirable Flie, and in great repute amongst us for a killer.

5. There is besides this another blew Dun, the dubbing of which it is made being thus to be got. Take a small tooth comb, and with it comb the neck of a black Grey hound, and the down that sticks in the teeth, will be the finest blew, that ever you saw. The wings of this Flie can hardly be too white, and he is taken about the tenth of this Month, and lasteth till the four and twentieth.

6. From the tenth of this Month also till towards the end, is taken a little black Gnat;
the

60 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

the dubbing either of the fur of a black water-Dog, or the down of a young black water-Coot, the wings of the Male of a Mallard as white as may be, the body as little as you can possibly make it, and the wings as short as his body.

7. From the Sixteenth of this Month also to the end of it, we use a bright brown, the dubbing for which, is to be had out of a Skinners Lime-pits, and of the hair of an abortive Calf, which the lime will turn to be so bright, as to shine like Gold, for the wings of this Flie, the feather of a brown Hen is best; which Flie is also taken till the tenth of *April*.

April.

All the same Hackles, and Flies that were taken in *March* will be taken in this Month also, with this distinction only concerning the Flies, that all the browns be lapt with red silk, and the Duns with yellow:

1. To these a small bright brown, made of Spaniels fur, with a light grey wing; in a bright day, and a clear water is very well taken.

2. We have too a little dark brown, the dubbing of that colour, and some violet Camlet mixt, and the wing of the grey feather of a Mallard.

3. From

Chap. 5. The Compleat Angler. 61

3. From the fixth of this Month to the tenth, we have also a Flie call'd the violet Flie, made of a dark violet stuff, with the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

4. About the twelfth of this Month comes in the Flie call'd the whirling Dun, which is taken every day about the mid time of day all this Month through, and by fits from thence to the end of *June*, and is commonly made of the down of a Fox Cub, which is of an Ash colour at the roots, next the skin, and ribb'd about with yellow silk, the wings of the pale grey feather of a Mallard.

5. There is also a yellow Dun, the dubbing of Camels hair, and yellow Camlet, or wool mixt, and a white grey wing.

6. There is also this Month another little brown, besides that mention'd before, made with a very slender body, the dubbing of dark brown, and violet Camlet mixt, and a grey wing; which though the direction for the making be near the other, is yet another Flie, and will take when the other will not, especially in a bright day, and a clear water.

7. About the twentieth of this Month comes in a Flie call'd the Horse-flesh Flie, the dubbing of which is a blew Mohair, with pink colour'd, and red Tammy mixt, a light colour'd wing, and a dark brown head. This flie is taken best in an Evening, and kills from two
hours

hours before Sun set till twilight, and is taken the Month thorough.

May.

And now Sir, that we are entring into the Month of *May*, I think it requisite to beg not only your attention ; but also your best patience ; for I must now be a little tedious with you, and dwell upon this Month longer than ordinary ; which that you may the better endure, I must tell you, this Month deserves, and requires to be insisted on, for as much as it alone, and the next following afford more pleasure to the Flic-Angler, than all the rest ; and here it is that you are to expect an account of the Green Drake, and stone-flie, promis'd you so long ago, and some others that are peculiar to this Month, and part of the Month following, and that (though not so great either in bulk, or name) do yet stand in competition with the two before named, and so, that it is yet undecided amongst the Anglers to which of the pretenders to the Title of the *May-flie*, it does properly, and duly belong, neither dare I (where so many of the learned in this Art of Angling are got in dispute about the controversie) take upon me to determine ; but I think I ought to have a vote amongst them, and according to that priviledg, shall
give

Chap. 7. The Compleat Angler. 63

Give you my free opinion, and peradventure when I have told you all, you may incline to think me in the right.

Viat. I have so great a deference to your judgment in these matters, that I must always be of your opinion ; and the more you speak, the faster I grow to my attention, for I can never be weary of hearing you upon this Subject.

Pisc. Why that's encouragement enough ; and now prepare your self for a tedious Lecture ; but I will first begin with the flies of less esteem (though almost any thing will take a Trout in May) that I may afterwards insist the longer upon those of greater note, and reputation ; know therefore that the first flie we take notice of in this Month, is call'd the Turkey-flie, the.

1. The dubbing ravell'd out of some blew stuff, and lapt about with yellow silk, the wings of a grey Mallards feather.

2. next a great Hackle ; or Palmer-flie, with a yellow body ribb'd with Gold twist, and large wings of a Mallards feather dyed yellow, with a red Capons Hackle over all,

3. Then a black flie, the dubbing of a black Spaniels fur, and the wings of a grey Mallards feather.

4, After that a light brown with a slender body,

64 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

body, the dubbing twirl'd upon small red silk, and rais'd with the point of a needle, that the ribs or rows of silk may appear through the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

5. Next a little Dun, the dubbing of a Bears dun whirl'd upon yellow silk, the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

6. Then a white Gnat, with a pale wing, and a black head.

7. There is also this Month a flie call'd the Peacock-flie, the body made of a whirl of a Peacocks feather, with a red head, and wings of a Mallards feather.

8. We have then another very killing flie, known by the name of the Dun-Cut, the dubbing of which is a Bears dun, with a little blew, and yellow mixt with it, a large dun wing, and two horns at the head, made of the hairs of a Squirrels tail.

9. The next is the Cow-Lady, a little flie, the body of a Peacocks feather, the wing of a red feather, or strips of the red hackle of a Cock.

10. We have then the Cow-turd flie; the dubbing light brown, and yellow mixt, the wing the dark grey feather of a Mallard. And note that besides these abovementioned, all the same Hackles and Flies, the Hackles only brighter, and the Flies smaller, that are taken in April, will also be taken this Month, as also
all

Chap.6. The Compleat Angler. 65

all Browns, and Duns : and now I come to my Stone-Flie, and Green-Drake, which are the Matadores for Trout and Grayling, and in their season kill more Fish in our *Derbyshire* Rivers, than all the rest past, and to come, in the whole Year besides.

But first I am to tell you, that we have four several flies which contend for the Title of the May-Flie, namely,

The Green-Drake,
The Stone-Flie,
The Black Flie, and
The little yellow May-Flie.

And all these have their Champions and Advocates to dispute, and plead their priority ; though I do not understand why the two last named should ; the first two having so manifestly the advantage, both in their beauty, and the wonderful execution they do in their season.

11. Of these the Green-Drake comes in about the twentieth of this Month, or betwixt that, and the latter end (for they are sometimes sooner, and sometimes later according to the quality of the Year) but never well taken till towards the end of this Month, and the beginning of *June*. The Stone-Flie comes much sooner, so early as the middle of *April* ;

F

but

but is never well taken till towards the middle of *May*, and continues to kill much longer than the Green-Drake stays with us, so long as to the end almost of *June*; and indeed, so long as there are any of them to be seen upon the water; and sometimes in an Artificial Flie, and late at night, or before Sun rise in a morning, longer.

Now both these Flies (and I believe many others, though I think not all) are certainly, and demonstratively bred in the very Rivers where they are taken, our Caddis or Cod-bait which lye under stones in the bottom of the water, most of them turning into those two Flies, and being gather'd in the husk, or crust, near the time of their maturity, are very easily known, and distinguisht, and are of all other the most remarkable, both for their size, as being of all other the biggest (the shortest of them being a full inch long, or more) and for the execution they do, the Trout, and Grayling being much more greedy of them, than of any others; and indeed the Trout never feeds fat, nor comes into his perfect season, till these Flies come in.

Of these the Green-Drake never discloses from his husk, till he be first there grown to full maturity, body, wings, and all, and then he creeps out of his cell, but with his wings so crimp't, and ruffled, by being prest together
in

Chap. 7. The Compleat Angler. 67

in that narrow room, that they are for some hours totally useles to him, by which means he is compelled either to creep upon the flags, sedges, and blades of grafs (if his first rising from the bottom of the water be near the banks of the River) till the Air, and Sun, stiffen and smooth them ! or if his first appearance above water happen to be in the middle, he then lies upon the surface of the water like a Ship at Hull (for his feet are totally useles to him there, and he cannot creep upon the water as the Stone-Flie can) untill his wings have got stiffness to fly with, if by some Trout, or Grayling he be not taken in the interim (which ten to one he is) and then his wings stand high, and clos'd exact upon his back, like the Butterfly, and his motion in flying is the same. His Body is in some of a paler, in others of a darker yellow (for they are not all exactly of a colour) rib'd with rows of green, long, slender, and growing sharp towards the tail, at the end of which he has three long small whisks of a very dark colour, almost black, and his tail turns up towards his back like a Mallard, from whence questionless he has his name of the green-Drake. These (as I think I told you before) we commonly dape, or dabble with, and having gather'd great store of them into a long draw box, with holes in the Cover to give them Air (where also they

68 The Compleat Angler. Part.II.

will continue fresh, and vigorous a night or more) we take them out thence by the wings, and bait them thus upon the Hook. We first take one) for we commonly Fish with two of them at a time) and putting the point of the Hook into the thickest part of his Body under one of his wings, run it directly through and out at the other side, leaving him spitted cross upon the Hook, and then taking the other, put him on after the same manner, but with his head the contrary way, in which posture they will live upon the Hook, and play with their wings for a quarter of an hour, or more : but you must have a care to keep their wings dry, both from the water, and also that your fingers be not wet when you take them out to bait them ; for then your bait is spoil'd.

Having now told you how to Angle with this Flie alive ; I am now to tell you next, how to make an Artificial Flie, that will so perfectly resemble him, as to be taken in a rough windy day, when no Flies can lye upon the water ; nor are to be found about the Banks and sides of the River, to a wonder, and with which you shall certainly kill the best Trout, and Grayling in the River.

The Artificial Green-Drake then is made upon a large Hook, the Dubbing, Camels hair, bright Bears hair, the soft down that is comb'd from a Hogs bristles, and yellow Camlet well
mixt

mixt together, the body long, and ribb'd about with green silk, or rather yellow waxt with green-wax, the whisks of the tail of the long hairs of fables, or fitchet, and the wings of the white grey feather of a Mallard dyed yellow, which also is to be dyed thus.

Take the root of a Barbary Tree, and shave it, and put to it Woody viß, with as much Alum as a Walnut, and boyl your feathers in it with Rain water; and they will be of a very fine yellow.

I have now done with the Green-drake excepting to tell you, that he is taken at all hours during his season, whilst there is any day upon the Sky; and with a made Flie, I once took, ten days after he was absolutely gone, in a Cloudy day, after a showr, and in a whistling wind, five and thirty very great Trouts, and Graylings betwixt five, and eight of the Clock in the Evening, and had no less than five, or six Flies with three good hairs a piece taken from me in despite of my heart, besides.

12. I should now come next to the Stone-Flie, but there is another Gentleman in my way: that must of necessity come in between, and that is the Grey-Drake, which in all shapes, and dimensions is perfectly the same with the other, but quite almost of another colour, being of a paler, and more livid yellow, and green, and ribb'd with black quite down his

B 3

body,

body, with black shining wings, and so diaphanous and tender, cob-web like, that they are of no manner of use for Daping; but come in, and are taken after the Green-Drake, and in an Artificial Flie kill very well, which Flie is thus made, the Dubbing of the down of a Hogs bristles, and black Spaniels fur mixt, and ribb'd down the body with black silk, the whisks of the hairs of the beard of a black Cat, and the wings of the black grey feather of a Mallard.

And now I come to the Stone-Flie, but am afraid I have already wearied your patience, which if I have, I beseech you freely tell me so, and I will defer the remaining instructions for Flie-Angling till some other time.

Viat. No truly Sir, I can never be weary of hearing you: but if you think fit, because I am afraid I am too troublesome, to refresh your self with a glass, and a pipe; you may afterwards proceed, and I shall be exceedingly pleas'd to hear you.

Pisc. I thank you Sir for that motion; for believe me I am dry with talking, Here Boy, give us here a Bottle, and a Glass; and Sir, my service to you, and to all our Friends in the South.

Viat. Your Servant Sir, and I'll pledg you as heartily; for the good powder'd beef I eat at Dinner, or something else, has made me thirsty.

CHAP.

C H A P. VIII.

VIAT. So, *Sir*, I am now ready for another Lesson so soon as you please to give it me.

Pisc. and I, *Sir*, as ready to give you the best I can. Having told you the time of the Stone-Flie's coming in, and that he is bred of a Cad-dis in the very River where he is taken, I am next to tell you, that

13. This same Stone-Flie has not the patience to continue in his Crust, or Husk till his wings be full grown; but so soon as ever they begin to put out, that he feels himself strong (at which time we call him a Jack) squeezes himself out of Prison, and crawls to the top of some stone, where if he can find a chink that will receive him, or can creep betwixt two stones, the one lying hollow upon the other (which, by the way, we also lay so purposely to find them) he there lurks till his wings be full grown, and there is your only place to find him (and from thence doubtless he derives his name) though, for want of such convenience, he will make shift with the hollow of a Bank, or any other place where the wind cannot come to fetch him off. His body is long, and pretty thick, and as broad at the tail almost, as in the

middle; his colour a very fine brown, ribb'd with yellow, and much yellower on the belly than the back, he has two or three whisks also at the tag of his tail, and two little horns upon his head, his wings, when full grown, are double, and flat down his back of the same colour, but rather darker than his body, and longer than it; though he makes but little use of them, for you shall rarely see him flying, though often swimming, and paddling with several feet he has under his belly upon the water, without stirring a wing: but the Drake will mount Steeple height into the Air, though he is to be found upon flags and grass too, and indeed every where high and low, near the River; there being so many of them in their season, as were they not a very inoffensive insect, would look like a Plague; and these Drakes (since I forgot to tell you before, I will tell you here) are taken by the Fish to that incredible degree, that upon a calm day you shall see the still deeps continually all over circles by the Fishes rising, who will gorge themselves with those Flies, till they purge again out of their Guills; and the Trouts are at that time so lusty and strong, that one of eight, or ten inches long, will then more struggle, and tug, and more endanger your Tackle, than one twice as big in winter: but pardon this digression.

This

Chap. 7. The Compleat Angler. 73

This Stone-flie then we dape or dabble with as with the Drake, but with this difference, that whereas the green-Drake is common both to stream and still, and to all hours of the day, we seldome dape with this but in the streams, (for in a whistling wind a made Flie in the deep is better, and rarely, but early and late, it not being so proper for the mid-time of the day; though a great *Grayling* will then take it very well in a sharp stream, and here and there a Trout too; but much better toward 8, 9, 10. or eleven of the clock at night, at which time also the best Fish rise, and the latter the better, provided you can see your Flie, and when you cannot, a made Flie will murder, which is to be made thus: The dubbing of bears dun with a little brown and yellow Camlet very well mixt; but so plac'd that your Flie may be more yellow on the belly and towards the tail underneath than in any other part, and you are to place two or three hairs of a black Cats beard on the top of the hook in your arming, so as to be turn'd up, when you warp on your dubbing, and to stand almost upright, and staring one from another, and note that your Flie is to be ribb'd with yellow silk, and the wings long, and very large, of the dark grey feather of a Mallard.

14. The

74 The Compleat Angler. Part. II.

14. The next *May-Flie* is the black Flie, made with a black body of the whirl of an Ostridge-feather, rib'd with silver twist, and the black hackle of a Cock over all; and is a killing Flie, but not to be nam'd with either of the other.

15. The last *May-Flie* (that is of the four pretenders) is the little yellow *May-Flie*, in shape exactly the same with the green Drake, but a very little one, and of as bright a yellow as can be seen; which is made of a bright yellow Camlet, and the wings of a white grey feather died yellow.

16. The last Flie for this month (and which continues all *June*, though it comes in the middle of *May*) is the Flie called the Camlet-Flie, in shape like a moth with fine diaped, or water-wings, and with which (as I told you before) I sometimes used to dabble; and Grayling will rise mightily at it. But the artificial Flie (which is only in use amongst our Anglers) is made of a dark brown shining Camlet, rib'd over with a very small light green silk, the wings of the double grey feather of a Mallard; and 'tis a killing Flie for small Fish, and so much for *May*.

June

June.

From the first to the four and twentieth, the green-Drake and Stone-Flie are taken (as I told you before.)

1. From the twelfth to the four and twentieth late at night is taken a Flie, called the Owl-Flie; the dubbing of a white Weefel's tail, and a white Grey wing.

2. We have then another *Dunne*, call'd the *Barm-flie*, from it's yesty colour, the dubbing of the fur of a yellow dun Cat, and a grey wing of a Mallards feather.

3. We have also a hackle with a purple body, whipt about with a red Capons feather.

4. As also a gold twist Hackle with a purple body, whipt about with a red Capons feather.

5. To these we have this month a Flesh-flie, the dubbing of a black Spaniel's furre, and blew wool mixt, and a grey wing.

6. Also another little flesh-flie, the body made of the whirle of a Peacocks feather, and the wings of the grey feather of a Drake.

7. We have then the Peacock-flie, the body and wing both made of the feather of that bird.

8. There

76 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

8. There is also the flying Ant, or Ant-flie, the dubbing of brown and red Camlet mixt, with a light grey wing.

9. We have likewise a brown Gnat, with a very slender body of brown and violet Camlet well mixt, and a light grey wing.

10. And another little black Gnat, the dubbing of black mohair, and a white Grey wing.

11. As also a green Grasshopper, the dubbing of green and yellow Wool mixed, rib'd over with green Silk, and a red Capons feather over all.

12. And lastly a little dun Grasshopper, the body slender made of a dun Camlet, and a dun hackle at the top.

July.

July.

First all the small flies that were taken in *June*, are also taken in this month.

1. We have then the Orange Flie, the dubbing of Orange Wool, and the wing of a black feather.

2. Also a little white dun, the body made of white Mohair, and the wings blew of a Herons feather.

3. We have likewise this month a Wasp-flie, made either of a dark brown dubbing, or else the furre of a black Cats tail, ribb'd about with yellow silk, and the wing of the grey feather of a Mallard.

4. Another flie taken this month is a black Hackle, the body made of the whirle of a Peacock's feather, and a black hackle feather on the top.

5. We have also another made of a Peacocks whirle without wings.

6. Another flie also is taken this month call'd the shel-flie, the dubbing of yellow-green Jersey Wool, and a little white Hoggs hair mixt, which I call the Palm-flie, and do believe it is taken for a Palm, that drops off the willows into the water; for this flie I have
seen

78 The Compleat Angler. Part. II.

seen Trouts take little pieces of moss, as they have swam down the River, by which I conclude that the best way to hit the right colour is to compare your dubbing with the Moss, and mix the colours as near as you can.

7. There is also taken this month a black blew Dun, the dubbing of the furre of a black Rabbet mixt with a little yellow, the wings of the Feather of a blew Pigeons wing.

August.

The same Flies with *July*.

1. Then another Art-flie, the dubbing of the black brown hair of a Cow, some red warpt in for the Tagg of his tail, and a dark wing, a killing flie.

2. Next a flie call'd the Fern-flie, the dubbing of the fur of a Hares neck, that is of the colour of Fearn, or Brackin, with a darkilh grey wing of a Mallards feather, a killer too.

3. Besides these we have a white Hackle, the body of white Mo-hair, and wrapped about with a white Hackle Feather, and this is assuredly taken for Thistle-down.

4. We

Chap. 3. The Compleat Angler. 79

4. We have also this month a Harry-long-leggs, the body made of Bears dun, and blew Wool mixt, and a brown hackle Feather over all.

Lastly in this month all the same browns and duns are taken, that were taken in May.

September.

This month the same Flies are taken, that are taken in *April*.

1. To which I shall only add a Camel-brown Flie, the dubbing pull'd out of the lime of a Wall whipt about with red Silk, and a darkish grey Mallards feather for the wing.

2. And one other for which we have no name; but it is made of the black hair of a Badgers skin mixt with the yellow softest down of a fanded Hog.

October.

October.

The same Flies are taken this month , that were taken in *March*.

Novemb.

The same Flies that were taken in *February*, are taken this month also.

December.

Few men angle with the Flie this month, no more than they do in *January*: but yet if the weather be warm (as I have known it sometimes in my life to be, even in this cold Country where it is least expected) then a brown that looks red in the hand , and yellowish betwixt your eye and the Sun ; will both raise and kill in a clear water, and free from snow-broth : but at the best 'tis hardly worth a man's labour.

And

Chap. 9. The Compleat Angler. 81

And now *Sir*, I have done with Flie-fishing, or angling at the top, excepting once more to tell you, that of all these (and I have named you a great many very killing flies) none are fit to be compared with the Drake and Stone-flie, both for many and very great fish; and yet there are some daies, that are by no means proper for the sport, and in a calm you shall not have near so much sport even with dapping, as in a whistling gale of wind, for two reasons, both because you are not then so easily discovered by the fish, and also because there are then but few flies can lye upon the water; for where they have so much choice, you may easily imagine they will not be so eager and forward to rise at a bait, that both the shadow of your body, and that of your Rod, nay of your very line, in a hot calm day will, in spite of your best caution, render suspected to them: but even then, in swift streams, or by sitting down patiently behind a willow bush, you shall do more execution than at almost any other time of the year with any other flie, though one may sometimes hit of a day, when he shall come home very well satisfied with sport with several other Flies: but with these two, the green Drake and the Stone-flie, I do verily believe I could some daies in my life, had I not been weary of slaughter, have loaden a lusty boy, and have sometimes, I do honestly assure you,

G

given

given over upon the meer account of satiety of sport; which will be no hard matter to believe, when I likewise assure you, that with this very flie, I have in this very River that runs by us in three or four hours taken thirty, five and thirty, and forty of the best Trouts in the River. What shame and pity is it then, that such a River should be destroyed by the basest sort of people, by those unlawful ways of fire and netting in the night, and of damming, groping, spearing, hanging and hooking by day, which are now grown so common, that, though we have very good Laws to punish such Offenders, every Rascal does it, for ought I see, *imprimè*.

To conclude, I cannot now in honesty but frankly tell you, that many of these flies I have nam'd, at least so made as we make them here, will peradventure do you no great service in your Southern Rivers, and will not conceal from you, but that I have sent flies to several friends in *London*, that for ought I could ever hear, never did any great feats with them, and therefore if you intend to profit by my instructions, you must come to angle with me here in the Peak; and so, if you please, let us walk up to Supper, and to morrow, if the day be windy, as our daies here commonly are, 'tis ten to one but we shall take a good dish of fish for dinner.

CHAP.

C H A P. IX.

PISC. A good day to you, *Sir*; I see you will
alwaies be stirring before me.

Viat. Why, to tell you the truth, I am so
allur'd with the sport I had yesterday, that I
long to be at the River again, and when I heard
the wind sing in my Chamber window, could
forbear no longer, but leap out of bed, and
had just made an end of dressing my self, as
you came in.

Pisc. Well, I am both glad you are so ready
for the day, and that the day is so fit for you,
and look you I have made you three or four
flies this morning, this silver twist hackle, this
bears dun, this light brown and this dark brown,
any of which I dare say will do; but you may
try them all, and see which does best, only I
must ask your pardon that I cannot wait upon
you this Morning, a little business being fal'n
out, that for two or three hours, will deprive
me of your Company: but I'll come call you
home to dinner, and my man shall attend
you.

Viat. Oh *Sir*, mind your affairs by all means,
do but lend me a little of your skill to these
fine flies, and, unless it have forsaken me since
yesterday, I shall find luck of my own I hope to
do something.

G 2

Pisc.

84 **The Compleat Angler. Part.II.**

Pisc. The best Instruction I can give you, is, that, seeing the wind curls the water, and blows the right way, you would now angle up the still deep to day; for betwixt the Rocks where the streams are, you would find it now too brisk, and besides I would have you take fish in both Waters.

Viat. I'll obey your Direction, and so a good morning to you. Come young man, let you and I walk together. But heark you, *Sir*, I have not done vvith you yet; I expect another Lesson for angling at the bottom, in the afternoon.

Pisc. Well, *Sir*, I'll be ready for you.

CHAP.

C H A P. X.

PISC. Oh *Sir*, are you return'd ? you have but just prevented me. I was coming to call you.

Viat. I am glad then I have sav'd you the labour.

Pisc. And how have you sped.

Viat. You shall see that, *Sir*, presently, look you *Sir*, here are three * brace of Trouts, one of them the biggest but one, that ever I kill'd with a flie in my life, and yet I lost a bigger than that, with my Flie to boo't, and here are three Graylings, and one of them longer by some inches than that I took yesterday, and yet I thought that a good one too.

* Spoke like a
South-Country
man.

Pisc. Why you have made a pretty good mornings work on't, and now *Sir*, what think you of our River *Dove* ?

Viat. I think it to be the best Trout River in *England* ; and am so far in love with it, that if it were mine, and that I could keep it to my self, I would not exchange that water, for all the Land it runs over ; to be totally debarr'd from't.

Pisc. That Complement to the River, speaks you a true lover of the Art of angling: And now, *Sir*, to make part of amends for sending you so uncivilly out alone this Morning, I will myself dress you this dish of fish for your dinner, walk but into the parlour, you will find one Book or other in the window to entertain you the while, and you shall have it presently.

Viat. Well *Sir*, I obey you.

Pisc. Look you *Sir*, have I not made haste?

Viat. Believe me *Sir*, that you have, and it looks so well, I long to be at it.

Pisc. Fall too then; now *Sir* what say you! am I a tolerable Cook or no?

Viat. So good a one, that I did never eat so good Fish in my life. This Fish is infinitely better, than any I ever tasted of the kind in my life. 'Tis quite another thing, than our Trouts about *London*.

Pisc. You would say so, if that Trout you eat of were in right season: but pray eat of the Grayling, which upon my word at this time, is by much the better Fish.

Viat. In earnest, and so it is: and I have one request to make to you, which is, that as you have taught me to catch Trout and Grayling, you will now teach me how to dress them as these are dressed, which questionless is of all other the best way.

Pisc.

Pisc. That I will Sir, with all my heart, and am glad you like them so well, as to make that request, and they are drest thus.

Take your Trout, wash, and dry him with a clean Napkin; then open him, and having taken out his guts, and all the blood, wipe him very clean within, but wash him not, and give him three scotches with a Knife to the bone on one side only. After which take a clean Kettle, and put in as much hard stale Beer (but it must not be dead) Vinegar, and a little Whitewine, and Water, as will cover the Fish you intend to boyl; then throw into the Liquor a good quantity of Salt, the Rind of a Lemon, a handful of slic't Horse-Radish root, with a handfom little jagot of Rosemary, Time, and Winter-Savory. Then set your Kettle upon a quick fire of wood, and let your Liquor boyl up to the height before you put in your Fish, and then, if there be many, put them in one by one, that they may not so cool the Liquor, as to make it fall; and whilst your Fish is boyling, beat up the Butter for your Sawce with a Ladle full or two of the Liquor it is boyling in, and being boyl'd enough, immediately pour the Liquor from the Fish, and being laid in a Dish, pour your Butter upon it, and strewing it plentifully over with shav'd Horse-Raddish, and a little pounded Ginger, garnish your sides of your Dish, and the Fish it self with a slic't

88 **The Compleat Angler. Part.II.**

Lemon, or two, and serve it up. A Grayling is also to be drest exactly after the same manner, saving that he is to be scal'd, which a Trout never is: and that must be done either with ones nails, or very lightly and carefully with a Knife for bruising the Fish. And note, that these kinds of Fish, a Trout especially, if he is not eaten within four, or five hours after he be taken, is worth nothing.

But come *Sir*, I see you have din'd, and therefore if you please we will walk down again to the little House, and there I will read you a Lecture of Angling at the bottom.

CHAP.

C H A P. XI.

VIAT. So *Sir*, Now we are here, and set :
 let me have my instructions for Angling
 for Trout, and Grayling at the bottom; which
 though not so easy, so cleanly, nor (as 'tis said)
 so Gentile a way of Fishing, as with a Flie;
 is yet (if I mistake not) a good holding way
 and takes Fish when nothing else will.

Pisc. You are in the right, it does so: and a
 worm is so sure a bait at all times, that, excepting
 in a Flood, I would I had laid thousand pounds
 that I kill'd Fish more, or less with it, Win-
 ter or Summer every day throughout the Year;
 those days always excepted, that, upon a more
 serious account always ought so to be. But
 not longer to delay you, I will begin, and tell
 you, that Angling at the bottom is also com-
 monly of two sorts (and yet there is a third
 way of Angling with a Ground-bait, and to
 very great effect too, as shall be said hereafter)
 namely.

By

By Hand :

or,

With a Cork, or Float.

That we call Angling by hand is of three sorts.

The first with a line about half the length of the Rod, a good weighty plum, and three hairs next the Hook, which we call a running Line, and with one large Brandling, or a dew-worm of a moderate size, or two small ones of the first, or any other sort, proper for a Trout, of which my Father *Walton* has already given you the names, and sav'd me a labour; or indeed almost any worm whatever; for if a Trout be in the humour to bite, it must be such a worm as I never yet saw, that he will refuse; and if you Fish with two, you are then to bait your hook thus. You are first to run the point of your hook in at the very head of your first worm, and so down through his body till it be past the knot, and then let it out, and strip the worm above the arming (that you may not bruise it with your fingers) till you have put on the other by running the point of the Hook in below the knot, and upwards through his body towards his head till it be but just cover'd with

Chap. 10. The Compleat Angler. 91

with the head, which being done, you are then to slip the first worm down over the arming again, till the knots of both worms meet together.

The second way of Angling by hand, and with a running Line, is with a Line something longer than the former, and with Tackle made after this same manner. At the utmost extremity of your Line, where the Hook is always plac'd in all other ways of Angling, you are to have a large Pistol, or Carabine Bullet, into which the end of your Line is to be fastned with a Peg, or Pin even and close with the Bullet, and about half a foot above that, a branch of Line, of two, or three handfuls long; or more, for a swift stream, with a Hook at the end thereof baited with some of the forenamed worms, and another half foot above that another arm'd, and baited after the same manner; but with another sort of worm, without any lead at all above: by which means you will always certainly find the true bottom in all depths, which with the Plums upon your Line above you can never do, but that your bait must always drag whilst you are sounding (which in this way of Angling must be continually) by which means you are like to have more trouble, and peradventure worse success. And both these ways of Angling at the bottom are most proper for a dark, and muddy water, by
reason

reason that in such a condition of the stream, a Man may stand as near as he will, and neither his own shadow; nor the roundness of his Tackle will hinder his sport.

The third way of Angling by hand with a Ground-bait, and by much the best of all other, is, with a Line full as long, or a yard and half longer than your Rod, with no more than one hair next the hook, and for two or three lengths above it, and no more than one small pellet of shot for your plum, your Hook little, your worms of the smaller Brandlings very well scour'd, and only one upon your hook at a time, which is thus to be baited. The point of your hook is to be put in at the very tagg of his tail, and run up his body quite over all the arming, and still stript on an inch at least upon the hair, the head and remaining part hanging downward; and with this line and hook thus baited you are evermore to angle in the streams, always in a clear rather than a troubled water, and always up the River, still casting out your worm before you with a light one-handed Rod, like an artificial Flie, where it will be taken, sometimes at the top, or within a very little of the *Superficies* of the water, and almost always before that light plumb can sink it to the bottom, both by reason of the stream, and also that you must always keep your worm in motion by drawing still back towards

Chap. 11. The Compleat Angler. 93

wards you , as if you were angling with a flie; and believe me, whoever will try it, shall find this the best way of all other to angle with a worm, in a bright water especially; but then his rod must be very light and pliant, and very true and finely made, which with a skilful hand will do wonders, and in a clear stream is undoubtedly the best way of angling for a Trout, or Grayling with a worm, by many degrees, that any man can make choice of, and of most ease and delight to the Angler. To which let me add, that if the Angler be of a constitution that will suffer him to wade, and will slip in to the tail of a shallow stream, to the Calf of the leg or the knee, and so keep off the bank, he shall almost take what fish he pleases.

The second way of angling at the bottom is with a Cork or float ; and that is also of two sorts.

With a worm :

or,

With a Grub or Caddis.

With a worm you are to have your line within a foot, or a foot and half as long as your rod, in a dark water with two, or if you will

will with three; but in a clear water never with above one hair next the hook, and two or three for four or five lengths above it, and a worm of what size you please, your plums fitted to your Cork, your Cork to the condition of the River (that is to the swiftness or slowness of it) and both, when the water is very clear, as fine as you can, and then you are never to bait with above one of the lesser sort of Brandlings; or, if they are very little ones indeed, you may then bait with two after the manner before directed.

When you angle for a Trout, you are to do it as deep, that is, as near the bottom as you can, provided your bait do not drag, or if it do, a Trout will sometimes take it in that posture: if for a Grayling, you are then to fish further from the bottom, he being a fish that usually swims nearer to the middle of the water, and lyes alwaies loose: or however is more apt to rise than a Trout, and more inclin'd to rise than to descend even to a Ground-bait.

With a Grub or Caddis, you are to angle with the same length of Line; or if it be all out as long as your Rod, 'tis not the worse, with never above one hair for two or three lengths next the hook, and with the smallest Cork, or float, and the least weight of plumb you can that will but sink, and that the swiftness

Chap. 11. The Compleat Angler. 95

ness of your stream will allow ; which also you may help , and avoid the violence of the Current, by angling in the returnes of a stream, or the Eddies betwixt two streams , which also are the most likely places wherein to kill a Fish in a stream , either at the top or bottom.

Of Grubs for a Grayling, the Ash-Grub, which is plump, milk-white, bent round from head to tail , and exceeding tender with a red head ; or the Dock worm, or Grub of a pale yellow, longer, lanker, and tougher than the other, with rows of feet all down his belly , and a red head also are the best, I say for a Grayling, because, although a Trout will take both these (the Ash-Grub especially) yet he does not do it so freely as the other, and I have usually taken ten Graylings for one Trout with that bait, though if a Trout come, I have observed, that he is commonly a very good one.

These baits we usually keep in Bran, in which an Ash-Grub commonly grows tougher, and will better endure baiting, though he is yet so tender, that it will be necessary to warp in a piece of a stiff hair with your arming, leaving it standing out about a straw breadth at the head of your hook, so as to keep the Grub either from slipping totally off when baited, or at least down to the point of the hook, by which
means

means your arming will be left wholly naked and bare, which is neither so lightly, nor so likely to be taken; though to help that (which will however very oft fall out) I always arm the hook I design for this Bait with the whitest horse-hair I can chuse, which it self will resemble, and shine like that bait, and consequently will do more good, or less harm than an arming of any other colour. These Grubs are to be baited thus, the hook is to be put in under the head or Chaps of the bait, and guided down the middle of the belly without suffering it to peep out by the way (for then (the Ash-Grub especially) will issue out water and milk, till nothing but the skin shall remain, and the bend of the hook will appear black through it) till the point of your hook come so low, that the head of your bait may rest, and stick upon the hair that stands out to hold it, by which means it can neither slip of it self; neither will the force of the stream, nor quick pulling out, upon any mistake, strip it off.

Now the Caddis, or Cod-bait (which is a sure killing bait, and for the most part, by much, surer, than either of the other) may be put upon the Hook, two or three together, and is sometimes (to very great effect) joyn'd to a worm, and sometimes to an Artificial Flie to cover the point of the Hook; but is always to be Angled with at the bottom (when by it self
espe-

Chap. II. The Compleat Angler. 97

especially) with the finest Tackle ; and is for all times of the year, the most holding bait of all other whatever, both for Trout, and Grayling.

There are several other baits besides these few I have nam'd you, which also do very great execution at the bottom, and some that are peculiar to certain Countries, and Rivers, of which every Angler may in his own place, make his own observation : and some others that I do not think fit to put you in mind of, because I would not corrupt you, and would have you, as in all things else I observe you to be a very honest Gentleman, a fair Angler. And so much for the second sort of Angling for a Trout at the bottom.

Viat. But Sir, I beseech you give me leave to ask you one question, Is there no art to be us'd to worms, to make them allure the Fish, and in a manner compel them to bite at the bait.

Pisc. Not that I know of; or did I know any such secret, I would not use it my self, and therefore would not teach it you. Though I will not deny to you, that in my younger days, I have made tryal of Oyl of Ospray, Oyl of Ivy, Camphire, Assa-fatida, juice of Nettles, and several other devices that I was taught by several Anglers I met with, but could never find any advantage by them ; and can scarce believe

H

there

there is any thing to be done that way, though I must tell you I have seen some men, who I thought went to work no more artificially than I, and have yet with the same kind of worms I had, in my own sight taken five, and sometimes ten for one. But we'll let that business alone if you please; and because we have time enough, and that I would deliver you from the trouble of any more Lectures, I will, if you please, proceed to the last way of angling for a Trout or Grayling, which is in the middle; after which I shall have no more to trouble you with.

Viat. 'Tis no trouble, *Sir*, but the greatest satisfaction that can be, and I attend you.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

PISC. Angling in the middle then for a Trout or Grayling is of two sorts.

With a Pink or Minnow for a Trout:

or,

With a Worm, Grub or Caddis for a Grayling.

For the first, it is with a Minnow half a foot, or a foot within the *Superficies* of the water, and as to the rest that concerns this sort of angling, I shall wholly refer you to Mr. *Walton's* direction, who is undoubtedly the best Angler with a Minnow in *England*; only in plain truth I do not approve of those baits he keeps in salt, unless where the Living ones are not possibly to be had (though I know he frequently kills with them, and peradventure more, than with any other, nay I have seen him refuse a living one for one of them) and much less of his artificial one; for though we do it with a counterfeit flie, me thinks it should hardly be expected, that a man should deceive a fish with a counterfeit fish. Which having said, I

H 2

shall

shall only add, and that out of my own experience, that I do believe a Bull-head, with his Guill-fins cut off (at some times of the year especially) to be a much better bait for a Trout, than a Minnow, and a Loach much better than that, to prove which I shall only tell you that I have much oftner taken Trouts with a Bull-head or a Loach in their Throats (for there a Trout has questionless his first digestion) than a Minnow; and that one day especially, having Angled a good part of the day with a Minnow, and that in as hopeful a day, and as fit a water, as could be wisht for that purpose, without raising any one Fish; I at last fell to't with the worm, and with that took fourteen in a very short space, amongst all which, there was not to my remembrance, so much as one, that had not a Loach or two, and some of them three, four, five, and six Loaches, in his throat and stomach; from whence I concluded, that had I Angled with that bait, I had made a notable days work of't.

But after all, there is a better way of Angling with a Minnow, than perhaps is fit either to teach or to practice; to which I shall only add, that a Grayling will certainly rise at, and sometimes take a Minnow, though it will be hard to be believ'd by any one, who shall consider the littleness of that Fishes mouth, very unfit to take so great a bait: but is affirm'd by many,

Chap. II. The Compleat Angler. 101

many, that he will sometimes do it, and I my self know it to be true, for though I never took a Grayling so, yet a Man of mine once did, and within so few paces of me, that I am as certain of it, as I can be of any thing I did not see, and (which made it appear the more strange) the Grayling was not above eleven inches long.

I must here also beg leave of your Master, and mine, not to controvert, but to tell him, that I cannot consent to his way of throwing in his Rod to an overgrown Trout, and afterwards recovering his Fish with his Tackle. For though I am satisfied he has sometimes done it, because he says so; yet I have found it quite otherwise, and though I have taken with the Angle, I may safely say, some thousands of Trouts in my life, my top never snapt, though my Line still continued fast to the remaining part of my Rod (by some lengths of Line curl'd round about my top, and there fastned with waxt silk, against such an accident) nor my hand never slackt, or slipt by any other chance, but I almost always infallibly lost my Fish, whether great, or little, though my Hook came home again. And I have often wondred how a Trout should so suddainly disengage himself from so great a Hook, as that we bait with a Minnow, and so deep bearded, as those Hooks commonly are, when I have

102 **The Compleat Angler. Part.II.**

seen by the forenam'd accidents, or the slipping of a knot in the upper part of the Line, by suddain, and hard striking, that though the Line has immediately been recover'd, almost before it could be all drawn into the water, the Fish clear'd, and gone in a moment. And yet to justifie what he says, I have sometimes known a Trout, having carried away a whole Line, found dead three, or four days after with the Hook fast sticking in him: but then it is to be suppos'd he had gorg'd it, which a Trout will do, if you be not too quick with him when he comes at a Minnow, as sure and much sooner than a Pike; and I my self have also, once, or twice in my life, taken the same Fish with my own Flie sticking in his Chaps, that he had taken from me the day before, by the slipping of a Hook in the arming: but I am very confident a Trout will not be troubled two hours with any Hook, that has so much as one handful of Line left behind with it, or that is not struck through a bone, if it be in any part of his mouth only; nay, I do certainly know, that a Trout so soon as ever he feels himself prick't, if he carries away the Hook, goes immediately to the bottom, and will there roet like a Hog upon the Gravel, till he either rub out, or break the Hook in the middle. And so much for this first sort of Angling in the middle for a Trout.

The

Chap. II. The Compleat Angler. 103

The second way of Angling in the middle, is with a Worm, Grub, Caddis, or any other Ground-bait for a Grayling, and that is vvith a Cork, and a foot from the bottom, a Grayling taking it much better there, than at the bottom, as has been said before; and this always in a clear water, and with the finest Tackle.

To which we may also, and vvith very good reason, add the third way of Angling by hand with a Ground-bait, as a third way of Fishing in the middle, which is common to both Trout, and Grayling, and (as I said before) the best way of Angling with a Worm, of all other I ever try'd whatever.

And now Sir, I have said all I can at present think of concerning Angling for a Trout and Grayling; and I doubt not, have tir'd you sufficiently: but I will give you no more trouble of this kind, whilst you stay; vvhich I hope will be a good while longer.

Viat. That will not be above a day longer; but if I live till *May* come twelve Month, you are sure of me again, either vvith my Master *Walton*, or without him, and in the mean time shall acquaint him how much you have made of me for his sake, and I hope he loves me

H 4 well

104 **The Compleat Angler, Part. II.**

well enough, to thank you for it.

Pisc. I shall be glad *Sir*, of your good Company at the time you speak of and shall be loath to part with you now ; but when you tell me you must go, I will then wait upon you more Miles on your way, than I have tempted you out of it, and heartily wish you a good Journey:

FINIS.

To

*To my most Honour'd Friend,
Charles Cotton, Esq;*

S I R,

YOU Now see, I have return'd you, your very pleasant, and useful discourse of the Art of *Flie-Fishing*, Printed, just as 'twas sent me: for I have been so obedient to your desires, as to endure all the praises you have ventur'd to fix upon me in it. And, when I have thank'd you for them, as the effects of an undissembled love: then, let me tell you *Sir*, that I will really endeavour to live up to the Character you have given of me, if there were no other reason; yet for this alone, that you, that love me so well; and always think what you speak, may not, for my sake, suffer by a mistake in your Judgment.

And *Sir*, I have ventur'd to fill a part of your Margin, by way of Paraphrase, for the Readers clearer understanding the situation both of your *Fishing-House*, and the pleasantness of that you dwell in. And I have ventur'd also to give him a Copy of Verses, that, you were
pleas'd

106 **The Compleat Angler. Part. II.**

pleas'd to send me, now some Years past ; in which, he may see a good Picture of both ; and, so much of your own mind too, as will make any Reader that is blest with a Generous Soul, to love you the better. I confess, that for doing this, you may justly Judg me too bold : if you do, I will say so too : and so far commute for my offence, that, though I be more than a hundred Miles from you , and in the eighty third Year of my Age, yet I will forget both, and next Month begin a Pilgrimage to beg your pardon, for, I would dye in your favour : and till then will live.

Sir,

London, *April.*
29th. 1676.

Your most affectionate

Father and Friend,

Izaak Walton.

THE
RETIREMENT.

Stanzas Irreguliers
TO
Mr. IZAAK WALTON.

Farewell thou busie World, and, may
We never meet again :
Here I can eat, and sleep, and pray,
And do more good in one short day,
Than he, who his whole Age out wears
Upon the most conspicuous Theaters,
Where nought, but vanity and vice appears.

2.

Good God ! how sweet are all things here !
How beautiful the Fields appear !
How cleanly, do we feed and lye !
Lord ! what good hours do we keep !
How quietly we sleep !
What peace, what unanimity !
How innocent from the lewd fashion,
Is all our business, all our recreation !

Ob,

3.

*Ob, how happy here's our leasure !
Ob, how innocent our pleasure !
Ob, ye Valleys, Ob ye Mountains !
Ob, ye Groves, and Chrystal Fountains,
How I love at liberty,
By turns, to come and visit ye!*

4.

*Dear solitude, the Souls best friend,
That Man, acquainted with himself doſt make,
And, all his makers wonders to intend,
With thee, I here converse at will,
And would be glad to do ſo ſtill,
For, it is thou alone, that keep'ſt the Soul awake.*

5.

*How Calm, and quiet a delight,
Is it, alone
To read, and meditate, and write ;
By none offended, and, offending none ?
To walk, ride, ſit, or ſleep at ones own eaſe !
And, pleaſing a Mans ſelf, none other to diſpleaſe.*

Ob

6.

*Oh my beloved Nymph fair Dove;
Princess of rivers, how I love
Upon thy flowry Banks to lye,
And view thy silver stream,
When guilded by a Summers beam!
And in it, all thy wanton fry
Playing at liberty:
And, with my Angle upon them
The all of treachery
I ever learnt industriously to try.*

7.

*Such streams, Romes yellow Tyber cannot show,
The Iberian Tagus or Ligurian Po;
The Maufe, the Danube, and the Rhine
Are puddle water all, compar'd with thine:
And Loyres pure streams yet too polluted are
With thine much purer to compare;
The rapid Garonne, and the winding Seine,
Are both too mean
Beloved Dove, with thee
To vie priority;
Nay, Tame and Isis, when conjoyn'd submit,
And lay their Trophies at thy silver feet.*

Ob

8.

*Oh my beloved Rocks that rise
 To awe the Earth, and brave the Skies :
 From some aspiring Mountains crown,
 How dearly do I love,
 Giddy with pleasure, to look down. (above)
 And from the vales, to view the noble heights
 Oh my beloved Caves ! from dog-stars heat,
 And all anxieties, my safe retreat :
 What safety, privacy, what true delight,
 In th' artificial night,
 Your gloomy entrails make,
 Have I taken, do I take !
 How oft when grief has made me fly
 To hide me from society,
 Even, of my dearest friends, have I
 In your recesses friendly shade ;
 All my sorrows open laid.
 And, my most secret woes, entrusted to your privacy!*

10.

*Lord ! would men let me alone ;
 What an over happy one
 Should I think my self to be !
 Might I in this desert place
 (Which most Men in discourse disgrace)
 Live but undisturb'd and free !*

Here,

Chap. II. The Compleat Angler. III

*Here, in this despis'd recess
Would I, maugre Winters cold,
And the Summers worst excess,
Try, to live out to sixty full years old!
And, all the while
Without an envious eye,
On any thriving under fortunes smile,
Contented live, and then, contented dye.*

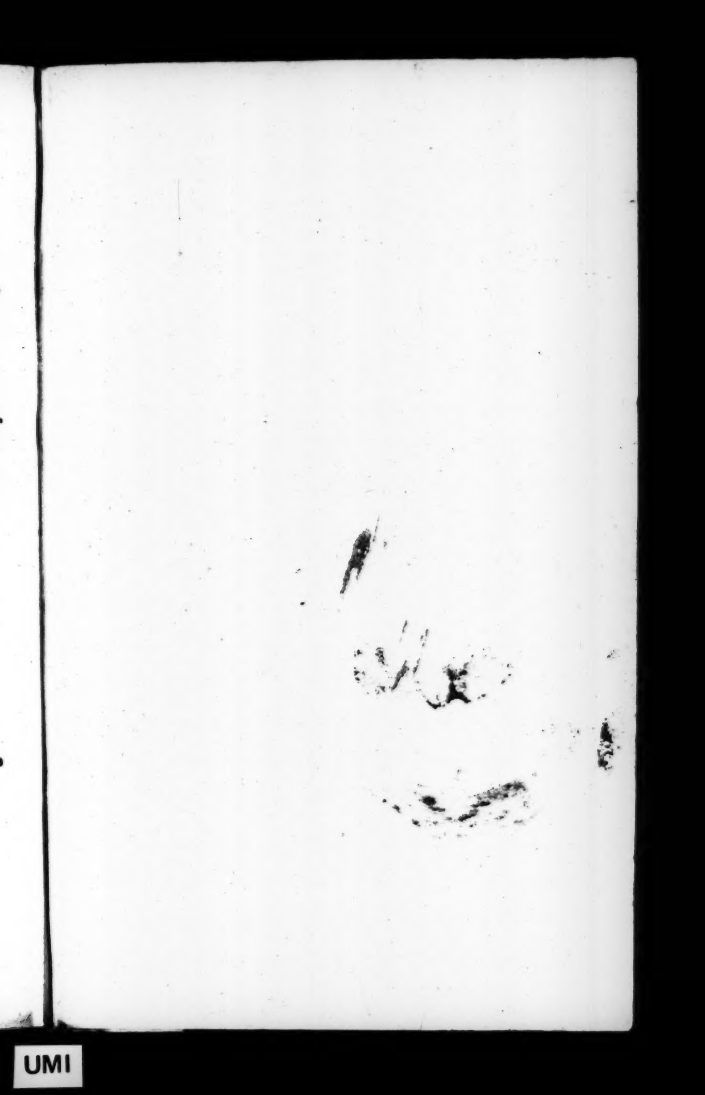
C. C.

FINIS.

Courteous Reader.

YOU may be pleas'd to take notice, that at the Sign of the Three Trouts in St. *Paul's* Church-Yard, on the North side, you may be fitted with all sorts of the best Fishing Tackle, by

John Margrave.





Sold by Rich Marriott
F H Van Houe fec

THE
EXPERIENC'D
ANGLER:
OR,
ANGLING IMPROV'D.
BEING
A General Discourse
OF
ANGLING.

Imparting the Aptest ways and
Choiceſt Experiments for the ta-
king of moſt ſorts of FISH in
Pond or River.

By Col. ROBERT VENABLES.

The Fourth Edition much Enlarged.

LONDON,
Printed for Richard Marriot, 1676.

0516 8572

СВОЯТА СМЕРТ

5/23/2016

1. The first step is to identify the problem or question that needs to be answered. This involves understanding the context and the specific requirements of the task.

103-1468

To the Reader.

their Masters: Besides, those Recreations are more subject to choler and passion, by how much those Creatures exceed a Hook or Line in worth; And indeed in those Exercises our pleasure depends much upon the will and humor of a sullen Cur, or *Kite*, (as I have heard their own passions phrase them) which also require much attendance, care, and skill to keep her serviceable to our ends. Further, these delights are often prejudicial to the Husbandman in his Corn, Grass and Fences; but in this pleasant and harmless *Art of Angling*, a man hath none to quarrel with but himself, and we are usually so intirely our own friends, as not to retain an irreconcilable hatred against our selves, but can in short time easily compose the enmity; and besides our selves none are offended, none endamaged; and this Recreation falleth within the capacity of the lowest fortune to compass, affording also profit as well

To the Reader.

as pleasure; in following of which Exercise a man may imploy his thoughts in the noblest Studies, almost as freely as in his Cloſet.

The Minds of *Anglers* being usually more calm and composed than many others, especially *Hunters* and *Falkners*, who too frequently lose their delight in their passion, and too often bring home more of melancholy and discontent than satisfaction in their thoughts; But the *Angler*, when he hath the worst success, looseth but a Hook or Line, or perhaps (what he never possessed) a Fish, and suppose he take nothing, yet he enjoyeth a delightfull walk by pleasant Rivers, in sweet Pastures, amongst odoriferous Flowers, which gratifie his Senses and delight his Mind; which Contentments induce many (who affect not *Angling*) to choose those places of pleasure for their Summers Recreation and Health.

But peradventure some may alledge

T O T H E
R E A D E R.

D*elight and Pleasure* are so fast Rivetted and firmly Rooted in the Heart of Man, that I suppose there is none so morose or melancholy, that will not only pretend to, but plead for an interest in the same, most being so much enamoured therewith, that they judge that life but a living death, which is wholly deprived or abridged of all Pleasure; and many pursue the same with so much eagerness and importunity, (as though they had been born for no other end) as that they not onely consume their most precious time, but also totally ruine their Estates thereby : for in this loose and licentious Age, when profuse Prodigality passes for the Characteristical mark of true Generosity; and Frugality (I mean not Niggardliness) is branded with the ignominious

A 3

To the Reader.

nominous blot of Baseness, I expect not that this undervalued Subject (though it propound delight at an easie rate) will meet with any other Entertainment than Neglect , if not Contempt , it being an Art which few take pleasure in, nothing passing for noble or delightful which is not costly ; as though men could not gratifie their Senses , but with the consumption of their Fortunes.

Hawking and *Hunting* have had their Excellencies celebrated with large *Encomiums* by divers Pens ; and although I intend not any undervaluing to those noble Recreations, so much famed in all Ages and by all degrees, yet I must needs affirm , that they fall not within the compass of every ones ability to pursue, being, as it were, onely entailed on great persons and vast Estates ; for if meaner Fortunes seek to enjoy them , *Alceon's* Fable often proves a true story, and those Birds of Prey not seldom quarry upon their

To the Reader.

thing, I know no sort of men less subject to Melancholy than *Anglers*; many have cast off other Recreations and embraced it, but I never knew any *Angler* wholly cast off (though occasions might interrupt) their affections to their beloved Recreation; and if this art may prove a *Noble, brave rest* to my mind, 'tis all the satisfaction I cover.

I have one Request for my self; which is, that thou apply not what is spoken concerning clear and swift Rivers, to slow or more dark coloured waters, nor the contrary: and if some passages do appear at first view as if contradictory, read them again, and take them in their most moderate and reconcileable sense, but force them not to clash by thy Interpretation, which of themselves intend it not; proposing only (from different grounds and reasons) to a further discovery, make particular instances and deductions from general Rules: But withal remember that
every

To the Reader.

every general admits of particular exceptions, and so thou hast my full scope and mind. To write so as to be plainly understood by every dull capacity, were to prostitute this pleasant Art, and render it contemptible; I desire chiefly to speak, so as to give Ingenuity liberty and scope to exercise it self; and also to provoke others to correct Errors, and out of their own experience to supply defects, and thereby make this delightful Art complete and perfect, which would be very great content and satisfaction to thy well-wishing Friend.

Robert Venables.

To the Reader.

ledge that this art is mean, melancholy, and insipid : I suppose the old Answer, *De gustibus non est disputandum*, will hold as firmly in Recreations as Palats; many have supposed *Angling* void of delight, having never tried it, yet have afterwards experimented it so full of content, that they have quitted all other Recreation, (at least in its season) to pursue it, and I do perswade myself, that whosoever shall associate himself with some honest, expert *Angler*, who will freely and candidly communicate his skill unto him, will in short time be convinced, that *Ars non habet inimicum nisi ignorantem*; and the more any experiment its harmless delight, (not subject to passion or expence) probably he will be induc'd to relinquish those pleasures which are obnoxious to choler or contention (which so discompose the thoughts, that nothing during that unsettlement can relish or delight the Mind) to pursue that
Recre-

To the Reader.

Recreation which composeth the Soul to that calmness and serenity, which gives a man the fullest possession and fruition of himself and all his enjoyments; this clearness and equanimity of Spirit being a matter of so high a concern and value in the judgments of many profound Philosophers, as any one may see that will bestow the pains to read *Seneca, De tranquillitate animi*, and *Petrarch, De utriusque conditionis statu*: Certainly he that lives *Sibi & Deo*, leads the most happy life; and if this Art do not dispose and incline the Mind of man to a quiet calm sedateness, I am confident it doth not (as many other delights) cast blocks and rubs before him to make his way more difficult and less pleasant. The cheapness of the Recreation abates not its pleasure, but with rational persons heightens it; and if it be delightful the charge of melancholy falls upon that score, and if Example (which is the best proof) may sway any thing,

TO HIS
Ingenious Friend the AUTHOR,
ON HIS
ANGLING Improv'd.

Honoured Sir,

T*Hough I never (to my knowledge)*
had the happiness to see your Face,
yet accidentally coming to a view of this
Discourse before it went to the Press, I held
my self obliged in point of gratitude for the
great advantage I received thereby, to ten-
der you my particular acknowledgment, e-
specially having been for thirty years past,
not only a Lover but a practiser of that
innocent Recreation, wherein by your judi-
cious Precepts I find my self fitted for a
Higher Form ; which expression I take
the boldness to use, because I have read and
practised

practised by many Books of this kind, formerly made publick; from which (although I received much advantage in the practick) yet (without prejudice to their worthy Authors) I could never find in them that height of Judgment and Reason, which you have manifested in this (as I may call it) Epitome of Angling, since my reading whereof I cannot look upon some Notes of my own gathering, but methinks I do puerilia tractare. But lest I should be thought to go about to magnifie my own Judgment, in giving yours so small a portion of its due, I humbly take leave with no more ambition than to kiss your hand, and to be accounted

Your humble and
thankful Servant,

J. W.

To the Author of the *Experienc'd Angler*,

By a Brother of the *Angle*.

UD's Fish, What have you done! y've half undon's,
The ART OF ANGLING to disclose at once,
By Publishing this Book: What? you a Lover
Of the said ART, and yet so much discover!
I cant but snap at you: Why, this same Book
Teacheth to 'stroy all Fish by Hook or Crook.
Your plain Directions when men understand,
No Fish above ground can escape their Hand;
For thereby Pike, Carp, Tench, Pearech, Gudgeon, trout,
Etc. may have a total rout-

Pray tell's the reason, 'T must be no small matter
That makes you strive of them to clear the water.

You'r no *Recusant*, sure; if y'are, you'd strive
More to preserve, and keep their Race alive:
Your Book foreshews, and makes it evident
That, *In few years, we cannot keep a Lent.*

But yet, Sir, 'Twas well done, therein to put
To every of these Fish, so fair a Cut;
That so when we o'th Fish deprived are,
The Cuts remain to shew what Shape they were-

Pardon, Sir, these confused Lines of mine;
Intoo much hast, I've cast in every Line:
I could not draw 'em smooth; For who could stay
Seeing Fish going all so plum away;

For I must say, *To catch Fish and to cheat 'em,*
Find who can surer wayes. and troth I'll eat 'em.

T. B.

THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS.

CHAP.	W	hen to provide Tools, and how to make & fit them,	1
I.		Divers sorts of Angling,	11
II.		Of the artificial Flie;	17
IV.		Of angling at the ground,	31
V.		All sorts of Baits for each kind of Fish,	47
VI.		How to find and keep your Baits,	61
VII.		The baunts of several Fish,	69
VIII.		What times are unseasonable to Angle in,	75
IX.		Best times and seasons to Angle,	78
X.		General observations,	85

TO


THE
EXPERIENC'D
ANGLER:

OR,
Angling Improv'd.

Part. III.

CHAP. I.

*When to provide Tools, and how to
make them.*

 OR the attaining of such Ends
which our Desires purpose to The In-
themselves, of necessity we tro-
must make use of such com- duction
mon Mediums, as have a Na- to the
ensuing
tural Tendency to the producing of Dis-
such Effects, as are in our Eye, and at course,
which we aim; and as in any work, if

B

one

The Experienced Angler :

one principal Material be wanting, the whole is at a stand, neither can the same be perfected: So in *Angling*, the end being Recreation, which consisteth in drawing the Fish to bite, that we may take them; if you want Tools though you have Baits, or Baits though you have Tackle, yet you have no part of pleasure by either of these singly: Nay, if you have both, yet want skill to use them, all the rest is to little purpose. I shall therefore first begin with your Tools, and so proceed in order with the rest.

The
time to
provide
Stocks
and
Tops.

I. In *Autumn*, when the Leaves are almost or altogether fallen (which is usually about the Winter Solstice) the Sap being then in the Root, which about the middle of *January* beginneth to ascend again, and then the time is past to provide your selves with Stocks or Tops: you need not be so exactly curious for your Stocks, as the Tops; though I wish you to choose the neatest Taper-ground you can for Stocks, but let your Tops be the most neat Rush-ground shoots you can get, straight and smooth; and (if for the ground-rod) near, or full two Yards long (the reason for that length shall be given presently) and if for the Flie, of what length you please, because you must either choose them

them to fit the Stock, or the Stock to fit them in a most exact proportion; neither do they need to be so very much Taper-ground as those for the ground, for if your Rod be not most exactly proportionable; (as well as slender) it will neither cast well, strike readily, nor ply and bend equally, which will very much endanger your Line. When you have fitted your self with Tops, and Stocks (for all must be gathered in one season) if any of them be crooked, bind them all together, and they will keep one another straight; or lay them on some even boarded floor, with a Weight on the crooked parts, or else bind them close to some straight staff or pole; but before you do this, you must breath them all, save the very top, in a gentle fire.

For the ground-Angle, I prefer the Cane The use of the Reed or Cane. or Reed before all other, both for its length and lightness; and whereas some object against its colour and stiffness: I answer, both these inconveniencies are easily remedied, the colour by covering it with thin Leather or Parchment, and those dyed into what colour you please, or you may colour the Cane it self, as you see daily done by those that sell them in London, especially if you scrape off the shining

4 The Experienc'd Angler: Part. III.

ning yellow out-side, but that weakneth the Rod, the stiffness of the Cane is helped by the length and strength of the top, which I would wish to be very much taper-grown, and of the full length I spoke of before, and so it will kill a very good Fish without ever straining the Cane, which will (as you may observe) yield and bend a little ; neither would I advise any to use a Reed that will not receive a Top of the fore-mentioned length. Such who most commend the Hazel rod (which I also value and praise, but for different reasons) above the Cane, do it because, say they, the slender Rod saveth the Line; but my opinion is, that the equal bending of the Rod chiefly (next to the skill of the *Angler*) saveth the Line, and the slenderness, I conceive, principally serveth to make the Flie-rod long and light, easie to be managed with one hand, and casteth the Flie far, which are to me the considerations chiefly to be regarded in a Flie-rod ; for if you observe, the slender part of the Rod (if strained) shoots forth in length as if it were part of the Line, so that the whole stress or strength of the Fish is born or sustained by the thicker part of the Rod, which is no stronger than the stronger end of such a Top as I did before

fore direct for the ground-rod : and you may prove what I say to be true , if you hang a Weight at the top of your Flie-rod, which you shall see ply and bend (in the stiff and thick part) more or less as the Weight is heavy or light. Having made this digression for the Cane, I return to the making up of the top, of which at the upper or small end I would have you to cut off about two foot or three quarters of a yard at most, and then piece neatly to the thick remaining part , a small shoot of Black-thorn or Crab tree (gathered in the season as before) fitted in a most exact proportion to the strength of the Hazel, and then cut off a small part of the slender end of the Black-thorn or Crab-tree, and lengthen out the same with a small piece of Whalebone, made round, smooth and taper, all which will make your Rod to be very long, gentle, and not so apt to break or stand bent as the Hazel, both which are great inconveniences, especially breaking, which will force you from your sport to amend your top.

But when you make a Rod to Angle for the Roach, you must not make the top so tender and gentle, as I have just before prescribed for the Flie, but you must either omit the Whalebone, or make it very stiff,

B 3

that

The Experienc'd Angler :

that so your Rod may exactly answer the motion of your hand, for the Roach being a Fish that only nibbleth, if you strike him not just in that very moment of his nibbling you will miss him, and a very tender top will fold and bend a little with a sudden jerk ; I know the Roach will sometimes bite surely , but that is seldom, and usually a large one.

The making the Line

2. To teach the way or manner how to make a Line, were time lost, it being so easie and ordinary; yet to make the Line well, handsome, and to twist the hair even and neat , makes the Line strong : For if one hair be long and another short , the short one receiveth no strength from the long one, and so breaketh, and then the other (as too weak) breaketh also. Therefore you must twist them slowly, and in the twisting , keep them from entangling together, which hindreth their right pleiting or bedding. Also I do not like the mixing of silk or thred with hair, but if you please you may (to make the Line strong) make it all of silk or thred, or hair, as strong as you please, and the lowest part of the smallest Lute or Viol strings , which I have proved to be very strong, but will quickly rot in the water, but you may help that in having new and strong to change the rotten

ten ones ; but as to hair (the most usual matter whereof Lines are made) I like sorrel , white , and gray best ; sorrel in muddy and boggy Rivers, both the other for clear waters : I never could find such vertue or worth in other colours, to give them so high praise as some do, yet if any other have worth in it, I must yield it to the pale watry green, and if you fancy that you may dye it thus ; Take a pottle of Allom-water , a large handful of Marigolds, boyl them until a yellow scum arise, then take half a pound of green Copperas, and as much Verdigreece, beat them into a fine powder, put those with the hair into the Allom-water, set all to cool for twelve hours, then take out the hair and lay it to dry.

In making your Lines you must put a difference betwixt one for the ground-Angle, and a Line for the Flie-Rod, your Line for the artificial Flie may be stronger than the ground-Line for the Trout, you may also in making a Line for the artificial Flie , much help your self to cast it well, for if you make the uppermost link twelve or twenty hairs strong, and one or two hairs less in the next link, and so abate to that proportion in every link, untill you come to the Flie it self: although you want

8 The Experienced Angler : Part. III.

a very slender, gentle, and light Rod; or in case you be a Learner and no accurate Artift in casting the Flie, yet by this means a very bungler will cast a Flie well ; you may also this way use a very long Rod of six or seven yards to manage with both hands, unto which accustoming your self, you will in time angle as dextrously with such a Rod, as if you had a very light one to use with one hand, and if you fasten your Hook, and cannot come to loosen it, you need not fear losing above a jerk or two at most (though you pull to break it) in regard the Line is so strong at the upper end. Leave a bought or bout at both ends of the Line, the one to put it to, and take it from your Rod; The other to hang your lowest link upon, to which your hook is fastned, and so you may change your hook so often as you please.

The
shape
of the
Hook.

3. Let your hooks be long in the shank, and of a compass somewhat inclining to roundness, but the point must stand even and streight, and the bending must be in the shank, for if the shank be streight, the point will hang outward, though when set on it stand right, yet it will after the taking of a few Fish, cause the hair at the end of the shank to stand bent, and so (by consequence) the point of the hook to hang

hang directly upwards. When you set on your hook, do it with strong but small silk, and lay your hair upon the inside of the hook, for if on the outside the silk will cut and fret it asunder, and to avoid the fretting of the hair by the hook on the inside, smooth all your hook upon a Whetstone, from the inside to the back of the hook slope-ways.

4. Get the best Cork you can without flaws or holes (Quills and Pens are not able to bear the strong streams) bore the Cork through with a small hot Iron, then put it into a Quill of a fit proportion, neither too large to split it, or so small to slip out, but so as it may stick in very closely: then pare your Cork into the form of a Pyramide, or a small Pear, and into what bigness you please, then upon a small Grindstone, or with a Pumice make it complete, for you cannot pare it so smooth as you may grind it, have Corks of all sizes.

5. Get a Musquet or Carbine Bullet, To try make a hole through it, and put it in a the strong twist, hang this on your hook to try the depth of the River or Pond. depth of the wa-
ter.

6. Take so much Parchment as will be To carry about four Inches broad, and five long, your make the longer end round, then take so Lines or artificia-
many al Flies.

The Experienc'd Angler :

many pieces more as will make five or six partitions, sow them all together, leaving the side of the longer square open, to put your Lines, spare links, hooks ready fastned, and Flies ready made, into the several partitions; this will contain much (lie flat and close in your Pocket) in a little room.

To shar:
pen the
hook that
is dulled

7. Have also a little Whetstone about two Inches long, and one quarter square; its much better to sharpen your hooks than a Flie, which either will not touch a well-tempered hook or leave it rough but not sharp.

To car
ry Baits
and o-
ther ne-
cessaries.

8. Have a piece of a Cane for the Bob and Palmer, with several Boxes of divers sizes for your Hooks, Corks, Silk, Thred, Lead, Flies, &c.

9. Bags of Linnen and Woollen for all sorts of Baits.

For
Worms,
Cadbait.
To land
great fish
when
you
want an
assistant.

10. Have a small Pole, made with a loop at the end, like that of your Line, but much bigger, to which must be fastned a small Net to land great Fish, without which (if you want assistance) you will be in danger to lose them: or which is better, much lighter, and less troublesom, get a very large hook called a landing hook, with a screw at the end, to screw it into a socket fixed at the end of a pole, to strike

strike into the mouth or any part of the fish, and so draw them to land : you may also fit to the same socket and pole two other hooks, one sharp to cut weeds away, the other to pull out wood.

11. Your Pannier cannot be too light : Your Pannier.
I have seen some made of Osiers cleft into slender, long splinters, and so wrought up, which is very neat and exceeding light; you must ever carry with you store of Hooks, Lines, Hair, Silk, Thred, Lead, Links, Corks of all sizes, lest if you lose or break (as is usual) any of them, you be forced to leave your sport, and return for supplies.

CHAP. II.

Divers sorts of Angling: first, of the Fly.

AS there are many kinds and sorts of Fish, so there are also various and different ways to take them; and therefore before we proceed to speak how to take each kind, we must say something in general of the several ways of Angling, as necessary to the better order of our work.

Angling therefore may be distinguished Several
either into fishing by day, or (which some ways of
commend Angling.

commend, but the Cold and Dews caused me to disrelish that which impaired my health) by night ; and these again are of two sorts,either upon the superficies of the water, or more or less under the surface thereof : of this sort is angling with the ground-Line, (with lead, but no flote) for the *Trout*, or with lead and flote for all sorts of fish or near the surface of the water for *Chub*, *Roach*, &c. or with a *Trowle* for the *Pike*, or a *Minnow* for the *Trout* ; of which more in due place.

That way of angling upon or above the water, is with *Cankers*, *Palmer's*, *Caterpillers*, *Cadbait*, or any worm bred on herbs or trees ; or with Flies natural or artificial ; of these last (viz. Flies) shall be our first discourse, as comprising much of the other last named, and as being the most pleasant and delightful part of angling.

But I must here take leave to dissent from the opinion of such who assign a certain Fly to each month, whereas I am certain, scarce any one sort of fly doth continue its colour and vertue one month ; and generally all Flies last a much shorter time, except the stone-fly (which some call the *May-fly*) which is bred of the water-cricket, which creepeth out of the River, and gets under the stones by the water-side, and there turneth

turneth to a Flie, and lieth under the stones; the *May-flie*, and the reddish Flie with ashy-gray wings. Besides, the season of the year may much vary the time of their coming in, a forward Spring bringeth them in sooner, and a late Spring the later: For Flies being creatures bred of putrefaction, do take life as the heat doth further or dispose the seminal vertue (by which they are generated) unto animation: and therefore all I can say as to time, is, that your own observation must be your best Instructor when is the time that each Flie cometh in and will be most acceptable to the Fish, of which I shall speak more fully in the next Section; further also I have observed that several Rivers and Soils produce several sorts of Flies, as the mossy, boggy Soils have one sort peculiar to them; the Clay-soil, gravelly and mountainous Country and Rivers, and a mellow, light soil, differ from them all; yet some sorts are common to all these sorts of Rivers and Soils, but they are few, and also differ somewhat in colour from those bred in another Soil.

In general, all sorts of Flies are very good in their season, for such Fish as will rise at the Flie, as *Salmon*, *Trout*, *Umber*,
What
Fish rise
best at
the Flie,
both na-
tural
and arti-
ficial.

The Experienc'd Angler :

Umber, Grayling, Bleak, Chevin, Roach, Dace, &c. Though some of these fish do love some Flies better than other ; except the Fish named, I know not any sort or kind that will (ordinarily and freely) rise at the Flie, though I know also some do Angle for *Bream* and *Pike* with artificial Flies, but I judg the labour lost, and the knowledge a needless curiosity ; those Fish being taken much easier (especially the *Pike*) by other ways : All the forementioned sorts of Fish will sometimes take the Flie much better at the top of the water, and at another time much better a little under the superficies of the water, and in this your own observation must be your constant and daily Instructor (for if they will not rise to the top, try them under) it not being possible (in my opinion) to give any certain rule in this particular : also the five sorts of Fish first named will take the artificial Flie, so will not the other, except an *Oakworm* or *Cadbait* be put on the point of the hook, or some other Worm suitable (as the Flie must be) to the season.

When
Fish
most co-
vet such
sort of
flie.

You may also observe (which my own experience taught me) that the Fish never rise eagerly and freely at any sort of Flie, untill that kind come to the waters side, for
though

though I have often at the first coming in of some Flies (which I judged they loved best) gotten several of them, yet I could never find that they did much (if at all) value them, until those sorts of Flies began to flock to the Rivers sides, and were to be found on the Trees and Bushes there in great numbers; for all sorts of Flies (where ever bred) do after a certain time come to the River's banks, (I suppose to moisten their bodies dried with the heat) and from the bushes and herbs there, skip and play upon the water, (where the Fish lie in wait for them) and after a short time die, and are not to be found; though of some kinds there come a second sort afterwards, but much less, as the *Orange Flie*; and when they thus flock to the River, then is the chiefest season to angle with that Flie: And that you may the better find what Flie they covet most at that instant, do thus:

When you come first to the River in the morning, with your Rod beat upon the bushes or boughs which hang over the water, and by their falling upon the water, you will see what sorts of Flies are there in greatest numbers; if divers sorts and equal in number, try them all, and you will quickly find which they most desire. Some-
 How to find what Flie the fish at that instant most desire.
 times

times they change their Flie (but its not very usual) twice or thrice in one day ; but ordinarily they seek not for another sort of Flie,till they have for some days even glutted themselves with a former kind, which is commonly when those Flies die and go out. Directly contrary to our *London* Gallants, who must have the first of every thing, when hardly to be got, but scorn the same when kindly ripe,healthful, common,and cheap : but the Fish despise the first, and covet when plenty,and when that sort grow old and decay, and another cometh in abundantly, then they change ; as if Nature taught them,that every thing is best in its own proper season,and not so desirable when not kindly ripe, or when through long continuance it beginneth to lose its native worth and goodness.

I shall add a few cautions and directions in the use of the natural Flie, and then proceed.

**Directi-
ons in u-
sing the
natural
Flie.**

1. When you Angle for *Chevin, Roach, Dace*, with the Flie, you must not move your Flie swiftly when you see the Fish coming towards it, but rather after one or two short and slow removes, suffer the Flie to glide gently with the stream towards the Fish ; or if in a standing or very slow water, draw the Flie slowly, and not

(not directly upon him, but) sloping and side-wise by him, which will make him more eager lest it escape him; for if you move it nimbly and quick, they will not (being fish of slow motion) follow as the *Trout* will.

2. When *Ghub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, shew themselves in a Sunshiny-day upon the top of the water, they are most easily caught with Baits proper for them; and you may choose from amongst them which you please to take.

3. They take an artificial flie with a *Cad-bait* or *Oakworm* on the point of the Hook, and the *Oakworms*, when they shew themselves, is better upon the water than under, or than the flie it self, and more desired by them.

C H A P. III.

Of the Artificial Flie.

BUT here I must premise, that it is *Of the* much better to learn how to make a artificial flie by sight, than by any Paper-direction *Flie.* can possibly be expressed, in regard the Terms of Art do in most parts of *England* differ, and also several sorts of flies are called by different names; some call
C the

The Experienc'd Angler :

the flie bred of the Water-cricket or Creeper, a *May-flie*, and some a *Stone-flie*, some call the *Cadbait-flie* a *May-flie*, and some call a short Flie of a sad golden green colour, with short brown wings, a *May-flie* : and I see no reason but all Flies bred in *May*, are properly enough called *May-flies*. Therefore except some one (that hath skill) would paint them, I can neither well give their names nor describe them, without too much trouble and prolixity ; nor, as I alledged, in regard of the variety of Soils and Rivers, describe the Flies that are bred and frequent each : But the Angler (as I before directed) having found the Flie which the Fish at present affect, let him make one as like it as possibly he can, in colour, shape, and proportion: and for his better imitation let him lay the natural Flie before him. All this premised and considered, let him go on to make his Flie, which according to my own practice I thus advise :

How to
make the
artificial
Flie several
ways.

First, I begin to set on my Hook (placing the hair on the inside of its shank) with such coloured Silk as I conceive most proper for the Flie, beginning at the end of the hook, and when I come to that place which I conceive most proportionable for the Wings, then I place such coloured feathers

thers there, as I apprehend most resemble the Wings of the Flie, and set the points of the wings towards the head, or else I run the feathers (and those must be stript from the Quill or Pen, with part of it still cleaving to the feathers) round the hook, and so make them fast, if I turn the feathers round the hook, then I clip away those that are upon the back of the hook, that so (if it be possible) the point of the hook may be forced by the feathers (left on the inside of the hook) to swim upwards ; and by this means I conceive the stream will carry your Flies wings in the posture of one flying ; whereas if you set the points of the wings backwards, towards the bending of the hook, the stream (if the feathers be gentle as they ought) will fold the points of the wings in the bending of the hook, as I have often found by experience : After I have set on the wing, I go on so far as I judge fit, till I fasten all, and then begin to make the body, and the head last ; the body of the Flie I make several ways , if the Flie be one intire colour , then I take a Worsted thred, or Moccado end, or twist wool or fur into a kind of thred, or wax a small slender silk thred, and lay wool, fur, &c. upon it, and then twist, and the materials

will stick to it, and then go on to make my Flie small or large, as I please. If the Flie (as most are) be of several colours, and those running in circles round the Flie, then I either take two of these threds (fastning them first towards the bent of the Hook) and so run them round, and fasten all at the Wings, and then make the Head; or else I lay upon the Hook, wool, fur of Hare, Dog, Fox, Bear, Cow, Hog (which close to their bodies have a fine fur) and with a silk of the other colour bind the same wool or fur down, and then fasten all: Or instead of the silk running thus round the Flie, you may pluck the feather from one side of those long feathers which grow about a Cock or Capons neck or tail, (which some call *Hackle*) then run the same round your Flie, from head to tail, making both ends fast; but you must be sure to sute the feather answerable to the colour you are to imitate in the Flie; and this way you may counterfeit those rough Insects (which some call Wool-beds, because of their wool-like out-side, and rings of divers colours, I take them to be Palmer Worms) which the Fish much delight in. Let me add this only, that some Flies have forked tails, and some have horns, both which you must imitate with a slender hair fastned

fastned to the head or tail of your Flie, when you first set on your Hook, and in all things, as length, colour, as like the natural Flie as you can possibly. The Head is made after all the rest of the body, of silk or hair, as being of a more shining glossy colour, than the other materials, as usually the head of the Flie is more bright than the body, and is usually of a different colour from the body: Sometimes I make the body of the Flie with a *Peacock's* feather, but that is only one sort of Flie, whose colour nothing else that I could ever get would imitate, being the short, sad, golden, green, Flie I before mentioned, which I make thus; Take one strain of a *Peacock's* feather (or if that be not sufficient, then another) wrap it about the hook, till the body be according to your mind; if your Flie be of divers colours, and those lying long-ways from head to tail, then I take my Dubbing, and lay them on the hook long-waies one colour by another (as they are mixt in the natural Flie from head to tail) then bind all on, and make it fast with silk of the most predominant colour; and this I conceive is a more artificial way than is practised by many Anglers, who use to make such a Flie of one colour, and bind it

The Experienc'd Angler :

on with silk, so that it looks like a Flie with round circles, but nothing at all resembles the Flie it is intended for; the head, horns, tail, are made as before. That you may the better counterfeite all sorts of Flies, get furs of all sorts and colours, you can possibly procure, as of Bears hair, Foxes, Cows, Hogs, Dogs, who next their bodies have a fine soft hair or fur, Moccado ends, Crewels, and dyed wool of all colours, with feathers of Cocks, Capons, Hens, Teals, Mallards, Widgeons, Pheasants, Partridges, the feather under the Mallard, Teal, or Widgeons-wings, and about their tails, about a Cock or Capons neck and tail, of all colours; and generally of all Birds, Kite, Hickwall, &c. that you may make yours exactly of the colour with the natural Flie. And here I must give some cautions and directions, as for the natural Flie, and so pass on to Baits for angling at the ground. I have observed that very many make their Flie suitable to the most Orient colour ye see in the natural Flie, which is usually the back-part, and commonly it excelleth the belly in lustre and splendor, and so ye conceive ye imitate the Flie exactly, when it is nothing so, because the back-part is out of the fishes eye, and if ye fail of sport as usually

usually ye do, ye impute it to the want of the right flie, when as ye have not truly imitated the right colour of the flie, which the Fish chiefly see and regard, viz. the belly of the flie : Therefore.

1. In making the artificial flie, chiefly observe the belly of the Flie, for that colour the fish most take notice of, as being most in their eye.

Directions in making the artificial Flie.

2. When you try how to fit your colour of the Flie, wet your Fur, Hair, Wool, or Moccado, otherwise you will fail in your work ; for though when those materials are dry, they exactly sute the colour of the Flie yet the water will alter most colours, and make them either brighter or darker.

3. Flies made for the *Salmon* are much better being made with four Wings, than if of two onely, and with six better than them of four ; and if behind each pair of wings you place a different colour for the body of the flie, it is much the better: and this in my judgment argueth that he loveth to have several flies on the hook at once, for the flie looketh as if it were divers flies together.

1. When you angle with the artificial flie, you must either fish in a River not fully cleared from some rain lately fallen,

Cautions for the use of the artificial Flie.

that

The Experienc'd Angler :

that had discoloured it ; or in a Moorish River discoloured by moss or bogs ; or else in a dark,cloudy day, when a gentle gale of wind moves the water ; but if the wind be high,yet so as you may guide your tools with advantage, they will rise in the plain Deeps, and then and there you will commonly kill the best Fish ; but if the wind be little or none at all,you must Angle in the swift streams.

2. You must keep your artificial flie in continual motion, though the day be dark, water muddy,and wind blow,or else the Fish will discern and refuse it.

3. If you Angle in a River that is mudded by rain, or passing through mosses or bogs, you must use a larger bodied Flie than ordinary ; which argues that in clear Rivers the Flie must be smaller, and this not being observed by some,hindreth their sport, and they impute their want of success to the want of the right Flie, when perhaps they have it, but made too large.

Directions upon the water and its colours.

1. If the water be clear and low, then use a small bodied Flie with slender wings,

2. When the water beginneth to clear after rain, and is of a brownish colour, then a red or Orange Flie.

3. If

3. If the day be clear, then a light-coloured Flie, with slender body and wings.

4. In dark weather as well as dark waters, your Flie must be dark.

5. If the water be of a Whey-colour or whitish, then use a black or brown Flie: yet these five last Rules do not always hold, for there is no general but admits of particular exceptions, though usually in clearest mountainous or hilly Rivers they do, or else I had altogether omitted them.

6. When you Angle with an artificial Flie, your Line may be twice the length of your Rod, except the River be much cumbered with wood and trees.

7. For every sort of Flie have three, one of a lighter colour, another sadder than the natural Flie, and a third of the exact colour with the Flie, to suite all waters and weathers as before.

8. I could never find (by any experience of mine own or other mens observation) that Fish would freely and eagerly rise at the artificial Flie, in any slow muddy River: by muddy Rivers I mean such Rivers, whose bottom or ground is slime or mud: for such as are mudded by rain (as I have already, and shall after-

afterwards further shew) at some times and seasons I would choose to angle, yet in standing Meers or Loughs I have known them (in a good wind) to rise very well, but not so in slimy Rivers, either *Weever* in *Cheshire*, or *Sow* in *Staffordshire*, &c. and others in *Warwickshire*, and *Blackwater* in *Ulster*; in the last, after many trials, I could never find (though in its best streams) almost any sport, save at its influx into *Lough Neagh*, but there the working of the *Lough* makes it sandy; and they will bite also near *Tome Shaness Castle*, *Mountjoy*, *Antrim*, &c. even to admiration; yet sometimes they will rise in that River a little, but not comparable to what they will do in every little Lough, in any small gale of wind: And though I have often reasoned in my own thoughts to search out the true cause of this, yet I could never so fully satisfy my own judgment, so as to conclude any thing positively; yet have taken up these two ensuing particulars as most probable.

Two
conjectures why
Fish rise
not well
at the artificial
Flie in
slimy Rivers.

1. I did conceive the depth of the Loughs might hinder the force of the Sunbeams from operating upon, or heating the mud, which in those Rivers (though deep, yet not so deep by much as the Loughs) I apprehend it doth, because in
great

great droughts fish bite but little in any River, but nothing at all in slimy Rivers, in regard the mud is not cooled by the constant and swift motion of the River, as in gravelly or sandy Rivers, where (in fit seasons) they rise most freely, and bite most eagerly, save as before in droughts, notwithstanding at that season some sport may be had, (though not with the flie) whereas nothing at all will be done in muddy slow Rivers.

2. My second supposition was, Whether (according to that old received Axiom, *suo queque simillima celo*) the fish might not partake of the nature of the River, in which they are bred and live, as we see in men born in fenny, boggy, low, moist grounds, and thick air, who ordinarily want that present quickness, vivacity and activity of body and mind, which persons born in dry, hilly, sandy Soils and clear Air, are usually endued withall: And so the fish participating of the nature of muddy Rivers, which are ever slow, (for if they were swift, the stream would cleanse them from all mud) are not so quick, lively, and active, as those bred in swift, sandy, or stony Rivers, and so coming to the flie with more deliberation, discern the same to be counterfeit,

feit, and forsake it : whereas on the contrary, in stony, sandy, swift Rivers (being more cold, the fish are more active, and so more hungry and eager, the stream and hand keeping the flie in continual motion, they snap the same up, without any pause, lest so desirable a morsel escape them.

43. You must have a very quick eye, a nimble rod and hand, and strike with the rising of the fish, or he constantly finds his mistake, and putteth out the hook again : I could never (my eye-sight being weak) discern perfectly where my flie was, the wind and stream carrying it so to and again, that the Line was never any certain direction or guide to me ; but if I saw any fish rise, I use to strike if I discerned it might be within the length of my Line.

14. Be sure in casting that your Flie fall first into the water, if the Line fall first, it scareth the fish, therefore draw it back, and cast again, that the flie may fall first. When you Angle in slow Rivers or still places with the artificial flie, cast your flie over cross the River, and let it sink a little in the water, and draw him gently back again, so as you break not the water, or raise any circles or motion in the water,
and

and let the current of the River carry the flie gently down with the stream, and this way I have found the best sport in slow muddy Rivers with the artificial Flie.

The best way to angle with the *Cad-* How to
dis, is to fish with it on the top of the wa- Angle
ter as you do with the flie; it must stand with the
upon the shank of the Hook, as doth the *Cadbait*
artificial flie (if it come into the bent
of the Hook, the Fish will little, or not at
all value it, nor if you pull the blew gut
out of it) and to make it keep that place,
you must, when you set on your Hook,
fasten a Horse-hair or two under the silk,
with the ends standing a very little out
from under the silk, and pointing towards
the Line, and this will keep it from slid-
ing back into the bent: and thus used it
is a most excellent Bait for a *Trout*. You
may if you please place a small slender
Lead upon the shank of your Hook to sink
the Bait where the River is not violently
swift, and draw the *Cadbait* over the Lead,
you may make the head of black silk,
and the body of yellow wax; this you
must be often raising from the bottom,
and so let it sink again.

You may imitate the *Cadbait*, by ma-
king the body of *Shammy*, the head black
silk

filk. in a muddy water the Trout will not take the Cadbait, you must therefore only use him in clear waters.

I might here insert several sorts of flies, with the colours that are used to make them ; but for the reasons before given, that their colours alter in several Rivers and Soils, and also because though I name the colours, yet its not easie to choose that colour by any description, except so largely performed as would be over-large, and swell this small piece beyond my intended conciseness ; and I suppose the former directions (which are easie and short) if rightly observed, are full enough and sufficient for making and finding out all sorts of flies in all Rivers. I shall only add, that the *Salmon* flies must be made with Wings standing one behind the other, whether two or four ; also he delights in the most gaudy and orient colours you can choose ; the Wings I mean chiefly, if not altogether, with long tails and wings.

C H A P. IV.

Of Angling at the Ground.

NOW we are come to the second sort Ground-
of Angling (*viz.*) Under the wa-angling.
ter, which if it be with the ground-Line
for the *Trout*, then you must not use any
flore at all, only a Plumb of Lead, which
I would wish might be a small Bullet, the
better to rowl on the ground; and it must
also be lighter or heavier, as the stream
runneth swift or slow, and you must place
it about nine inches or a foot from the
Hook, the Lead must run upon the
ground, and you must keep your Line as
streight as possible, yet by no means so
as to raise the Lead from the ground, but
do not over-lead your Line by any means;
and if you angle amongst Weeds, place
your Lead upon the shank of the hook, it
will not be so apt to intangle upon them:
your top must be very gentle, that the
fish may more easily, and (to himself)
insensibly run away with the Bait, and not
be scared with the stiffness of the Rod;
and if you make your top of Blackthorn
and Whalebone as I before directed, it
will conduce much to this purpose: Nei-
ther

ther must you strike so soon as you feel the fish bite, but slack your Line (a little) that so he may more securely swallow the Bait and hook himself, which he will sometimes do, especially if he be a good one ; however the least jerk hooks him, and indeed you can scarce strike too easily. Your Tackle must be very fine and slender, and so you will have more sport than if you had strong Lines (which fright the Fish) but the slender Line is easily broke with a small jerk. If you use a Line much longer than your Rod, and fish with a Garden-worm without float or lead, drawing the same up and down the stream as you do the *Cad-bait*, you will take more *Trouts* than with Lead, chiefly if the day be clear. The Morning and Evening are best for the ground-Line for a *Trout* in clear weather and water, but in cloudy weather or muddy water, you may Angle at ground all day.

Great Fish (especially *Trouts*) feed most in the Night if it be dark, for they are very wary and circumspect to avoid danger whilst they are gathering their food (as generally all wild Creatures are) and know the times and seasons most fit for them to feed, and when they may most securely range abroad, even as the
Buck

Buck when in season and fat, lodgeth all day and grazeth in the Night, for the greater Trouts are most bold and eager in the darkeſt Nights, and then they bite not the next Day enſuing, except it prove dark and windy, and only then a little in the Afternoon.

2. You may alſo in the Night angle for ^{Night} the *Trout* with two great Garden-worms, ^{Angling.} hanging as equally in length as you can place them on your hook; caſt them from you as you would caſt the Flie; and draw them to you again upon the top of the water, and ſuffer them not to ſink; therefore you muſt uſe no Lead this way of Angling: you may hear the Fiſh riſe, give ſome time for him to gorge your Bait, as at the ground, then ſtrike gently. If he will not take them at the top, add ſome Lead, and try at the ground, as in the day-time. When you feel him bite, order your ſelf as in day angling at the ground: Uſually the beſt *Trouts* bite in the Night, and will riſe in the ſtill Deeps, but not ordinarily in the ſtream. Or you may uſe a black Snail, or with a little black Velvet may counterſeit one, this is an excellent way for a *Trout* in the Night, as the Snail is for a *Chub* alſo early in the Morning.

D

3. You

Angling
for the
Trout
with a
Menow.

3. You may angle also with a *Menow* for the *Trout*, which you must put on your hook thus; First, put your hook through the very point of his lower Chap, and draw it quite through, then put your hook in at his mouth, and bring the point to his tail, then draw your line streight, and it will bring him into a round compass, and close his mouth that no water get in, which you must avoid, or you may stitch up his mouth Or you may (when you set on your hook) fasten some bristles under the silk, leaving the points above a straws breadth and half, or almost half an inch standing out towards the line, which will keep him from slipping back. You may also imitate the *Menow* as well as the flie, but it must be done by an Artift with the Needle.

The use
of the
Swivel.

You must also have a Swivel or Turn, placed about a yard or more from your hook; you need no Lead on your line, you must continually draw your bait up the stream near to the top of the water.

If you
miss a
Trout
how to
take her
after-
wards.

If you strike a large *Trout*, and she either break hook or line, or get off, then near to her hold (if you can discover it) or the place you struck her, fix a short stick in the water, and with your Knife loose a small piece of the rind, so as you may lay your line in it, and yet the bark be close enough
to

to keep your line in that it slip not out, nor the stream carry it away; bait your hook with a Garden or Lobworm (let your hook and line be very strong) let the bait hang a foot from the stick, then fasten the other end of your line to some stick or bough in the Bank, and within one hour you may be sure of her if all your tackle hold.

The next way of Angling is with a *Trowle* for the *Pike*, which is very delightful, you may buy your *Trowle* ready made, therefore I shall not trouble my self to describe it, only let it have a winch to wind it up withall. For this kind of Fish your tackle must be strong, your Rod must not be very slender at the top, where you must place a small slender ring for your line to run through, let your line be silk at least two yards next the hook, and the rest of strong Shoomakers thred, your hook double, & strongly armed with wire for above a foot, then with a probe or needle you must draw the wire in at the fishes mouth and out at the tail, that so the hook may lie in the mouth of the fish, and both the points on either side; upon the shank of the hook fasten some lead very smooth, that it go into the fishes mouth and sink her with the head downward, as though she had been playing on the top of the water, and were

How to
angle
for the
Pike
with a
Trowle
and se-
veral o-
ther
ways.

D 2

returning

returning to the bottom ; your bait may be small *Roeb*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Loch*, or a frog sometimes: your hook thus baited, you must tie the tail of the fish close and fast to the wire, or else withdrawing to and again the fish will rend off the hook, or which I judge neater, with a needle and strong thred, stich through the fish on either side the wire and tie it very fast: all being thus fitted, cast your fish up and down in such places as you know *Pikes* frequent, observing still that he sink some depth before you pull him up again. When the *Pike* cometh (if it be not sunk deep) you may see the water move, at least you may feel him, then slack your line and give him length enough to run away to his hold, whither he will go directly, and there pouch it, ever beginning (as you may observe) with the head, swallowing that first, thus let him lie untill you see the line move in the water, and then you may certainly conclude he hath pouched your bait, & rangeth abroad for more, then with your trowl wind up your line till you think you have it almost streight, then with a smart jerk hook him, and make your pleasure to your content. Some use no Rod at all, but hold the line on links on their hand, using lead and float: others use a very great hook

hook with the hook at the tail of the fish, and when the *Pike* cometh, then they strike at the first pull ; others use to put a strong string or thred or at the mouth of the bait and out at one of the gills, and so over the head and in at the other gill, and so tye the bait to the hook, leaving a little length of the thred or string betwixt the fish and the hook ; that so the *Pike* may turn the head of the bait the better to swallow it, and then as before, after some pause strike. Some use to tye the bait-hook and line to a bladder or bundle of flags or bul-rushes, fastening the line very gently in the cleft of a small stick , to hold the bait from sinking more than (its allowed length) half a yard, and the stick must be fastened to the bladder or flags , to which the line being tyed that it might easily unfold and run to its length, and so give the *Pike* liberty to run away with the bait, and by the bladder or flags recover their line again. You must observe this way to turn off your bait with the wind or stream, that they may carry it away, or some use (for more sport, if the *Pike* be a great one) to tye the same to the foot of a goose, which the *Pike* (if large) will sometimes pull under the water.

When you fish for the *Pike* at Snap, you
D 3 must

must give him leave to run a little , then strike, but be sure strike the contrary way to that which he runneth : a double spring hook I conceive principally, if not only useful in this way of angling, and much to be preferred before all other hooks ; for the *Pike* will usually hold the bait so fast in his teeth that you may fail to pull it out of his mouth, and also strike him ; whereas with a spring hook, though he hold it never so fast, the wire will draw through the bait, and so the spring will open , and you will very frequently hook him on the outside of his mouth. I am opinionated, that angling with the Trowle is a surer, at least a more easie way for a learner to practise (who wants an instructor) than the Snap ; beside, I judge the snap chiefly useful to take a *Pike*, which often pricking with the Trowle hath made wary and cunning (for one that hath not been scared, will swallow your bait boldly) such a one is best taken at Snap : this way of angling put on your bait thus, make a hole with the point of your hook or probe in the fishes side as near the middle as you can , put in your armed wire, and draw it out at the mouth, and with a needle and thred sew up the fishes mouth. Others use the probe to draw the arming wire under the skin only
(not

(not the ribs by any means) and out at the bone behind the gills, then again under the gills, and out at the mouth; this latter way I approve as much the better; because there is only the skin to hinder the drawing and piercing of the hook, whereas the former way, if the *Pike* hold fast (as commonly he doth) all the flesh on the outside of the fish will be drawn into a heap or lump so thick, that the hook (except very large) can hardly reach through it to pierce the *Pike's* chaps.

1. After he hath taken your bait, if he move slowly, and make no stop, give him time, and you will seldom miss him.

2. Or if he lie still after he hath taken the bait (as sometimes he will) gently move your hand to try which way his head lieth if you cannot discover that, then strike directly upwards, otherwise we may (instead of hooking him) pluck the bait out of his mouth.

3. If he take it upon the top of the water and lie still, you see which way his head lieth and may order your self accordingly.

4. Observe that at the Snap your tackle must be much stronger than for the Trawl, in regard you must strike much more forcibly.

5. At snap you must give two lusty jerks

The Experienc'd Angler :

jerks one after the other, and be sure you ever strike contrary to the way his head lyeth, lest you pull the bait from him only.

6. Fasten your swivel to the end of your Line, and hook your armed wire upon the swivel.

7. For the Snap, cast a piece of lead hollow and so wide as to go over the wire, and the end of the hook which you draw within the Fishes mouth, let it lie there to sink his head downward, make it so rough that it slip not out, or sew up the fishes mouth; I like this way much better than to place the lead upon the line (as some use) for the lead will often slip further, and also entangle the bait and line together.

8. Both with Trowle and at Snap, close at the gills cut away one of the fins, and also behind the vent another on the contrary side, the bait will play the better.

9. In casting with trowling, or at snap, be sure to raise your hand a little when you see the bait ready to fall into the water, this will prevent that the bait dash not violently into the water, in its fall, which I presume sometimes frights the Pike (though he be a bold fish) when it falls behind, and near to him.

10. Make your lead for the Trowle four-

four-square and much thicker and shorter than most use, the square will keep the hook in the same place as you set it, and the thick short lead sinks him with his head downward, so that he will not shoot sloop-wise, as he doth when the lead is long.

11. Joyn your wire links together with a steel ring, the bait will play and sink better, if it lye only in the baits mouth, it will not intangle in the line so often.

12. A large bait doth more invite the *Pike*, but the lesser takes him more surely, as soonest gorged, and the hook certainly taken into his mouth both at Snap and Trowel.

13. Use a large white *Menow* put on with the hook in his mouth, angle with him for a *Pike*, as you do for a *Trout*, and let your hook be small, use not a great hook with a small bait.

How to use the Menow for a Pike.

Get a single hook slender and long in the shank, let it resemble the shape of a Shepherd's crook, put lead upon it, as thick near the bent as will go into the *Menow's* mouth, place the point of the hook directly up the face of the fish, let the
Rod

Rod be as long as you can handsomely manage , with a line of the same length, cast up and down, and manage it as when you trowle with any other bait ; if when the *Pike* hath taken your bait he run to the end of the line before he hath gorged it, do not strike but hold sti'l only , and he will return back and swallow it: but if you use that bait with a Trowl, I rather prefer it before any other bait that I know,

Angling
for Roch-
es at Lon-
don
Bridgt.

In the Months of *June* and *July*, a sort of exceeding large and very excellent Roches , haunt about *London-Bridge* (in other Months none of that sort are there to be found) and they Angle for them with this bait and in the manner following, *viz.* They take a strong Cord , at the end of it they fasten a weight of Lead, about two or three pounds ; then about a foot above the Lead they make a Packthred of ten or twelve fathom long fast to the Cord, and unto the Packthred, (at due distances) they make ten or twelve strong links of hair with Roch-hooks at them, baited with a Periwinkle, which they gather in the *Thames* in shells , they break the shells, and take the Periwinkle whole, (for if broken its spoiled) and that part which sticks to the shell they cut off from the Fish and leave it sticking to the shell, and

and bait their Hooks with the other, (I suppose a small white Snail may serve in want of a *Periwinkle*, it's like it) and holding the strong Cord in their hands, the biting of the Fish draweth the Packthred, and that the Cord, whereby they feel the Fishes biting, and so order themselves according as their own judgments dictate, and sometimes draw up two, three, or more *Roches* at once.

There are two ways of fishing for *Eels*, Brogling proper and peculiar to that Fish alone ; for *Eels*. the first is termed by some, *Brogling* for *Eels*, which is thus, Take a short strong Rod, and exceeding strong Line, with a little compassed but strong Hook, which you must bait with a large well scoured Red-worm, then place the end of the Hook very easily in the cleft of a stick, that it may very easily slip out; with this stick and hook thus baited, search for holes under stones, Timber, Roots, or about Floud-gates ; if there be a good *Eel*, give her time and she will take it, but be sure she hath gorged it, and then you may conclude, if your Tackling or hold fail not, she is your own.

The other way is called *Bobbing* for Bobbing *Eels*, which is thus, Take the largest Gar- for *Eels*. den-worms, scour them well, and with a Needle

The Experienc'd Angler :

Needle run a very strong thred or silk through them from end to end, take so many as that at last you may wrap them about a Board (for your hand will be too narrow) a dozen times at least, then tie them fast with the two ends of the thred or silk, that they may hang in so many long bouts or hanks, then fasten all to a strong Cord, and something more than a handful above the Worms fasten a plumb of Lead of about three quarters of a pound, and then make your Cord sure to a long and strong Pole; with these Worms thus ordered you must fish in a muddy water, and you will feel the *Eels* tug strongly at them; when you think they have swallowed them as far as they can, gently draw up your Worms and *Eels*, and when you have them near the top of the water, hoist them a-main to land; and thus you may take three or four at once, and good ones if there be store.

But before I proceed to give you each sort of Bait for every kind of Fish, give me leave to add a few Cautions and directions for the ground-Line and Angling, as I did for the natural and artificial Flie, and so we shall go on.

I. When

1. When you Angle at ground, keep your Line as streight as possible, suffering none of it to lie in the water, because it hindereth the nimble jerk of the Rod; but if (as sometimes it will happen) you cannot avoid, but some little will lie in the water, yet keep it in the stream above your fote, by no means below it.

2. When you Angle at the ground for small Fish, put two Hooks to your Line fastned together thus; Lay the two Hooks together, then draw the one shorter than the other by nine Inches, this causeth the other end to over-reach as much as that is shorter at the Hooks, then turn that end back to make a bought or boughte, and with a water-knot (in which you must make both the links to fasten) tie them so as both links may hang close together, and not come out at both ends of the knot; upon that link which hangeth longest, fasten your Lead near a foot above the Hook, put upon your Hooks two different Baits, and so you may try (with more ease and less time) what Bait the Fish love best: and also very often (as I have done) take two Fish at once with one Rod: You have also by this Experiment one Bait for such as feed close upon the ground, as *Gudgeon, Flounder, &c.* and

The Experienc'd Angler :

and another for such as feed a little higher, as *Roach*, *Dace*, &c.

3. When you Angle at ground for the *Salmon*, put three or four Lob-worms well scowred on your Hook at once, and order your self as when you Angle at ground for a *Trout*.

4. Some use to lead their Lines heavily, and to set their Cork about a foot or more from the end of the Rod, with a little Lead to buoy it up, and thus in violent swift streams they avoid the offence of a flote, and yet perfectly discern the biting of the Fish, and so order themselves accordingly; but this hath its inconvenience (*viz.*) The lying of the Line in the water.

5. Give all Fish time to gorge the bait and be not over-hasty, except you Angle with such tender baits as will not endure nibbling at, but must upon every touch be struck at (as Sheeps-blood, Flies, which are taken away at the first pull of the Fish) and therefore inforce you at the first touch to try your fortune.

Now we are to speak next of Baits more particularly proper for every Fish, wherein I shall observe this method; first, to name the Fish, then the Baits (according as my Experience hath proved them) grateful

grateful to the Fish, and to place them as near as I can in such order as they come in season, though many of them are in season at one instant of time, and equally good. I would not be understood, as if when a new Bait cometh in, the old one were antiquated and useles: for I know the Worm lasteth all the year, the Flie all Summer, one sort of bob all Winter, the other under Cow-dung in *June* and *July*; but I intimate that some are found when others are not *in rerum natura*.

CHAP. V.

Of all sorts of Baits for each kind of Fish, and how to find and keep them.

1. **T**HE *Salmon* taketh the artificial flie Baits for very well, but you must use a Trowl the *Salmon* (as for the *Pike*) or he being a strong Fish will hazard your Line, except you give him length; his Flies must be much larger than you use for other Fish, the Wings very long (two or four) behind one another, with very long tails; his chiefeft ground-bait a great Garden or Lob-worm, he spawneth about *Michaelmas*: when you strike him he usually falleth to plunge and

To pre-
vent
breaking
hold in
tender-
mouth'd
Fishes.

and leap, but doth not ordinarily endeavour to run to the end of the Line as the *Trout* will; young *Salmons* under a quarter of a yard long, have tender mouths, so as they are apt to break their hold: to obviate which inconvenience, I have known some that use to fasten two hooks together, in like manner as some double Pike hooks lately used in Trowling are made, not with the points opposite to one another, but about a quarter of a Circle from each other, and on them they make their Flie, that if one Hook break hold, the other may not fail.

2. The *Trout* takes all sorts of Worms, especially *Brandlings*; all sorts of Flies, *Menow* young *Frogs*, *Marshworm*, *Dockworm*, *Flag-worm*; all sorts of *Cadbait*, *Bob*, *Palmers*, *Caterpillars*, *Gentles*, *Wasps*, *Hornets*, *Dorrs*, *Bees*, *Grashoppers*, *Cankers*, and *Bark-worm*; he is a ravenous greedy Fish, and loveth a large Bait at ground, and you must fit him accordingly: to that end take two large Garden-worms well scowred, cut them into equal halves, put them on your Hook, this is a very good Bait.

When you Angle with a *Grashopper* for *Trout* or *Grayling*, you must Lead your Hook upon the shank with a very slender plate of Lead made narrowest and slenderest at the bent of the Hook, that the Bait may the better come over it; let the *Grashopper* be a large one, then draw him over the Lead, after put a lesser or a *Cadbait* on the point, and keep your Bait in continual motion; lifting it up, and sinking again, pull off the *Grashoppers* uppermost Wings: In *March*, and the beginning of *April*, use the *Tagtail*, which is a Worm much of the colour of a mans hand, with a yellow tagg on his tail about half an Inch long, you may find them in Marled Lands and Meddows in the Morning in calm weather,

E

not

The Experienc'd Angler :

not cold , or after a shower.

The *Trout* spawneth about *Michaelmas*, he is a very nimble quick Fish, and will strive long and vigorously for his life, will run amongst Weeds, Roots, or any thing that may entangle or break your Line.

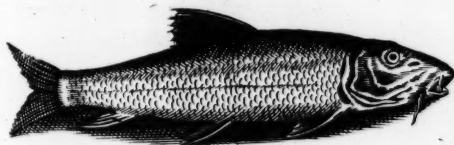
3. The *Umber* is generally taken with the same Baits as the *Trout* , especially *Flies*, *Cadbait*, *Barkworms*, and *Palmers*, artificial or natural *Flies* or *Palmers*: He is an eager Fish, biteth freely, and will rise often at the same *Flie*, if you prick him not.

The *Umber* is a very nimble Fish, hath a very tender mouth, so that he is most usually lost by breaking his hold, which to prevent, make tryal of that way before directed for taking young *Salmons*.



The

The *Barbel* bites best at great red Worms well scowred in Moss, at Cheese and several sorts of Pastes, and *Gentles*; he spawns in *April*, is a wary subtile strong Fish, will struggle long, and except you manage him dextrously, or that your Line be very strong, he will endanger to break it.



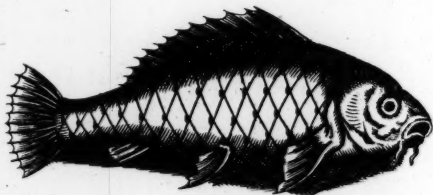
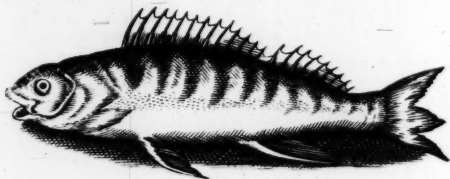
The *Pearcb* is a very ravenous Fish, and biteth boldly and freely: he taketh all sorts of Earth-worms, especially *Brandlings* and *Lobworms*, if well scoured, *Bobs*, *Oakworms*, *Gentles*, *Cadbait*, *Wasps*, *Dores*, *Menow*, *Colewort-worms*, and often any Bait save the *Flie*: He

E. 2

spawneeth

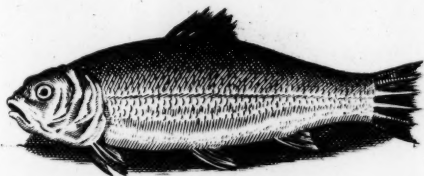
The Experienc'd Angler :

spawneth in *February* or *March*, and if a large strong Fish, will contend long and hard for his life.



4. Carp.

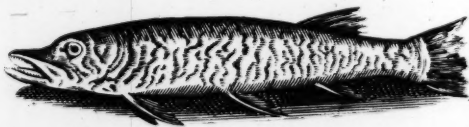
4. *Carp* and *Tench* love the largest red Worms, the *Tench* especially, if they smell much of *Tar* ; to which end you may some small time before you use them, take so many as you will use at that time, and put them by themselves in a little *Tar*, but let them not lie long , lest it kill them ; Paste also of all sorts made with strong-sented *Oyls*, *Tar*, *Bread-grain* boyled soft, *Cadbait*, *Gentles*, *Marsh-worm*, *Flag-worm* especially, feed much and often for these Fish. *Carp* spawneth in *May* and *June* usually ; and if when you strike him you do not give him play, he will break all : he is a strong Fish, will struggle long and stoutly.



The Experienc'd Angler :

5. The *Pike* taketh all sorts of Baits, (save the *Flie*) *Gudgeon*, *Roches*, *Dace*, *Loaches*, young *Frogs* in Summer, or a *Smelt* if fresh and sweet, and well fastned on the Hook, for it is a tender Fish, and will (if not carefully ordered) quickly break in pieces, but I have not known this Bait used higher than where it doth ebb and flow; yet higher than the salt-water floweth I have seen it practised with good success.

A young *Pickerel* or *Parial Jacen* or *Trout*, is a good Bait to trowl with as you can use; you may halter him thus, Fasten a strong Line with a snare at the end of it to the Pole, which if you go circumspectly to work, he will permit you to put over his head, and then you must by strength hoist him to land: He spawns in *February* the latter end, or in *March*. He is a strong bold Fish, and a ravenous eager biter, will struggle long and strongly.



6. *Eels*, take great red Worms, Beef, Wasps, Guts of Fowls, and *Menow* : bait Night-hooks for him with small *Roches*, the Hook must lie in the mouth of the Fish, as for the *Pike*; this way takes the greatest *Eels*.



7. The *Gudgeon* and *Bleak* take the smallest red worms, *Cadbait*, *Gentles*, *Wasps*, he spawneth about the beginning of *May*. The *Bleak* takes the natural or artificial *Flie*, especially in the *Evening*.

The *Ruff* taketh the same Baits as the *Pearch*, save that you must have lesser Worms, he being a smaller Fish.

E 4

8. *Roch*

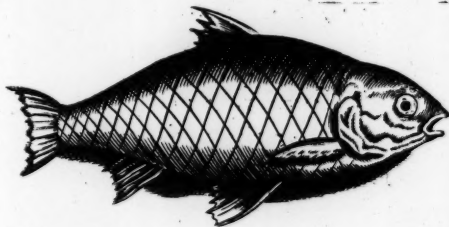
The Experienc'd Angler :

8. *Roch* and *Dace*, small worms, *Cadbait*, Flies, Bobs, Sheeps bloud, small white Snails, all sorts of worms bred on herbs or trees, *Paste*, *Wasps*, *Gnats*, *Cherries* and *Lipberries*: the *Dace* or *Dare* doth spawn about the middle of *March*, and the *Roch* about the middle of *May*; they are very easily taken and with little trouble.

8. The *Bleak* is an eager fish, and takes the same baits as the *Roch*, only they must be less: you may angle for him with as many hooks on your line at once, as you can conveniently fasten on it.

9. *Chevin*, all sorts of earth worms, Bob, *Menow*. Flies of all sorts, *Cadbait*, all sorts of worms bred on herbs and trees, especially *Oak-worms*, young *Frogs*, *Cherries*, *Wasps*, *Dorrs*, *Bees*, *Grashopper* at the top of the water, Cheese, Grain, *Beetles*, a great brown Flie that lives on the *Oak* like a *Scarabee*, black Snails, their bellies slit that the white appear; he loveth a large bait, as a *Waspe*, *Colwort-worm*, and then a *Waspe* altogether. The *Chevin* loveth to have several flies, and of divers sorts at once on the hook; he loveth also to have several sorts of baits at one time on the hook together; as a *Wasp*, a young *Dorr* or *Humble-bee*, when his legs and wings

wings are a little grown forth, or a *Flie* a *Cadbait* or *Oak-worm* together; or the worm bred on a *Crab-tree*, with one or more of the other baits. The *Pith* or *Marrow* in the bone of an *Ox* back, take it out carefully, and be very tender in taking off the tough outward skins, but be sure you leave the inward and tender white skin safe and untouched, or your labour is lost: this is an excellent bait for a *Chevin* all winter long. The *Chevin* spawneth in *March*, is a strong fish but not very active, for after one or two turns he presently yieldeth, if he be a very large one: but the lesser, which are about a foot or fourteen inches long, will more endanger your line than one of twenty inches or more, for he will strive longer.



XI. Bream

The Experienc'd Angler :

11. *Bream* loveth red worms, especially those that are got at the root of a great Dock, it lieth wrapped up in a knot or round Clue; *Paste, Flag-worms, Wasps, Green-flies, Butter-flies,* a *Grasshopper* his legs cut off; he spawneth in *June* or beginning of *July*, is easily taken, for after one or two gentle turns, he falleth upon one side, and so is drawn to land with ease.

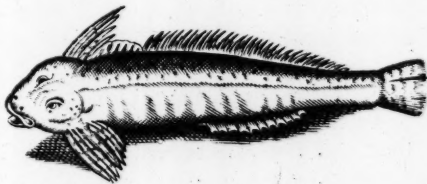
12. *Flounder, Shad, Suant, Thwait,* and *Mullet,* love red Worms of all sorts, *Wasps* and *Gentles.*

As for the *Menow, Loach, Bulhead,* or *Millers-thumb*, being usually Childrens recreation; I once proposed to have omitted them wholly, but considering they often are baits for better Fish, as *Trout, Pike, Eele, &c.* Neither could this Discourse be general if they were omitted; and though I should wave mentioning them, yet I cannot forget them, who have so often vexed me with their unwelcome eagerness, for the *Menow* will have a part in the play if you come where he is, which is almost every where, you need not seek him: I use to find him oftner than I desire, only deep still places he least frequents of any, and is not over-curious in his baits, any thing will serve that he can swallow,

swallow, and he will strain hard for what he cannot gorge ; but chiefly loveth the smallest red Worms, *Cadbait*, Worms bred on Herbs or Trees, and *Wasps*.



The *Loach* and *Bulhead* are much of the same diet, but their principal bait is the smallest red Worms.



Having

Several
sorts of
Pastes.

Having spoken before of Pastes, I shall now shew you how to make the same; and though there be as many kinds as men have fancies, yet I esteem these best.

1. Take the tenderest part of the leg of a young Rabbet, Whelp or Catling, as much Virgins wax and Sheeps Suet, beat them in a Morter till they be perfectly incorporated, then with a little clarified Hony temper them before the Fire into a Paste.

2. Sheeps Kidney Suet, as much Cheese, fine Flower or Manchet, make it into a Paste, soften it with clarified Hony.

3. Sheeps blood, Cheese, fine Manchet, clarified Hony, make all into a Paste.

4. Cherries, Sheeps blood, Saffron, and fine Manchet, make all into a Paste.

5. Take the fattest oldest Cheese and the strongest of the rennet you can get, fine Wheat flower, and Anniseed water (and if you make it for a *Chub* add some reisted bacon) beat all exceeding well into a Paste.

6. Take the fattest old Cheese and strongest of the rennet, Mutton Kidney Suet, and Turmerick, reduced into a fine powder, work all together into a Paste, and add of the Turmerick untill the Paste become

become a very lovely yellow colour ; this is excellent for *Chevin*.

In *September* and all *Winter*, when you angle for *Chub*, and large fish, as *Carp*, *Bream*, &c. with *Paste*, you must make your bait as large as a good *Nutmeg*.

You may add to any *Paste* *Coculus Indie*, *Assa fatida*, Oyl of *Polypody* of the *Oak*, of *Lignum vite*, of *Ivie*, or the gum of *Ivie* dissolved : I judge there is virtue in these Oyles, and gum especially, which I would add to all Pastes I make ; as also a little *Flax* to keep the *Paste* that it wash not off the hook.

CH A P. VI.

To keep your Baits.

1. **P**aste will keep very long, if you put *Virgin wax* and clarified *Honey* into it, and stick well on the hook if you beat *Cotton-wool* or *Flax* into it, when you make your *Paste*.

2. Put your worms into very good long *Moss*, whether white, red, or green, I matter not ; wash it well, and cleanse it from all earth and filth, wring it very dry, then put your *Moss* and worms into

The Experienc'd Angler :

into an earthen Pot, cover it close that they crawl not out, set it in a cool place in Summer, and in Winter in a warm place, that the Frost kill them not : every third day in Summer change your Moss, once in the week in Winter, the longer you keep them before you use them, the better. Clean scowring your Worms makes them clearer, redder, tougher, and to live long on the Hook, and to keep colour, and therefore more desirable to the Fish: A little *Bole-Armoniack* put to them will much further your desire, and scower them in a short time : Or you may put them all Night in water, & they will scower themselves, but will be weak ; but a few hours in good Moss will recover them. But lest your Worms die, you may feed them with crums of Bread and Milk, or fine Flour and Milk, or the Yelk of an Egg and sweet Cream coagulated over the fire, give them a little and often ; If you take the strongest sweet Wort you can get (in which there hath been no Hops) wet your Moss well with the same, and ever night put so many Worms into that Moss as you intend to use the next day, and I suppose the Fish will bite the better at them, but they must not lie over long in the Moss thus wet, in regard it will much swell them, and in
time

time spoyl them ; sometimes also put to them earth cast out of a Grave, the newer the Grave the better, I mean the shorter time the party hath been buried, you will find the Fish will exceedingly covet them after this earth, and here you may gather what Gum that is, which *J. D.* in his *Secrets of Angling* calleth *Gum of life*.

3. You must keep all other sorts of Worms with the leaves of those Trees and Herbs on which they are bred, renewing the Leaves often in a day, and put in fresh for the old ones: The Boxes you keep them in must have a few small holes to let in air.

4. Keep *Gentles* or *Maggots* with dead How to flesh, Beasts Livers or Suet, cleanse or breed scower them in Meal or Bran which is bet- *Gentles*, ter ; you may breed them by pricking a Beasts Liver full of holes, hang it in the Sun in Summer time, set an old course Barrel or small Firken with Clay and Bran in it, into which they will drop, and cleanse themselves in it.

5. There are two, some say three sorts *Cadbait* of *Cadbait*, the one bred under stones that his kinds lye hollow in shallow Rivers or small Brooks, in a very fine gravelly case or husk, these are yellow when ripe ; the other in old Pits, Ponds, or slow running Rivers

Rivers or Ditches, in cases or husks of Straw, sticks or Rushes, these are green when ripe; both are excellent for a *Trout*, used as before is directed, and for most sorts of small Fish. The green sort, which is bred in Pits, Ponds or Ditches, may be found in *March* before the other yellow ones come in; the other yellow ones come in season with *May* or the end of *April*, and go out in *July*: a second sort, but smaller, come in again in *August*.

Ead-
bait.

6. *Cadbait* cannot endure the wind and cold, therefore keep them in a thick woollen Bag, with some Gravel amongst them, wet them once a day at least if in the house, but often in the hot weather; when you carry them forth, fill the bag full of water, then hold the mouth close, that they drop not out, and so let the water run from them; I have thus kept them three weeks: Or you may put them into an earthen Pot full of water, with some Gravel at the bottom, and take them forth into your bag as you use them.

Bobs
two
sorts.

7. Yellow Bobs are also of two sorts, the one bred in mellow light soils, and gathered after the Plough when the Land is first broken up from Grazing, and are in season in the Winter till *March*; the other is bred under Cowdung, hath a red head; and

and these are in season in the Summer only : scower them in Bran, or dry Moss, or Meal.

8. The spawn of some Fish is a good Spawn bait, to be used at such time as that Fish of Fish spawneth, some days before they spawn they will bite eagerly ; if you take one that is full bellied, take out the spawn, boil it so hard as to stick on your hook, and so use it ; or not boil it at all : the spawn of *Salmon* is best of all sorts of spawn.

9. I have observed, that *Chevin*, *Roach*, *Dace*, bite much better at the *Oak-worm*, ^{The chiefest way to use the} (or any worm bred on herbs or trees) especially if you angle with the same (when they shew themselves) at the top of the water (as with the natural fly) than if you use it under ; for I have observed, that when a gale of wind shaketh the trees, the worms fall into the water, and presently rise and flote on the top, where I have seen the Fish rise at them as at flies, which taught me this experience ; and indeed they sink not, till tost and beaten by the stream, and so they dye, and lose their colour, and then the Fish (as you may see by your own on your hook) do not much esteem hem.

Bark-worms.

10. Under the bark of an Oak, Ash, Alder, and Birch especially, if they lie a year or more after they are fallen, you

F ma

may find a great white Worm, with a brown head, something resembling a *Dore-Bee* or *Humble-Bee*, this is in season all the year, especially from *September* untill *June*, or mid-*May*, the *Umber* covets this bait above any, save *Flie* and *Cadbait*: you may also find this worm in the body of a rotted Alder, if you break it with an *Ax* or *Beetle*, but be careful only to shake the Tree in pieces with beating, and crush not the Worm: you may also find him under the bark of the stump of a Tree, if decayed.

How to
use
Wasps.

11. Dry your *Wasps*, *Dores*, or *Bees*, upon a Tile-stone, or in an Oven cooled after baking, lest they burn; and to avoid that, you must lay them on a thin board or chip, and cover them with another so supported, as not to crush them, or else clap two Cakes together: this way they will keep long, and stick on your hook well: If you boil them hard, they grow black in a few days.

Sheeps
blood,
how to
use it.

12. Dry your Sheeps blood in the Air upon a dry board, till it become a pretty hard lump; then cut it into small pieces for your use.

How to
order
Grain.

13. When you use Grain, boyl it soft in milk, or which I like better, in sweet wort, and peel off the outward rind which is the bran; and then if you will, you may
try

fry the same in Honey and Milk, or some strong scented Oyls, as *Amber*, *Polypody*, *Spike*, *Ivy*, *Turpentine*; for Nature, which maketh nothing in vain, hath given the Fish Nostrils, and that they can smell is undeniable; and, I am perswaded, are more guided by the sense of smelling, than sight; for sometimes they will come to the float, if any Wax be upon it, smell at it and go away. We see also that strong scents draw them together; as, put Grains, Worms, or Snails in a bottle of Hay tyed pretty close, and you will if you pluck it out suddenly, sometimes draw up *Eels* in it. But I never yet made tryal of any of these Oyls; for, when I had the Oyls, I wanted time to try them; or when I had time, I wanted the Oyls; but I recommend them to tryal of others, and do purpose (God willing) to prove their virtue my self, especially that Oyntment so highly commended by *I. D.* in his *Secret of Angling*.

14. When you see the *Ant-flies* in Ant-greatest plenty, go to the *Ant-hills* where flies: they breed, take a great handfull of the earth, with as much of the roots of the grass that groweth on those hills, put all into a large glass bottle, then gather a pottle full of the blackest *Ant-flies* unbruised, put them into the bottle (or into

a firkin, if you would keep them long) first washed with Honey, or Water and Honey ; *Roach* and *Dace* will bite at these Flies under water near the ground.

Bobs after the Plough. 15. When you gather Bobs after the Plough, put them into a Firkin with sufficient of the soil they were bred in, to preserve them, stop the vessel exceeding close, or all will spoil, set it where neither wind nor frost may offend them, and they will keep all winter for your use.

To breed and keep Gentles. 16. At the latter end of *September*, take some dead Carrion that hath some Maggots bred in it that begin to creep, bury all deep in the ground, that the frost kill them not, and they will serve in *March* or *April* following to use.

To find the flag-worm. 17. To find the *Flag-worm* do thus, go to an old pond or pit where there are store of Flags or (as some call them) Sedges, pull some up by the roots, then shake those roots in the water, till all the mud and dirt be washed away from them, then amongst the small strings or fibres that grow to the roots, you will find little husks or cases of a reddish or yellowish, and some of other colours, open these carefully with a pin, and you will find in them a little small worm, white as a *Gentle*, but longer and slenderer; this is an excellent bait for *Tench*, *Bream*,

Bream, especially *Carp*: if you pull the Flags in sunder, and cut open the round stalk, you will also find a Worm like the former in the husk, but tougher, and in that respect better.

18. Carry your baits for the *Pike* in Bran, which will dry up the slimy moisture that is on them, and so keep them longer, and make them stick more firmly on your Hook: besides, there is a green watery substance that issueth out of the Fish which will infect and rot them, but the Bran drying the same up, preventeth that mischief.

19. Fish bite best at *Grashoppers* in the latter end of *July*, and in *August*, you must cut off their legs and outmost wings; the middle size is better than either the extraordinary great ones, or the small.

C H A P. VII.

*Of several haunts or resorts of Fishes,
and in what Rivers, or places of
them they are most usually found.*

THis part of our Discourse being a discovery of the several places or Rivers each kind of Fish doth most haunt or covet, and in which they are ordinarily found.

The several sorts of Rivers, Streams,

F 3

Soils,

The Experienc'd Angler :

Soyls, and Waters they most frequent, is a matter (in this undervalued Art) of no small importance; for if you come with Baits for the *Trout* or *Umber*, and angle for them in slow muddy Rivers or places, you will have little (if any) sport at all: and to seek for *Carp* or *Tench* in stony swift Rivers, is equally preposterous; and tho I know that sometimes you may meet with Fish in such Rivers & places, as they do not usually frequent (for no general Rule but admits of particular Exceptions) yet the exact knowledge of what Rivers or Soyls, or what part of the River (for some Rivers have swift gravelly streams, and also slow, deep, muddy places) such or such sorts of fish do most frequent, will exceedingly adapt you to know what Rivers, or what part of them are most fit for your baits, or what baits suit best with each River, and the Fish in the same.

1. The *Salmon* loveth large swift Rivers where it ebbeth and floweth, & there they are found in greatest numbers, never the less I have known them to be found in lesser Rivers, high up in the country, yet chiefly in the latter end of the year, when they come thither to spawn, he chooseth the most swift and violent streams, (or rather Cataracts) and in *England* the clearest gravelly rivers usually with rocks or weeds, but in *Ireland* I do not know any River (I mean high in
the

the Country) that hath such plenty of them, as the black-water by *Charlemont*, and the broad-water by *Shanes Castle*, both which have their heads in great bogs, and are of a dark muddy colour, and very few (comparatively) in the upper ban, though clearer and swifter than they.

2. The *Trout* loveth small purling Brooks, or Rivers that are very swift, and run upon stones or gravel: he feedeth whilst strong in the swiftest streams, and in the deepest part of it (especially if he be a large one) and behind a stone-block, or some bank that shooteth forth with a point into the River; upon which the stream beareth much, and causeth a whirling of the water back by the bank-side, much like the eddy of the tide: and he the more willingly maketh choice of this place, if there be a shade over his head, as a bush, foam, or a hollow hanging Bank, under which he can shelter himself; behind a stone, log, or some small bank that shooteth into the River, which the stream beareth upon, and there he lieth watching for what cometh down the stream, & suddenly catcheth it up; his hold is usually in the deep, under a hollow place of the bank, or a stone that lieth hollow, which he loveth exceedingly: & sometimes, but not so usually, he is found in weeds.

3. The *Pearch* loveth a gentle stream of

The Experienc'd Angler :

a reasonable depth (seldom shallow) close by a hollow Bank; and though these three sorts of fish covet clear and swift Rivers, green weeds and stony gravel; yet they are sometimes found (but not in such plenty and goodness) in slow muddy Rivers.

4. *Carp, Tench* and *Eels*, seek mud and a still water; *Eels* under roots or stones; a *Carp* chuseth the deepest and stillest place of Pond or River, so doth the *Tench*, and also green weeds, which he loveth exceedingly: Greatest *Eels* love, as before, but the smaller ones are found in all sorts of rivers and soils.

5. *Pike, Bream* and *Chub*, chuse Sand or Clay; the *Bream* a gentle stream, and broadest part of the River; the *Pike* still Pools full of Frie, and shelters himself (the better to surprise his prey unawares) amongst Bull-rushes, water docks, or under Bushes; the *Chub* loves the same ground (is more rarely found without some tree to shade and cover him) large Rivers and streams.

6. *Barbel, Roach, Dace, Ruff*, seek gravel and sand more than the *Bream*, and the deepest parts of the River, where shady Trees are more grateful to them, than to the *Chub* or *Chevin*.

7. The *Umber* desires Marle, Clay, clear waters, swift streams, far from the Sea (for I never saw any taken near it) & the greatest plenty

plenty of them that I know of, are found in the mountainous parts of *Derby-shire*, and *Stafford-shire*, as *Dove*, *Trent*, *Derwen*, &c.

8. *Gudgeon* delires sandy, gravelly, gentle streams, and smaller Rivers, but I have known them taken in great abundance in *Trent* in *Derby-shire*, where it is very large, but conceive them to be in greater plenty nearer the head of that river about or above *Heywood*: I can say the same of other Rivers, and therefore conceive they love smaller Rivers rather than the larger, or the small Brooks; for I never found them in so great plenty in Brooks, as small Rivers: He bites best in the Spring till he spawns, and little after, till *Wasp* time.

9. *Shad*, *Thwait*, *Peel*, *Mullet*, *Suant*, and *Flounder*, love chiefly to be in or near, the saltish waters, where it ebbeth and floweth; I have known the *Flounder* taken (in good plenty) in fresh Rivers, they covet Sand and Gravel, deep gentle streams near the Bank, or at the end of a stream in a deep still place: Though these rules may, and do hold good in the general, yet I have found them admit of particular exceptions; but every mans Habitation engageth him to one (or usually at most to) two Rivers, his own experience will quickly inform him of the nature of the same, & the fish in them. I would perswade all that love Angling,

The Experienc'd Angler :

Angling & desire to be complete Anglers, to spend some time in all sorts of waters, Ponds: Rivers, swift & slow, stony, gravelly, muddy, & slimy; & to observe all the differences in the nature of the fish, the waters & bairs, & by this means he will be able to take fish where ever he angleth; otherwise (through want of experience) he will be like the man that could read in no book but his own; besides a man (his occasions or desires drawing him from home) must only stand as an idle spectator, whilst others kill fish, but he none, & so lose the repute of a compleat Angler, how excellent soever he be at his own known River.

Fish
change
places
with the
season

Furthermore, you must understand, hath as some fish covet one soyl more than another, so they differ in their choice of place in every season, some keep all Summer long near the top, some never leave the bottom; for the former sort you may angle with a Quill or small flote near the top, with a flie or any sort of worm bred on herbs or trees, or with a flie at the top: the latter sort you will all summer long find at the tails of Wiers, Mills, Flood-gates, Arches of Bridges, or the more shallow parts of the River, in a strong, swift, or gentle stream except *Carp*, & *Tench*, & *Eel*, in Winter all flie unto the deep still places; where it eb- beth and floweth they will sometimes bite
best

best, in the ebb most usually, sometimes when it floweth, rarely at full water, near the Arches of Bridges, Wiers, Flood-gates.

C H A P. VIII.

What times are unseasonable to Angle in.

Here being a time for all things; in which with ease and facility the same may be accomplished, and most difficult, if not impossible at another: The skil and knowledge how to chuse the best season to angle, and how to avoid the contrary, come next to be handled; which I shall do first Negatively, *viz.* What times are unfit to angle; and then Affirmatively, which are the best seasons.

1. When the Earth is parched with a great drought, so that the Rivers run with a much less current than usually, its to no purpose to Angle; and indeed the heat of the day in Summer (except cooled by winds, and shadowed with Clouds, though there be no drought) you will find very little sport, especially in muddy, or very shallow and clear Rivers.

2. In cold, frosty, snowy weather, I know the Fish must eat in all seasons, and that a man may kill Fish when he must first break the

The Experienc'd Angler :

the Ice; yet I conceive the sport is not then worth pursuing, the extreame cold taking away the delight; besides, the indangering health (if not life) by those colds, which at least cause Rheums and Coughs : Wherefore I leave Winter and night-angling to such strong healthful bodies, whose extraordinary delight in angling, or those whose necessity enforceth them to seek profit by their recreation in such unseasonable times.

3. When there happeneth in the Spring-time (especially) or Summer, any small hoary frost, all that day after the fish will not rise freely and kindly, except in the evening, and that the same prove very pleasant.

4. If the wind be extreme high, so that you cannot guide your tools to advantage.

5. When Shepherds or Country-men wash their Sheep, though whilst they are washing (I mean the first time only) the fish will bite exceedingly well; I suppose the filth that falleth from the Sheep doth draw them (as your baiting a place) together, and then they soglut themselves, that till the whole washing time be over, and they have digested their fulness, they will not take any artificial baits.

6. Sharp, bitter, nipping winds, which most usually blow out of the North or East especially, blast your recreation ;
but

but this is rather the Season, than the wind, though I also judge those winds have a secret malign quality to hinder the recreation.

7. After any sort of fish have spawned they will not bite any thing to purpose, untill they have recovered their strength and former appetite.

8. When any clouds arise that will certainly bring a shower or storm (though in the midst of Summer) they will not bite: I have observ'd that tho the fish bite most eagerly, and to your hearts content, yet upon the first appearing of any clouds, that will certainly bring rain (though my own judgment could not then apprehend, or in the least conjecture, that a storm was arising) they have immediately left off biting; and that hath been all that hath given me to understand that a shower was coming, and that it was Prudence to seek shelter against the same.

9. When the nights prove dark & cloudy, and that the Moon shines not at all, or but very little, the day ensuing you will have little or no sport, except at the small ones; for when the great fish, that prey on others, range abroad, the lesser hide themselves in their holes, to escape the danger of devouring: for prudent Nature hath endowed all Creatures with that natural instinct, as to avoid

The Experienc'd Angler :

avoid times of danger, as we see wild Beasts and beasts of prey range abroad in the Night, the tame Cattle feed in the day; and you never see the *Menow*, a Fish the *Trout* covets) stir in the Night or in dark windy weather when the great *Trouts* are abroad, but his most usual time is from an hour after Sun-rising (if the day prove fair) till an hour before Sun-set; so that when the Nights are very dark or windy, the next day rarely proves very successful to the Angler for great *Trout*.

10. In small and clear Brooks where the Mills stand and keep up the water, you will not ordinarily do any good, at the ground especially, and but little with the Flie, for the *Trout* will at such a time hardly come out of his hold.

C H A P. IX.

The best times and seasons to Angle.

When it
is best to
Angle-

WE now come to the Affirmative part which is the best season to angle, that as before we discovered when it would be lost labour to seek recreation: so now you may learn to improve opportunity when it offers it self) to best advantage.

1. Calm, clear (or which is better) cool cloudy weather in Summer the wind blowing

ing gently, so as you may guide your tools with ease; in the hottest Months the cooler the better.

2. When the floods have carried away all the filth that the rain had washed from the higher grounds into the River, and that the River keepeth his usual bounds, and looketh of a Whey-colour.

3. When a sudden violent shower hath a little mudded and raised the River, then if you go forth in, or immediately after such a shower, and Angle in the stream at the ground (with a red Worm chiefly) if there be store of Fish in the River, you will have sport to your own desire.

4. A little before any Fish spawn (your own observation will inform you of the time by the fulness of their bellies) they come into the gravelly sandy foards to rub and loosen their bellies, and then they bite very freely.

5. When Rivers after rain do rise, yet so as they keep within their banks, in swift rivers the violence of the stream forceth the Fish to seek shelter and quiet ease, in the little and milder currents of small Brooks, where they fall into larger Rivers, and behind the ends of bridges that are longer than the breadth of the River, making a low vacancy, where the Bridge defends a small spot of ground from the violence of the stream,

The Experienced Angler :

stream, or in any low place near the Rivers side, where the fish may lie at rest & secure from the disturbance of the rapid stream ; in such a place (being not very deep) and at such a time, you will find sport: my self have ever found it equal to the best season.

6. Early in the morning from (*Carp* and *Tench* before) Sun-rising, until eight of the clock ; and from four afternoon till night: *Carp* and *Tench*, from Sun-set till far in the night in the hot months. In the heat of the day in *June* and *July*, when *Carp*s shew themselves upon the top of the water, if you take a well scour'd lob-worm, and cast the same to them, as you would Angle with a natural flie, they will bite well ; but you must be very careful to keep out of their sight, or you will do no good ; they bite this way best amongst weeds.

7. In *March*, beginning of *April*, latter end of *September*, and all winter, fish bite best in the warmth of the day, no winds stirring, the air clear ; in summer months, morning and evening is best, or cool cloudy weather : if you can find shelter, no matter how high the wind be.

8. Fish rise best at the flie after a shower that hath not mudded the water, yet hath beaten the Gnats and flies into the Rivers, you may in such a shower observe them rise much if you will endure the rain; also the
best

best Months for the flie are *March, April, May*, part of *June*; in the cooler months, in the warmest time of the day in warmer weather, about nine in the morning; three afternoon, if any gentle gale blow; sometimes in a warm evening, when the Gnats play much.

9. In calm clear and star-light nights, especially if the Moon shine, *Trouts* are as wary and fearful as in dark windy days, and stir not; but if the next day prove cloudy and windy, and the water in order, you may assure your self of sport, if there be store of fish in the River; for having abstained from food all night, they are more hungry and eager, and the darkness and windiness of the day makes them more bold to bite.

10. In small and clear Brooks if you come in, or immediately after a shower, that hath raised the water, or take it just as any Mill-water beginneth to come down, and so go along with the course of the water, *Trouts* will then bite well; for at such a time they come forth to seek food, which they expect the water will bring down with it.

11. In *May* especially, and generally all Summer, if the morning prove extream cold, as sometimes it doth (although there be no frost) the fish will not bite to any purpose, until the day wax warmer; and if it

G

prove

The Experienced Angler :

prove cold all day long, they will bite best where the Sun shines, but not at all in the shady parts of the River.

Also after the River is cleared from a flood they rise exceeding well, I conceive they were glutted with ground-baits, and now covet the flie, having wanted it a time.

1. A *Trout* bites best in a muddy rising water, in dark, cloudy, windy weather, early in the morning, from half an hour after eight till ten; and in the afternoon, from three till after four, and sometimes in the evening; but nine in the morning, and three in the afternoon, are his chiefest and most constant hours of biting at ground or flie, as the water suits either; *March, April, May*, and part of *June* are his chiefest months, though he bites well in *July, August* and *September*. After a shower in the evening he riseth well at gnats, he taketh the *Menow* best when the wind is in the south or south-west, and bloweth strongly, curling the waters, and raising high waves. The *Trout* bites best at the *Menow* in *March*, and beginning of *April*, and in *September*; but in the Summer months he bites not freely at the *Menow* in the day time, except the same be dark, and the wind very high; and in the Summer months you must add some *Lead* to your line, and sink the *Menow* to the bottom,

om, for otherwise the *Trout* will not take him at the top in Summer, and clear weather. In little Brooks that fall into large Rivers where it ebbs & flows, only in fresh water or a little brackish (for the salt water I have not tryed) if you begin at the mouth of such Brooks, just as the tide cometh in, and go up the Brook with the head of the tide, and return with the ebbing of the water, you will often take good *Trouts*, and have much sport; and if the tide do not muddy the water, they will also rise at the flie at such a time.

2. *Salmon*, three after noon, chiefly in *May, June, July, August*, a clear water and some wind; and he biteth best when the wind bloweth against the stream, and near the Sea.

3. The *Barbel* biteth best early in the morning, till nine or ten of the clock; the latter end of *May, June, July*, and beginning of *August*.

4. The *Pearch* biteth well all the day long, in cool cloudy weather, yet chiefly from eight in the morning till ten; & from a little before three in the afternoon, till about five; and sometimes later, especially in hot weather and midst of Summer: The *Ruff* is much of his nature and disposition.

5. *Carp* and *Tench*, morning and evening

The Experienc'd Angler :

very early and late, *June, July*, and *August*, or indeed in the night in the still parts of the River.

6. *A Chevin* from Sun-rising or earlier (at Snails especially, for in the heat of the day he careth not for them) in *June* and *July*, till about eight; again at three afternoon at ground or flie ; and his chief flie which he most delights in, is a great *Moth*, with a very great head, not unlike to an *Owl*, with whitish wings & yellowish body (you may find them flying abroad in Summer evenings in Gardens) some wind stirring, large Rivers chiefly, streams or shade: he will take a small *Lamprey* or *Seven-eyes* , and *Eel-brood*, either of them about a straws bigness.

7. *Pike* bites best about three afternoon, in a clear water, a gentle gale; *July, August, September, October*, usually in the still places, or at least in a gentle stream. In the months of *August, September*, and all Winter, he bites all the day long, especially about three afternoon, the water clear, and the day windy: In *April, May, June*, and beginning of *July*, he bites best early in the morning, and late in the evening ; I could never observe that he would bite any thing to purpose in the night, of all the year.

8. A *Bream* from about Sun-rising till eight, in a muddy water, a good gale of wind ;

wind; and in Ponds the higher the wind, and where the waves are highest, and nearer the middle of the Pond, the better; end of *May, June, July* (especially) and *August*, in a gentle stream or near to it.

9. *Roach* and *Dace* all day long, best at the top, at flie or *Oak-worm* principally, and at all other worms bred on herbs or trees. *Palmer's, Caterpillars, &c.* in plain Rivers or Ponds, under Water-dock leaves, under shady trees.

10. *Gudgeon, April*, and till he have spawned, in *May*, and a little after that till *Wasp* time, except in cool weather or after a shower or Land-flood; and then to the end of the year all day long, in or near to a gentle stream. When you angle for the *Gudgeon*, stir or rake the Sand or Gravel with a long pole, and they will gather to that place and bite much the better.

11. *Flounder* all day in *April, May, June, July*, in a good swift stream, sometimes in the still deep; but not so ordinarily as in the stream.

C H A P. X,

General Observations.

ALthough this whole Treatise be in the greatest part of it only General Observations, yet there are some Directions which fall not under any consideration; but are as applicable to the flie as the ground angle; and as equally useful (for their practical part) in the one kind of angling as the other. For although all ground-baits are useful and certain almost in every River, yet it is not so in the Flie, which varieth in kind, colour, or proportion well nigh in every River; and therefore no general Rules (as I conceive) can be given in that particular, more than are already delivered: except every particular circumstance should be mentioned, which would be too tedious, and indeed unnecessary to any ingenious nature; who may with ease from the former general Rules, draw particular conclusions; by the help of his own Practice and Experience in those Rivers he most usually and frequently anglet at; For as to such Rivers of which a man hath had no experience, he must either learn something (I mean as to flie-angling) from

from such as know the River, otherwise (though the most expert of Anglers) he will be at a loss, until his own Experience (which by reason of his knowledg in variety of Rivers and Soils, they walk through) will adapt him with more ease and facility, to make Observations upon the same: But these that follow are of an universal use and nature.

1. Let the Anglers Apparel be sad, dark colours, as sad grays, tawny, purple, hair or musk-colour.

2. Use Shoemakers wax to your silk or thred, with which you make or mend either Rod or Flie; it holds more firmly, and sticketh better than any other.

3. Into such places as you use to Angle at, once a week at least cast in all sorts of Corn boyled soft, Grains washed in blood, blood dried and cast into pieces, Snails, worms chopt small, pieces of fowl or beasts Guts, beasts Livers; for *Carp* and *Tench* you cannot feed too often, or too much, this course draweth the Fish to the place you desire: And to keep them together, cast about twenty grains of ground-Malt at a time, now and then as you Angle; and indeed all sorts of Baits are good to cast in, specially whilst you are Angling with that Bait, principally *Cadbait*, *Gentles*, & *Wasps*,

and you will find they will snap up yours more eagerly, and with less suspicion ; but by no means when you angle in a stream cast them in at your hook, but something above where you angle, lest the stream carry them beyond your hook, and so instead of drawing them to you, you draw them from you.

4. If you desire to feed the Fish, so as you may draw them into a stream, where you may rationally conclude that all such feeding as is cast into the same after the ordinary manner will be carried away : you must get Boxes of Tin, Wood, or Iron made full of holes, so wide as the Worms may creep through them, and with a Weight of Lead fastned to the Tin or Wood to sink them (filled with Worms) in the stream, fasten a strong Cord or Packthread to the Boxes, to recover them again at your pleasure; this way the Worms will come forth leasurely and not all at once, and the Fish will be about the Boxes to gather them up as they crawl forth.

5. Take fine Clay, Barley, Malt ground, Water, or Milk, or (which I like better) blood, make all into a Paste ; and if you please put some of those strong sented Oyls, named before Page 55. or Gum of Ivy ; make this into several large Cakes, and

and cast them into the stream where you design to draw the Fish, and they will come to suck at it, and if you please you may stich Worms unto it, or mould their heads into it. This is the best way to feed in a stream for *Salmon, Trout, Umber, &c.* that I have heard any Angler discourse of, or known practised. But if after you have baited any place twice or thrice, yet notwithstanding when you come to Angle there if you find no sport, if no man hath been before you at that place, or that there appear no grand impediment in the season or water; you may rationally conclude, some ravenous *Pike* or greedy *Pearch* hath taken up that place for his quarter, and affrights all other Fish, that they dare not adventure thither (as Merchants put not forth to Sea, when Pirates infest the same) for fear of being made a prey; to remedy which evil, you must have your *Trowle* and a Bait of those named for the *Pike* ready, and so fall to work for him; and when that impediment is removed you may expect sport.

6. Destroy all Beasts or Birds that devour the Fish or their spawn, and endeavour (whether in Authority or not) to see all Statutes put in execution against such as use unlawful Nets or means to take Fish: especially

The Experienced Angler :

Specialy bare Netting and Night-hooking.

7. Get your Rods and Tops without knots, they are dangerous for breaking.

8. Keep your Rod dry, lest it rot, and not near the fire, lest it grow brittle.

9. In drought wet your Rod a little before you begin to Angle.

10. *Lob-worms*, *Dew-worms*, and great Garden-worms all one.

11. When you angle at ground, or with the natural Flie, your Line must not exceed the length of your Rod. For the *Trout* at ground it must be shorter, and in some cases not half the length, as in small Brooks or Woody Rivers, either at ground or with the natural Flie.

12. When you have hooked a good Fish, have an especial care to keep your Rod bent, lest he run to the end of the Line, and break your hook or his hold.

13. Such tops or stocks as you get, must not be used till fully seasoned, which will not be in less time than one year and a quarter ; But I like them better if kept till they be two years old.

14. The first Fish you catch take up his belly, and you may then see his stomach ; it is known by its largeness and place, lying from the Gills to the small Guts ; take it out very tenderly (if you bruise it your labour

bour and design are lost) and with a sharp knife cut it open without bruising, and then you find his food in it, and thereby discover what bait the fish at that instant takes best, flies or ground baits, and so fit them accordingly.

15. Fish are frightened with any the least sight or motion, therefore by all means keep out of sight, either by sheltring your self behind some bush or tree, or by standing so far off the Rivers side, that you can see nothing but your flie or flote; to effect this, a long Rod at ground, and a long Line with the artificial flie may be of use to you. And here I meet with two different opinions & practises, some always cast their flie & bait up the water, and so they say nothing occurreth to the Fishes sight but the Line: others fish down the River, and so suppose (the Rod and Line being long) the quantity of water takes away, or at least lesseneth the Fishes sight; but the other affirm, that Rod and Line, and perhaps your self, are seen also. In this difference of opinions I shall only say, in small Brooks you may angle upwards, or else in great Rivers you must wade, as I have known some, who thereby got the *Sciatica*, and I would not wish you to purchase pleasure at so dear a rate; besides casting up the River you cannot

not keep your Line out of the water, which we noted for a fault before; and they that use this way confess that if in casting your flie, the line fall into the water before it, the flie were better uncast, because it frights the fish; then certainly it must do it this way, whether the flie fall first or not, the line must first come to the fish or fall on him which undoubtedly will fright him: Therefore my opinion is, that you angle down the River, for the other way you traverse twice so much, and beat not so much ground as downwards.

16. Keep the Sun (and Moon, if Night) before you, if your eyes will endure it, (which I much question) at least be sure to have those Planets on your side, for if they be on your back, your Rod will with its shadow offend much, and the Fish see further and clearer, when they look towards those Lights, than the contrary; as you may experiment thus, in a dark Night if a man come betwixt you and any light, you see him clearly: but not at all if the light come betwixt you and him.

17. When you angle for the *Trout*, you need not make above three or four tryals in one place, either with Flie or ground-bait; for he will then either take it, or make an offer, or not stir at all, and so you lose time

time to stay there any longer.

18. To preserve Hazels, whether stocks or tops from worm-eating or rotting; twice or thrice in the year, as you see necessity requires, rub them all over with Sallet-Oyle, or Lind-seed Oyle; sweet Butter which was never salted, or Tallow, and with much rubbing chase the same very well into them; and if they be bored, pour into them either of the Oyles, or the Butter or Tallow melted, untill they be full; if you use Butter or Tallow, keep them so warm as that they freeze not, or grow hard by cooling: Let them stand thus a day or night, more or less, as you see the Oyle sink into them; afterward pour the Oyle back into the Bottle, to serve again for the same purpose another time; you must keep the end that stands downwards close stopped, lest the Oyls, Butter, or Tallow run out as it is put in.

19. When you Angle for the *Salmon* or *Trout*, and of all Day long have had little, or rather no sport, neither at ground or with the Flie; the very Night following, especially in the beginning of it, and untill Midnight, or near it, they will not fail to bite (at ground or Flie, as the season and water sute best for either) very freely and eagerly if the weather be not nipping cold or frosty.

20. Fish

The Experienc'd Angler:

20. Fish take all sorts of baits most eagerly and freely, and with the least suspicion or bogling, when you present the same unto them in such order and manner, as Nature affords them, or as themselves ordinarily gather them.

21. if you desire to angle in a very swift stream, and have your bait rest in one place, and yet not over burden your Line with Lead, take a Stone-bow or small Pistol-bullet, make a hole through it, wider at each side than in the middle; yet so open in every place, as that the Line may easily pass through it without any stop; place a very small piece of Lead on your Line, that may keep this Bullet from falling nearer the Hook than that piece of Lead, and if your float be made large enough to bear above water against the force of the stream, the Fish will, when they bite, run away with the bait as securely, as if there were no more weight upon your line, than the little piece of Lead, because the hole in the Bullet gives passage to the Line, as if it were not there.

22. When Cattle in Summer come into the Foards, their Dung draweth the Fish unto the lower end of the Foard; at such a time angle for a *Chevin* with baits fit for him, and you will have sport.

23. Before

23. Before you set your Hook to your Line, arm the Line by turning the silk five or six times about the link, and so with the same silk set on your Hook; this preserves your Line, that your Hook cut it not in sunder, and also that it will not, when you use the cast Flie, snap off so easily, which it is very subject to do.

24. In very wet seasons, when the Rains raise the Rivers, and almost continually keep them equal with their Banks, or at least above their ordinary height; the *Trouts* leave the Rivers and larger Brooks, and flee into such little Brooks as scarce run at all in dry Summers.

25. To all sorts of Pastes add Flax, Cotton, or Wool, to keep the Paste from falling off your hook.

26. Deny not part of what your endeavours shall purchase unto any sick or indigent persons, but willingly distribute a part of your purchase to those who may desire a share.

27. If you cut Weeds in a River, the better to make a place clear to angle in for *Carp*s; they will not (although before the cutting of the Weeds they haunted the place very much) come there again of two or three Months.

28. If you come to angle for *Carp* in
some

some broad place of Pond or River, where you cannot reach with any ordinary Rod or Line ; If you take a Boat that you may more easily cast your Bait to that part you designe to angle in: and although you have Bull-rushes or Weeds betwixt you and it, so as you may hope to shadow your self from the Fishes sight; yet though you row never so circumspectly , the Boat will so move the water , that you will affright them, so as for that time you will have no sport : therefore you must have a Rod of such a length as will from the Bank without a Boat reach the place, or you will kill no *Carps*, they are so very wary and fearful.

29. The Eyes of those Fishes you catch, if you pull them out and use them on the Hook, are an excellent Bait for most sort of Fish.

30. Make not a daily practice (which is nothing else but a profession) of any recreation, lest your immoderate love and delight therein, bring a cross with it, and blast all your content and pleasure in the same.

F I N I S.

THE TABLE.

A	Page
A Ngling Tools when to provide,	2
Angling the several kinds,	11
Angling for the <i>Trout</i> at ground,	31
Angling in the Night,	33
Angling with the <i>Menow</i> ,	34
Angling with the <i>Trawl</i> for a <i>Pike</i> ,	35
Angling for the <i>Eel</i> ,	39
Angling for the <i>Roch</i> ,	42
Angling at ground, Directions,	40
<i>Ant-flies</i> to keep,	67
Angle in a swift stream how.	93

B	
Bags for Worms,	10
<i>Barbel</i> his Baits,	51
his time of spawning,	51
his haunt,	72
his chiefeft time of biting,	83
<i>Barkworm</i> ,	65
<i>Bleak</i> his Baits, haunt, &c. as the <i>Roch</i> ,	56
Blood how to order,	66
Bobs their kinds how to find,	58
how to keep them,	63
Boxes for <i>Flies</i> , <i>Cankers</i> , &c.	10

H

Bobbing

The Table.

Bobbing for <i>Eels</i> ,	39
Brogling for <i>Eels</i> ,	<i>ibid.</i>
Breaking hold in tender-mouth'd Fish,	
how to prevent,	48
<i>Bream</i> his Baits,	58
his spawning-time,	<i>ibid.</i>
his haunt,	72
his best time of biting.	84
<i>Bulhead</i> his Baits.	60

C

<i>Cadbait</i> his kinds;	63
how to keep them,	64
how to use them,	29
Cane or Reed its best use	3
<i>Carp</i> his Baits,	52
his time of spawning,	<i>ibid.</i>
his haunts,	72
his best times of biting,	83
<i>Chevin</i> or <i>Chub</i> his Baits,	56
his spawning-time,	57
his haunt,	72
his best seasons of biting.	83

D

<i>Dace</i> his Baits,	56
his time of spawning,	<i>ibid.</i>
his haunt,	91
his best time of biting,	85
Depth of water to try.	9

E

<i>Eel</i> his Baits,	55
his	

The Table.

his haunt,	72
his best times of biting in a muddy wa- ter,	44
F	
<i>Flie</i> natural to angle with,	13
directions for it,	16
<i>Flie</i> , what Fish rise best at it,	13
when each <i>Flie</i> cometh in,	14
how to find that time,	15
when Fish rise best at the <i>Flie</i> ,	13
<i>Flie</i> artificial angling with it,	17
<i>Flie</i> artificial to make,	18
directions in making it,	23
directions how to use the same,	<i>ibid.</i>
directions as to the waters;	24
Feeding in a stream,	87
Feeding Fish the best way,	88
Float to make,	9
<i>Flag-worm</i> ,	68
<i>Flounder</i> his Baits,	57
his haunt,	73
his best time of biting,	85
Fish change places with the season.	74
G	
<i>Gudgeon</i> his Baits,	55
his time of spawning,	<i>ibid.</i>
his haunt,	73
what time he biteth best,	81
Great Fish how to land,	10
Grain how to order,	66
H 2	
<i>Grayling</i>	

The Table.

Grayling, vide Umber.

H

Hooks their shape,	8
how to set them to the Line,	<i>ibid.</i>
how to sharpen them,	9
Hooks how to arm.	94

L

Lines how to make,	6
Lines, Links, Flies, to carry	11
<i>Loach</i> his haunt, baits, &c.	59

M

Menow his baits, haunt, &c.	57
<i>Mullet</i> his baits,	58
his haunt, biting-time as the <i>Flounder</i> ,	85
<i>Maggot</i> or <i>Gentles</i> to breed and keep,	68

N

Night, what time fish certainly bite,	93
---------------------------------------	----

O

Oke-worm, and how to keep,	63
when and how the Fish take it best,	17 & 66

P

Panier,	11
Pastes to make,	60
<i>Pearch</i> his baits,	51
his time of spawning,	52
his haunt,	71
what times he biteth best,	83
<i>Pike</i> his Baits,	54
his time of spawning,	<i>ibid.</i>
his	his

The Table.

his haunt,	72
what seasons he biteth best,	84
to <i>Trowl</i> for him,	35
to halter him,	49
R	
<i>Roch</i> his baits,	54
his time of spawning,	<i>ibid.</i>
his haunt,	72
what times he biteth best,	84
Rods of Hazel to preserve,	92
<i>Ruffe</i> his baits,	55
his haunts,	71
what times he biteth best.	83
S	
<i>Salmon</i> his baits,	47
his spawning time,	<i>ibid.</i>
his haunt,	70
what seasons he biteth best,	82
<i>Shad, Suant, &c.</i> their baits, haunt, biting- times as the <i>Flounder</i> ,	58
Sight of Fish how to avoid,	90
Spawn of Fish how to use,	65
<i>Swivel</i> how to use,	34
Sun, offence by it to avoid.	91
T	
<i>Tench</i> his baits,	53
his haunt,	72
what times he biteth best,	83
<i>Trout</i> his baits,	49
his spawning-time, <i>ibid.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
his	his

The Table.

his haunt,	71
what seasons he biteth best;	82
<i>Trout</i> to angle-at the ground,	31
<i>Trout</i> you have missed to take,	34
<i>Trouts</i> in wet season where to find,	94

U

<i>Umber</i> his baits,	49
his haunt,	72
what times he biteth best.	82

W

<i>Wasps, Doves, &c.</i> how to order,	66
<i>Worms</i> how to order,	61, 62
<i>Worm Bags,</i>	10
Wet seasons to find <i>Trouts,</i>	94
When Fish bite certainly in the Night,	93

F I N I S.

